This book is purchased from
The Schofield Fund
given in memory of
William Henry Schofield
Victoria College, B.A. 1889
Harvard University, Ph. D. 1895
Professor of Comparative Literature
Harvard University, 1906-20.
Harvard Exchange Professor at
University of Berlin, 1907
Lecturer at the Sorbonne and
University of Copenhagen, 1910.
Harvard Exchange Professor at
Western Colleges, 1918.
Lydgate's Troy Book.

Early English Text Society,
Extra Series, XCVII.
1906.
BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.
DEDICATED TO

Professor Joseph Schick.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONTENTS.</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introductory Note</td>
<td>ix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Prologue</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book I.</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book II.</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ADDENDA ET CORRIGENDA.

Page 16, ,, 149, insert comma before and after platly
,, 16, ,, 160, insert comma before God and after wot
,, 21, ,, 328, insert comma after fate
,, 25, ,, 452, surqued[rye should be surquedye
,, 25, ,, 467, insert comma before and after pleynly
,, 30, ,, 630, for halowed read halved*. (Add note: 630. halved]
halowed C.)
,, 41, ,, 1012, insert comma after hede
,, 51, note 1, for leaf 13 d read leaf 14 d
,, 53, note 1, for leaf 14 a read leaf 15 a
,, 78, ,, 2247, for in read in
,, 185, ,, 1422 (side-note), for paitently read patiently
INTRODUCTORY NOTE.

The *Troy Book*: was begun in the late autumn of 1412, and finished in the summer, or early fall, of 1420. It is a very much amplified version in decasyllabic couplets of the prose Latin *Historia Destructionis Troiae* of Guido delle Colonne (about 1287), and was undertaken, the author tells us, at the desire of Prince Henry, afterwards Henry V. The work consists of a Prologue of 384 lines, of five Books, containing respectively 4436, 8706, 5764, 7108, and 3612 lines, an Envoy of 91 lines, addressed to Henry V., and the Verba translatoris ad librum suum of 16 lines,—a total of 30,117 lines. The last 307 lines of Book V., although an integral part of the text, may be said roughly to form an Epilogue, also addressed to Henry V. The Prologue and five Books are written in Chaucer's heroic verse; the Envoy is of thirteen stanzas of seven five-beat lines, rhyming ababcc (Chaucer's rhyme royal), and the Verba translatoris of two stanzas of eight lines, rhyming ababcded.

The text of this edition is based on the Brit. Mus. MS. Cotton, *Augustus A*. iv. (C), collated with the Brit. Mus. MS. Arundel 99 (A) and the Bodleian MSS. Digby 232 (D 2) and Digby 230 (D 1). The two British Museum MSS. and Digby 232 are the oldest and best that have been preserved to us, and date approximately from the end of the first quarter of the fifteenth century. Digby 230 is somewhat inferior to the others, and considerably later (about 1470).

1 As Professor Skeat has pointed out in a letter to *The Academy* of May 7, 1892, Lydgate tells us that it was "about 4 o'clock in the afternoon of Monday, October 31, 1412." See Prologue, 121-148.

2 Comp. the above letter to *The Academy* and the foot-note on the second page of my *Description and Genealogy of the Manuscripts and Prints of Lydgate's Troy Book* (dissertation), Bungay, 1906. A revised edition of the latter will appear in Part III. of the present work.


The Editor's treatment of the Text.

All deviations from the text of the Cotton MS. are either marked with asterisks and noted at the bottom of the page, or enclosed in brackets. In each case, whatever coincidences C may share with other MSS. (excepting of course the added silent e's and a few graphical variations, whose presence or absence in any particular MS. signifies nothing) are also given. Thus, if the reading of no other MS. than C occurs in a foot-note explanatory of an asterisk, and if a word enclosed in brackets is accompanied by no foot-note at all, it is to be understood that the variant or omission in question occurs in C alone. I have silently omitted the dots which are sometimes written over the y's, all ornamental hooks and flourishes, and all marks of punctuation. Although proper names and words beginning sentences are uniformly¹ printed with capital letters, such capital letters as occur in the MS. have been allowed to stand. The punctuation has been a matter of considerable difficulty. Sudden changes of construction or lapses of grammatical sequence are generally indicated by dashes. As my chief endeavour has been to bring out the author's meaning, the stopping has been done according to expediency rather than to rule.

In collating the text with the other MSS., I have noted all variations except those of a purely graphical nature and a few others, such as gentillesse : gentilnesse, every : euerich, her : their, a : o, an : on (one), seyen : saue, sythe : sythes, azen : azens, which, although constantly occurring, are of small importance to the student of Lydgate's language, and involve no doubtful questions of metre. Of the orthographical variants I have preserved all that are of exceptional interest or explanatory use.

The chapter-headings have been transcribed from the British Museum MS. Royal 18. D. ii. (about 1460) by Dr. Furnivall, to whom I am also greatly indebted for the side-notes and head-lines. The text is being collated in type with the Cotton MS. with most painstaking care by Miss Violet Furnivall; and to the invaluable and unremitting assistance which Professor Schick has given me in reading the proofs is due the elimination of more than one editorial faux pas and the clearing up of many an ambiguous or otherwise difficult passage.

Although this is not the place for a discussion, philological or

¹ For certain inconsistencies in the matter of capital letters and hyphens in Book I., and for the retention in the side-notes of various unnecessary apostrophes (Dr. Furnivall's em's and tho's are quite able to take care of themselves without apostrophizing), I must beg the reader's indulgence.
The Varieties of Structure in Lydgate's lines. Types A and B. xi

otherwise, of the Troy Book, I shall, nevertheless, take advantage of the present opportunity to insert a few words of explanation in regard to the structure of the verse: for unless forewarned of Lydgate's peculiar methods of treating the decasyllabic rhymed couplet, it is possible that the reader may meet with some difficulty in scanning the lines (ahem) correctly.

Starting out from Professor Schick's examination of the metre of the Temple of Glas as a basis, we find the following distinct varieties of line in the Troy Book:

1. The regular decasyllabic line, with or without an extra syllable at the end (Schick's type A):

   Pro. 1. Ó myghty Márs | that wyth thy stérmé lýght
   " 18. Of werre and stryf | in many sondry rewmys
   " 23. Wyth whom whylom | pou wer at meschef take

   Further examples are Prologue 2, 3, 4, 6, 7, 8, 10, 11, 12, etc. The great majority of lines in the Troy Book are of this type.

   That Lydgate (like Chaucer) did not take his caesuras very seriously is evident; for there are many regular lines in which there is no distinct pause after the fourth syllable. Thus:

   Prologue 11. Óf cólour schewyng lýche thē fyry glédé
   " 20. But in the Bolé is thy power lorn
   " 22. Now for the louë of Wicanus wyf
   " 25. And for the louë of thy Bellona
   " 26. That wyth the dwellyth by-3ownd Cirrea
   " 33. For to conveye it wyth thyn influence
   " 37. And hast of manhod the magnificence
   " 40. But maketh Clyo for to ben my muse
   " 47. That weré moder vn-to Orpheus

   Also Pro. 53, 55, 64, 66, 69, 74, 75, 76, 78, 89, 93, 94, 95, 97, etc.

2. Like the above, but with an extra syllable before the caesura (Schick's type B):

   Prologue 98. Thē rótys vértū | þus cán thē frútē rénëwe
   " 105. Whyché me comaundé | the drery pítus fate
   " 133. Hir cól cold árísýng | In Octôbre gán tō dýzt
   " 140. Ûr émŷspérle | to put out of affraye
   " 149. Wher was remembríd | of auctours vs be-forn
   " 191. For vertu only | eschewe to don amys
   " 236. And hów Édippūs | with teris ful pytous

   Book I. 568. Méthámórphósēós | his famus dedis twelue

1 See also I. 3701.
The Varieties of Structure in Lydgate’s lines. Types B and C.

Other examples are, Prologue 198, 241, 272, 276, 294; Book I. 8, 47, 70, 80, 104, 243, 275, 298, etc. Inasmuch as type B may often be made regular—according to our notions of Middle English prosody—by slurring over the syllable before the caesura (especially the es and is of the plural of nouns and the ed’s, eth’s, etc. of verbs) its identification is not always certain. Thus:

Prologue 84. Sō hé ēnióyeth | In vertūnos besýnēssē
   ,,  85. In al that longeth | to manhood dare I seyn
   ,,  141. Wyth brīȝt kalendis | of Phebus v pryst schene
   ,,  142. Out of the boundis | Prōsērpinā the quene
   ,,  209. By lenthē of ȝeris | pē noble worthī fame
   ,,  218. And ēnlūmynēd | with many corīous flour
   ,,  230. On Stace loketh | and pē ȝe may it rede
   ,,  264. They han contrevēd | by false transumpcioun
Book I. 87. But in this mater | I holde no sermon

To my mind, the extra syllable ought to be sounded in all the above lines with the possible exception of Pro. 209, 264, and I. 87. The identity of others—and the same difficulty is to be encountered in reading any type of line—is dependent upon the sounding of final e’s and the like elsewhere than directly before the caesura; and in order to classify these with any degree of certainty, one must be on very familiar terms indeed with Lydgate’s language and methods of versification. The following are a few simple examples:

Prologue 156. Thē whichē sērēnt | ȝē āȝē by prōcēssē
   ,, 116. That of the story | pē trōuth[ē] we nat mys
   ,, 143. Wher Pluto dwelleth | pē dirk[ē] regioun
   ,, 186. Nor of a tyraunt | the trōuthē to expresse
   ,, 263. Throuȝ veyn[ō] fables | whiche of entencioun

3. Lines in which a syllable is missing directly after the caesura (Schick’s type C):

Prologue 9. Êrows ānd wōod | ānd mālēněczyłék
   ,, 16. To loke vp-on | inly furious
   ,, 17. And causer art | wyth thy fery bemys
   ,, 24. So helpe me now | only for hyr sake
   ,, 58. And maistresse art | to musicyns
   ,, 81. To fyn only | vertu for to swe
   ,, 123. It was the ȝere | sothly for to seyne (also 125)
   ,, 130. Tressed lyche gold | as men myȝt[ē] se
   ,, 139. Is callyd than | messanger of day

Thus Prologue 151, 157, 184, 192, 214, 220, 233, 242, 250, 251, 255, 270, 285, etc.
Varieties of Structure in Lydgate's lines. Types C, D, & B D. xiii

As type C may sometimes be altered into type A by the insertion of a syllable at the caesura, there is also a possibility that such syllables, originally written by Lydgate, have occasionally disappeared in the process of transcription. Thus, in Pro. 233: Til Thebes was brouȝt vn-to ruyne, Lydgate may have written y-brouȝt instead of brouȝt, and Pro. 16: To looke vp-on inly furious, may have had so before inly. Unfortunately neither the y- nor the so occurs in the best MSS., and I have made it a rule not to meddle with the caesura: for one thing, we are never certain whether or not the interference is justified, and if once begun and systematically carried out there would be no end to it; and for another, some of the most effective and powerful lines in the Troy Book are of this type.

4. Lines in which the first syllable is omitted (Schick's type D):

Prologue 150. Of thè déde | thè vèrrǐe trèwè córn
,, 158. Of the trouth | to make vs for to faille
,, 221. Besied hem | and feythfully travaylled
,, 229. Crop and rote | riȝt as it was in déde
,, 239. At the fest | of fires funeral

Additional examples are, Pro. 266, 279, 335, 345; Book I. 1, 7, 20, 30, 66, 86, 94, 147, 180, 181, 196, 206. Here too it often happens that there is no distinct pause where we generally look for the caesura:

Prologue 5. Thāt wīth schynŷng óf thŷ strèmës rēdé
,, 13. As the levene that alyȝteth lowe
,, 135. In the myddes of the Scorpion
,, 144. And the furies haue her mansioun
,, 173. And y-dymmed with his sodeyn schoures
,, 179. In her daies whan thei wer alyue

Thus, Prologue 197, 201, 223, 284, 295, 311, Book I. 6, 12, 16, 33, 49, 58, 73, 77, 86, 97, 106, 127, 132, 136, 141, 150, 210, 211, etc.

5. A combination of B and D—the first syllable omitted and an extra beat added before the caesura:

Prologue 41. Wýth hīr sāstrēn | thāt ŏn Pērnāsō dwelle
,, 65. That in makyng | more skylle can than I
,, 326. Of the story | as men in bokys fynde
Book I. 21. For this peple | distroied were serteyn
,, 23. Ful unwarly | as Guydo list discryve
,, 70. Where the apostel | so mochel hadde a-doo
The Varieties of Structure in Lydgate's lines. Types B, D, C, D.

Book I. 89. Nor in fables | no more as now soioure
    118. Crowne and septré | with all the regalye
    176. To his vnclē | ne was he nat grucchyng

Other examples are, Book I. 300, 404, 499, 559, 620, 672, 854, 1202, 1328, 1679, 1700, 1946, 2607, 2619, 2905, 2916, 3298, 3326, 3352, 3368, 3449, 3710, 4323, 4329; Book II. 9, 292, etc. Just as B may sometimes be transformed into A by slurring, syncope, elision, and the like, so may the above type of line apparently be transformed into D:

Prologue 57. Sugrest tongis of rethoricyens
    75. That this fable of amptis was contrevēd
    100. Lyche his fader of maneris and of name
    212. And diffaced the palme laureat
    326. Of the story as men in bokys fynde

Book I. 42. To the goddes with humble sacrificē
    610. And pe boundes pei named ben of alle
    612. As for markys alle other for to lette
    785. And of sparkys pat ben of synty[m] smale

6. A combination of C and D—the first syllable missing together with the one directly following the caesura:

Book I. 31. Whér this kyng | rōmīng tō ānd frō
    308. And his breth | wers than pestilence
    314. Was the fyn | of this hiȝe emprise
    833. After whom | jif I schal nat feyne
    1358. Chargyng hem | in al maner way
    1468. pat saue dethe | per is no passage
    1546. Of pe king | and his renoun reysed

Further examples are Book I. 1828, 2026, 2499, 2937, 2965, 3250, 3832, 3872, 4347, Book II. 1140, 1535, 1587, 1710, 1711, 1845, 2011, 2127, 2358, 2518, 2519, 2610, 2725, 2904, 2966, 3950, 5686, 6229, 6261, 6297, 6428, 6445, 6543, 6759, 6993, 7026, 7109, 7226, 7526, 7864, etc.

Lines with a trisyllabic first measure (Schick's type E), or with a double thesis after the caesura, are very rarely to be met with in the Troy Book; in fact, I have only come across one example of each, although it is quite possible that one or two more may be revealed by a more thorough examination of the text. They are as follows:

1 The fact that such lines are so rare in the earlier works—there are no certain examples in the Temple of Glās—and that they are comparatively frequent in the late Falls of Princes, ought to be of some value in establishing the chronology of Lydgate's writings.
The Varieties of Structure in Lydgate's lines.  Weak lines.  xv

Book II. 8156. With an hurndrid tousand Trowens & hit mo
,, I. 3437. Of his feris | to pe presence of the kyng (D 1 omits pe)

Instances of weak words and unaccented syllables having to support the assis are on the whole not very frequent, certainly less so than would appear at first sight. Among others we have:

Book I. 848. Gan enhabtite pe lond of Cecyle
,, 4323. Ths cite | take her waye (D)
I should prefer, however, to read:

Tó pe cíté | péi táke hér wéyé áftrér (: rafter)

Book II. 2732. Of iúst répórt | á mánílér mán
It is also possible to read:

Óf iúst[ë] répórt | á mánílér mán

But the line is not a good one, twist and turn it as we will.

Book II. 4431. Ànd of his talé pé kyng máde án énde
,, 5645. À lárge tómbé Ànd á sàtúe à-lótte
,, 6547. With á prówde mán tó bé confédérat
(Comp. also 7009 and 7018.)

Book II. 6648. Óf hir hâd | mákéd délyúcáunce
,, 7030. Fôr òfté it fâlléth à wrong Is wroȝt
,, 7925. Fôr móst ñxpléit | bê niȝt prûcûly
,, IV. 4750. pât bësi árte | pé kyng tó ëcîûte

Lines are also occasionally to be found which may apparently be read either as C or D merely by shifting the accent from the first to the second syllable and vice versa. Examples are:

Prologue 19. Whôs lôrdschýpe is | móst in Cápȳrcórn (C)
,, 281. Thér-fôr hé wás tó hêm fàuðuráble (D)
,, 165. Bût fôr pât hé wás bût zônge Ànd skléndér (D)
Book I. 193. Thât nó mán myȝt | âs bê sýgne ëspíë (C)
,, 2353. First hôw pât Í schál õs pûrpûs fûn (D)

By adding a silent e to myȝt we have type A:

Thât nó mán mýȝtê âs bê sýgne ëspíë

Book I. 1501. Óf hir pât is | tó mè móst ñntéré (C)
,, 2353. First hôw pât Í schál õs pûrpûs fûn (D)
Although in each instance I prefer the form first given, the question is not an easy one for us to decide, obvious as it may have been to the early fifteenth century reader.

Hopelessly bad lines, by which I mean such as have more than twelve syllables, do not occur in the *Troy Book*. On the other hand, Prologue 101:

In sothfastnesse this no tale is
would appear to have but four beats; for *tale is* is dissyllabic and rhymes with *Walys*. In I. 719:

For-weried after [her] trauaille,

the omission of *her* may safely be put down to the carelessness of the scribes; for a little farther on (727) the identical line is repeated with *her*. Other four-beat lines there are none, so far as I have been able to discover.

That thirteen, or, for that matter, sixteen syllable lines are to be found in greater or lesser profusion in late manuscripts,¹ is no more than is to be expected; and had we no other evidence than texts that fairly bristle with corruptions, there would indeed be some reason for our doubting—in spite of the unanimous testimony of Lydgate's contemporaries, who were far better judges of Middle English verse than we are—the ability of the author of the *Troy Book* to handle his five-beat couplets with the skill of a Lancastrian schoolboy. Fortunately, in the case of the *Troy Book* we are not thrown back upon the ignorance and bumptiousness of late fifteenth, or early sixteenth, century copyists and editors. The violent prejudice which has occasionally been exhibited against Lydgate's metre seems to have had its origin in poor texts or editions printed from only one text,² which, even when good, is no more than human—every copyist like every editor has his personal equation—and Lydgate's own words to the effect that he “took no heed neither of short nor long.”³

On editions printed from only one text, when other texts are to be had, no words need be wasted; and as for Lydgate's heedlessness of quantity and unaccented syllables, considering that he was neither a Latin nor a French poet, but an Englishman, writing in his own tongue, it matters little, so long as he paid due regard to the swing

¹ For further details, see the account of MS. Digby 230 and of the 1555 print in my *Description, etc. of the Manuscripts and Prints.*

² The practice of printing type fac-similes of what are apparently the best MSS. of the works of a Middle English poet is scarcely more helpful to our knowledge of the texts than fair to the author, who is thus made responsible for whatever omissions, gratuitous emendations, carelessnesses and other unedifying performances it suited the scribes' fancy to indulge in.

³ Book II. 181 ff.
of his dominant five beats. Indeed, his somewhat arbitrary inclusion or omission of unaccented syllables shows plainly enough that the tendency he followed (quite aside from his merits or demerits as a metrist) was to return from Chaucer's and Gower's syllabic purism to the rougher and readier traditional usage of his countrymen.

Although an elaborate analysis of the poem is given in the side-notes to this and the succeeding volume, the following general survey of the contents of the Troy Book may nevertheless prove of some use as an aid to the reader in getting his bearings. Practically the whole of Book I is taken up with the expedition of the Argonauts, beginning with Jason's parentage and ending with the destruction of Old Troy, the death of King Laomedon, and the carrying off of his daughter Hesione to Greece by Telamon Ajax. Worthy of note are the entertaining and original account of the Labours of Hercules (573 ff.), the love-story of Jason and Medea, which begins about line 1564, Guido's animadversions on women, apropos of Medea, Lydgate's amusing reproof of Guido (2072 ff.), the description of the magic charms given to Jason by Medea as a means of avoiding the dangers of the conquest of the Golden Fleece (2988 ff.), of Jason's battle with the Brazen Bulls (3260 ff.), and of the virtues of the stone "Achates" (3320 ff.).

After some introductory remarks on the vicissitudes of the goddess Fortuna, Book II. begins with a description of Priam and his family, and a highly interesting account of the rebuilding of Troy (479 ff.). Antenor is sent on a peaceful but unsuccessful mission to Greece for the recovery of Hesione (1295 ff.), and on his return Priam decides (1745 ff.)—against the better judgment of Hector, Helenus, and Pentheus, who tells of his father's having prophesied the fall of Troy (3161 ff.), and to the horror of Cassandra, who foretells disaster—to send Paris to make reprisals. After burning a castle and sacking the Temple of Venus, Paris returns with Helen and marries her (3755 ff.), at which Cassandra makes such a violent uproar that she has to be bound fast and locked up in prison (4190 ff.). The sorrow of the forsaken Menelaus (4255 ff.) is somewhat relieved by the decision of the Greeks to assist him to take vengeance and recover his wife. A detailed description of the personal appearance and manners of the Greek and Trojan leaders follows (4509). It is here that the famous eulogy of Chaucer occurs (4677-4735). The Greek ships and forces are
conscientiously enumerated (5067 ff.), and Achilles is dispatched to Delos to consult the oracle, where he is joined by the Trojan priest Calchas (5391 ff. 5936). A long and entertaining digression on idolatry is inserted here. Finally the Greeks set out for Troy; Achilles defeats and mortally wounds Teuthras, king of Mysia, whither he has been sent by Agamemnon for provisions, and the book ends with the Greek army encamped on the Plain of Troy. Passages of special interest (in addition to the elaborate description of the rebuilding of Troy) are the amusing account of Antenor's reception by the princes of Greece (1295–1700), the Vision of Paris (2369–2809), a fresh outburst on Guido's part against women, apropos of Helen (3536 ff.), and Lydgate's unfailing reply, Paris's wedding feast (4179 ff.), and Cassandra's didoes when she heard of it (4190–4252). The fine lines spoken by Agamemnon to comfort Menelaus (4337–4427) are among the best in the *Troy Book*, especially 4379 ff. The digression on false gods (5404–5940) is also of unusual interest, in particular the account of Bacchus and of Lucifer.

Book III. has mainly to do with the battles fought by the two armies before the walls of Troy, and is consequently rather less varied in contents than either Book I. or II. The Trojan and Greek commanders and the force assigned to each are first enumerated and described (119–715), and Chaucer is praised (550 ff.). Patroclus is slain by Hector (781), and the first battle ends (1950). Cassandra is again heard from (2238), and shut up in gaol for the second time because of her disagreeable noise. The wondrous archer, half horse, half man, whose eyes blazed like a furnace-mouth, is described (3433 ff.), and slain by Diomedes (3506), and Cressida is to be restored to her father (3672). Hector visits Achilles (3755), and it is agreed to by them to pay off all scores in single combat—the Greeks to break the siege and depart to their homes if Hector wins. Although Priam is willing, neither army will hear of it. The story of Troilus and Cressida is carried on intermittently for several hundred lines (4077 ff.). Chaucer and his book of Troilus and Cressida are mentioned at 4197 ff., and Petrarch at 4251. A fresh outburst of Guido's against women (4270) causes Lydgate's heart to bleed for ire (4350). At 4770 Ilion is described. Andromache's dream (4889) and the death of Hector (5335 ff.) are followed by an interesting lament (5423 ff.). The book ends with the embalming of Hector's body and his peculiar burial (5579 ff.).

Book IV. is also largely made up of more or less monotonous
brief sketch of the contents of this troy book. book iv. xix

descriptions of battles, and by reason of its in part extreme prolixity is perhaps the least interesting of all. It begins with a congratulatory address by Agamemnon on the death of Hector. Palamedes objects to Agamemnon's leadership, and is elected "emperor" of the Greek forces in his stead (312). Achilles disapproves because his advice was not consulted. The Trojans arm themselves, and Priam excels all in valour. Achilles visits Troy (546) and falls in love at first sight with Polyxena. Priam is willing to agree to the marriage on condition that it lead to a permanent peace (869), but the Greeks won't consent (1135 ff.), and Achilles sulks. Palamedes mortally wounds Deiphobus with a spear, and Paris pierces Palamedes's throat with an arrow (1286 ff.). Agamemnon is re-elected general (1616). Troilus unhorses Diomedes (2060) and upbraids him for his love of Cressida. Achilles lends the Greeks his Myrmidons (2198), but refuses to accompany them to battle. Troilus twice puts the Greeks to flight, and cuts up the Myrmidons so badly that Achilles in wrath throws over Polyxena and sallies forth against the Trojans (2539 ff.). He treacherously puts Troilus to death (2760) and ties him to the tail of his horse. Lydgate remonstrates with Homer for having praised Achilles (2784 ff.), and the death of Troilus is lamented. Achilles is assassinated in the Temple of Apollo at Troy by Paris (3168 ff.), and Paris and Ajax Telamon slay one another in battle (3520 ff.). The Queen of the Amazons, who loved Hector, comes to help the Trojans (3759 ff.) with 1000 maidens armed in bright steel, and performs marvels of strength. Achilles' son Pyrrus joins the Greeks (3974), is knighted by Agamemnon, and fights with Penthesilea (4133). Ajax Telamon,1 already slain by Paris (3520), turns up again, apparently none the worse for it (4248); Pyrrus gives Penthesilea her death wound (4336), and the author scolds the god Mars for his delight in murder and death (4440). Anchyses, Eneas, Antenor, and Polydamas plot to betray Troy to the Greeks that their own lives and possessions may be saved (4538 ff.). In spite of Priam's suspicions and attempt to have them assassinated by Amphimacus, they carry through their scheme. Thonante is bribed to hand the Palladium over to the Greeks (5735 ff.), which gives Lydgate a welcome opportunity for a digression on the avariciousness of priests (5867 ff.). Calchas suggests the expedient of the Horse of Brass (6023 ff.), the Greeks enter Troy (6296 ff.), and general

1 It may have been Young Ajax Telamon, son of Old Ajax and Hesione (see Book III. 2038 ff.), whom Paris slew. But Lydgate is not very explicit.
Brief Sketch of the Contents of this Troy Book.  Book V.

destruction follows. The book closes with a fresh lament and an interesting digression on idolatry (6931 ff.).

In Book V. is told the fate of the surviving Greeks and Trojans. Ajax Telamon and Ulysses quarrel over the Palladium, and Ajax is found murdered in his tent (276). Pyrrus vows to avenge his death on Ulysses, who takes to his ships, after handing over the Palladium to Diomedes. The Greeks are reconciled to Antenor (340), but threaten Eneas for having concealed Polyxena (359 ff.). Eneas returns to Troy, falls out with Antenor, and both are exiled (508). The Greeks are shipwrecked (618 ff.). King Nautilus is made to believe that his son Palamedes was murdered by Ulysses and Diomedes with the knowledge and approval of Agamemnon and Menelaus (697 ff.), and in his desire for vengeance sets up false lights on the hills to lure the homeward-bound Greek ships to his rocky coasts; 200 of them are destroyed. Agamemnon is murdered (1011 ff.), the adventures of Diomedes and of Eneas are described (1434 ff.), and the vengeance of Orestes (1467 ff.). Ulysses relates the story of his wanderings to king Idomeneus (1781 ff.), and the history of his life is continued (2110, 2314). The story of Pyrrus, son of Achilles, is next told, and his vengeance on Adrastus. Pyrrus is slain by Orestes (2795). The book closes with the final adventures and death of Ulysses, the statistics of the Trojan war, and an informal epilogue.
LYDGATE’S TROY BOOK.

[MS. COTT. AUGUSTUS A. IV.]

PROLOGUE.

O MYGHTY Mars, that wyth thy sterne lyght
In armys hast the power & be my^t,
And named art from est til occident
The myghty lorde, the god armypotent,
That, wyth schynyng of thy stremes rede,
By influence dost the brydel lede

Of cheualry, as souereyn and patrown,
Ful hoot and drye of complexioun,
Irows and wood and malencolyk,
And of nature brent and coleryk,
Of colour schewyng lyche the fyry* glede,
Whos feerce lokes ben as ful of drede

As the levene that aly3teth lowe
Down by the skye from Iubiteris bowe!
Thy stremes ben so passyng despitous,
To loke vp-on, inly furious,
And causer art wyth thy fery bemys
Of werre and stryf in many sondry rewmys;
Whos lordschype is most in Caprycorn,
But in the bole is thy power lorn;
And causer art of contek and of strif,
Now, for the loue of Wlcanus wyf,
Wyth whom whylom þou wer at meschef take,
So helpe me now, only for hyr sake,
And for the love of thy Bellona,
That wyth the dwellyth by-3ownd Cirrea
In Lebye-londe vp-on the sondes rede;
So be myn helpe in this grete nede

1-163 are missing in D 1. 11. fyry] fyre C.
28. So be myn helpe] So helpe A.

TROY BOOK.
Lydgates Appeal to the Muses for help. [PROLOG.

Lydgate appeals for help, to Mars,
To do socour my stile to directe,
And of my penne the tracys to correcte,
Whyche bareyn is of aureat lycour,
But in thi grace I fynde som fauour
For to conveye it wyth thyn influence,
That stumbleth ay for faute of eloquence
For to reherse or writen any word;
Now help, o Mars, pat art of knyghthod lord,
And hast of manhod the magnificence!
And Othea, goddesse of prudence,
This wirke texspleye that 3e nat refuse,
But maketh Clyo for to ben my muse,
Wyth hir sustren that on Pernaso* dwelle
In Cirrea by Elicon the welle,
Rennyng ful clere wyth st[r]emys cristallyn,
And callyd is the welle Caballyn
That sprang by touche of the Pegasee.
And helpe also, O thou Calliope,
That were moder vn-to Orpheus,
Whos dites wern so mellodyus,
That the werbles of his resownyng harpe
Appese dyde the bitter wyrdys scharpe,
Bothe of parchas and furies infernal,
And Cerberus so cruell founde at al;
He coyede also best[e], foule, and tree.
Now of thy grace be helpyng vn-to me,
And of thy golde dewe lat the lycour wete
My dulled brest, that wyth thyn hony swete
Sugrest tongis of rethoricysens,
And maistresse art to Musicyens:
Now be myn help tenlumyne with his wirk,
Whyche am beset with cloudis dym and dirk
Of ygnoraunce, in makyng to procede,
To be lusty to hem that schal it rede.
Also in hert I am so ful of drede,
Whan prudent lysters her-to schal take hede,
That in makyng more skylle can than I,
To whom I preie, ful benignely

41. Pernaso] Pernasa C.
40. wyrdys] wyndes A.
53. coyede] cowde A.
58. to] of D 2.
Of her goodnesse to haue compasioun
Wher as I erre in my translacioun.
For God I take hyʒly to wytteneesse
That I this wirk of hertly lowe humblesse
Toke vp-on me of entencioun,
Devoyd of pride and presumpcioun,
For to obeie with-oute variaunce
My lordes byddyng fully and plesannece,
Whiche hath desire, sothly for to seyn,
Of verray knyʒthod to remembre ageyn
The worthynes, zif I schal nat lye,
And the prowesse of olde chiualrie,
By-cause he hath Ioye and gret dreynyte
To rede in bokys of antiques,
To fyn* only, vertu for to swe
Be example of hem, and also for to eschewe
The cursyd vice of slowthe and ydelnesse.
So he enioyeth in vertuous besynesse,
In al that longeth to manhood, dar I seyn,
He besyeth euere, and ther-to is so fayn
To hawnte his body in pleies marcyal,
Thoruz excersice texclude slouthe at al,
After the doctrine of Vygecius.
Thus is he bothe manful and vertuous,
More passyngly ſan I can of hym write:
I wante connynge his hige renoun tendite,
So moche of manhood men may in hym sen.
And for to witen whom I wolde mene,
The eldest sone of the noble kyng,
Henri the firpe, of knyʒthood welle & spryng,
In whom is schewed of what stok he grewe;
The rotys vertu þus can the frute renewe—
In euery part the tarage is the same,
Lyche his fader of maneris and of name,
In sothefastnesse, this no tale is,
Callid Henry ek, the worthy prynce of Walys,
Lydgate began this Englishing, A.D. 1412. [PROLOG.

Prince Henry bade me translate the Siege and Destruction of Troy,
as told by Guido,

and I undertook to do it in his honour,
in 14 Henry IV, A.D. 1412,

when the moon rose in October.

To whom schal longe by successiou
For to gourene Brutys Albynou—
Whyche me comaundd the drery pits fate
Of hem of Troye in englysche to translate,
The sege also and the destruccioun,
Lyche as the latyn maketh mencionu,
For to compyle, and after Guydo make,
So as I coude, and write it for his sake,
By-cause he wolde that to hyse and lowe
The noble story openly wer knowe
Inoure tongue, aboute in euery age,
And y-writen as wel in oure langage
As in latyn and in frensche it is;
That of the story je trouthe[es] we nat mys
No more than doth eche other nacioun:
This was the fyn of his entencioun.
The whyche emprise anoon I gynne schal
In his worshipt for a memorial.
And of the tyme to make mencionu,
When I be-gan of this translacioun,
It was the 3ere, sothely for to seyne,
Fourtene complete of his fadris regne,
The tyme of 3ere, schortly to conclude,
When twenty grees was Phebus altitude,
The hour whan he made his stedis drawe
His rosen chariet lowe vnder the wave
To bathe his bemys in the wawy see,
Tressed lyche gold, as men my3t[es] see,
Passyng the bordure of oure occian;
And Lucyna, of colour pale and wan,
Hir cold* arsyng in Octobre gan to dy3t,
Tencha the dirknesse of the frosty ny3t,
In the myddes of the scorpion;
And Esperus gan to wester down,
To haste hir cours ageyn pe morwe graye;
And Lucifer, the ny3t to voyde a-waye,
Is callyd than, messenger of day,
Our emyspery to put out of affraye

PROLOG.  The Troy Book.  The Worth of Writers.

Wyth bryst kalendis of Phebus vpryst* schene
Out of the bounddis Proserpina the quene,
Wher Pluto dwelleth, the dirk[e] regioun,
And the furies haue her mansio[n];
Til after some Appollo lyst nat tarie
To take soiour in the Sagittarie.

Whyche tyme I gan the prolog to beholde
Of Troye Boke, I-made be dayes olde,
Wher was remembrid, of auctours* vs be-forn,
Of the dede the* verreie trewe corn,
So as it fil seuerid from the chaf;
For in her honde they hilde for a staf
The trouthe only, whyche thei han compyled
Vn-to this fyn, that we wer nat begyled
Of negligence thoru; forgeltilnesse.

The whiche serpent of age by processe
Engendred is fersly vs tassaille,
Of the trouth to make vs for to faille;
For ner[e] writers, al wer out of mynde,
Nat story only, but of nature and kynde
The trewe knowyng schulde haue gon to wrak,
And from science oure wittes put a-bak,
Ne hadde oure elderis cerched out and sou3t
The sothefast pyth, to ympe it in oure thou^t,
Of things passed, for-dirked of her hewe,
But thoru3 writyng pei be refresched newe,
Of oure aunectrys left to vs by-hynde;
To make a merour only to oure mynde,
To seen eche thing trewly as it was,
More bry3t and clere þan in any glas.
For ner her writyng nowe memorial,
Dethe with his swerde schulde haue slay[e]n al,
And y-dymmed with his sodeyn schoures
The gre[e] prowes of thise conquerouris,
And dirk[ed] eke the bry[t]nesse of her fame,
That schyneth ȝet by report of her name;

Then, in 1412, I lookt at the Prolog of the Troy Book,
written by truthful men.
Without writers, knowledge would have died:
they enable us to see things as they really were,
and stop Death dimming the brightness of heroes’ fame.

141. vpryst] vpe\^t C.  144. furies] fuyres D 2.
149. auctours] anownts C.  150. 2nd the] of the C.
152. hilde] holde A.  157. fersly] fresshly A.
6 How Writers were cherisht of old, & sang of noble deeds. [PROLOG.

For vn-to vs her bokes represent
With-out[e] feynyng e pe weie ðat ðei went
In her daies, whan thei wer alyue.
Ageyn the trouthe who so euere sryuye,
Or counterplete or make any debate,
The sothe is rad of hiȝe or lowe estate,
With-oute fauour, who so list take hede;
For after deth clerkis lityl drede
After desert for to bere witnesse,
Nor of a tyraunt the trouthe to expresse,
As men disserue, with-oute excepciou;
With lak or prys ðei graunt hem her guerdoun.
Wherfore me semeth euery maner man
Sculde be his live in al that euer he can
For vertu only escheve to don anys;
For after dethe, pleynly as it is,
Clerkis wil write, and excepte noon,
The pleyn[e] trouthe whan a man is goon.
And by olde tyme for her writing trewe
Thei cherisched werne of lوردes ðat hem knewe,
And honoured gretily in tho dawes;
For they enacted and gilte with her sawes
Her hyȝe renoun, her manhood and prowes,
Her knyȝthood eke and her worthynes,
Her tryvmphes also and victories,
Her famous conquest and her songe glories,
From poynt to poynt rehersyng al þe trouthe,
With-out[e] fraude, neglignce, or slowthe
Thei dide her labour and her besynesse.

For elles certyn the grete worthynesse
Of her dedis hadde ben in veyn;
For-dirked age elles wolde haue slayn
By lente of þeris ðe noble worthi fame
Of conquerours, and pleynly of her name
For-dymmed eke the lettris aureat,
And diffaced the palme laureat,

182. hiȝe or lowe] lowe or hiȝe D 1. 190. be] in A.
208. For-dirked] For derke D 1.
PROLOG. Statius tells the Siege of Thebes, & Guido that of Troy. 7

Whiche þat þei wan by knyþthod in her dayes, of their knightly acts,
Whos fretyng rust newe and newe assayes 216 which now clerks
For to eclipse the honour and the glorie
Of hîe prowes, whiche clerkis in memorie
Han trewyly set thorûþ diligent labour,
And enlumyned with many corious flour
Of rethorik, to make vs comprehende
The trouthe of al, as it was in kende;
Besied hem and feythfully travaylled
Agayn al that þat age wolde assayled,
In her bokes euery thyng I-set,
And with the keye of remembrauunce it schet,
Which lasteth set, and dureth euer in oon.
Recorde of Thebes, þat was so long a-goon,
Of which the rueyne and* distrucciuþ
þe may beholde by gode inspeciouþ,
Crop and rote, riþt as it was in dede,
On Stace loketh, and þer þe may it rede: [leaf 2 b]
How Polynerce and Ethiocles,
The brether two, ne kowde nat lyne in pees
Til Thebes was brouþt vn-to ruyne,
And al the maner how thei dide fyne;
The deth also of worthi Tydeus,
And how Edippus, with teris ful pytous,
Wepte oute his eyne, and al his drery peyen,
And how the smokys departid wer in tweyen,
At the fest of fires funeral—
In greþ[e] Stace 3e may reden al—
The fyre engendered by brotherly hatrede,
Wher-thoruþ þat deth was þe cruel mede,
In verray sothe, of many worthi man,
Lyche as myn auctor wel reherse can.
Of Troye also, þat was of latter þeres,
By dillygence of cronyc[u]leris
þe may beholde in her wrtyng wel
The stryfe, the werre, þe sege and euerydel,

233. vn-to] in to A. 238. in] oon A, on D 2.
213. dillygence of] dilligence grete of wyse D 1.
The Tale of Troy shall never die. Homer lied about it. [PROLOG.

This Troy story is still fresh and living.

Neither Death nor Age can kill it.

For Homer pretended that the Gods helped the Greeks;

whose ally he was.

This was wrong of Homer.

Love blinded him.

Ryste as it was, so many 3eres passyd.

Who's story 3it age hath nou3t diffaced,

Nor cruel deth, with his mortal strokys;

For maugre deth, 3e may beholde in boky; The story fully rehearsed new and newe,

And freschely floure of colour and of hewe From day to day, quyk & no thyng feynt. For clerkys han this story so depeynt,

That deth nor age, by no maner weye, The trouthe may not maken for to deye; Al-be that somme han the trouthe[e] spared In her writyng, and pleynly not declared So as it was, nor tolde out faithfully, But it transformed in her possey

Thoru3 veyn[e] fables, which of entencioun They han contrevd by false transumpcioun To hyde trouthe falsely vnder cloude,

And the sothe of malys for to schroude, As Omer dide, the whiche in his writyng I-feyned hathe ful many diuers thyng That neuer was, as Guydo lyst denise, And thingys done in a-nother wyse

He hathe transformed than pe troupe was, And feyned falsly that goddis in pis caas The worthi Grekis holpen to werreye Ageyn Troyens, and howe pat pei wer seye Lyche lyfly men amonge hem day by day. And in his dites, pat wer so fresche & gay With sugred wordes vnder hony soote, His galle is hidde lowe by the rote,

That it may nou3t outewarde ben espied. And al for he with Grekis was allied, Ther-for he was to hem fauourable

In myche thing, which is nou3t commendable Of hem pat lyst to demen after ry3t;

For in makyng, loue hath lost his sy3t, To 3ene a pris wher noon is disserued, Cupide [is] blynde, whos domys ben obseruyd

More after lust than after equite,  
Or after resoun how the truth[e] be.  
For singulerte and false affeccioun  
Reyseth * ful ofte by veyn[e] lausioun  
A man to worshipt pat disserueth noon,  
By false reporte, and * pis ful many oon  
With-oute merit hath his fame blowe—  
Wher of another * renoun is vnknowe,  
That in armys hath meruelles wrought,  
Of whom par-aunter speketh no man nouz—  
For fauour only is fostered more than ryzt,  
That hyndered hath many [a] worpi knyzt.  
Ovide also poetycally hath closyd  
Falshede with trouthe, pat makep men ennosed  
To whiche parte * pei schal hem holde—  
His mysty speche so hard is to vsfolde,  
That * entriketh rederis that it se.  
Virgile also, for loue of Enee,  
In Eneydos rehersyth moche thyng,  
And was in party trewe of his writynge,  
Exsepte only that hym lyst som whyle  
The tracys folwe of Omeris stile;  
And of * is sege wrot eke Lollius,  
But to-forn alle, Dares Frigius  
Wrot moste trewly after pat he fonde,  
And Dytes eke of the Grekys lond.  
They were present and seyen euerydell,  
And as it fel they write trewe and wel,  
Eche in his tonge, by swyche consonaunce,  
That in her bokys was no variaunce,  
Whiche after wern vn-to Athenes brouz,  
And by processe serched oute and souz  
By dillygence of oon Cornelius,  
Whyche was nevewe vn-to Salustius,  
Of Rome y-born, whiche dide his dever dewe

288. how] how pat D 1.  
290. Reyseth] Rysed C.  
293. blowe] y-blowe D 1.  
295. hath] ha propriet D 1.  
296. speketh] wirkep D 1.  
298. hyndered] hindrip D 1.  
299. poetycally] Poete ytally A.  
301. schall] shulde D 1.  
303. it] he C.  
306. of] in D 1.  
309. pis] the D 1.  
313. They] For they A.
Cornelius gave no proper Details of the Siege of Troy. [PROLOG.

Hem to translate, and the tracys sewe
Of thise auctours by good avisement.
But by-caus he sette [al] his entent
For to be brefe, he lefte moche be-hynde
Of the story, as men in bokys fynde,
The firste mevyng and cause original,
What was the gynnyng and rote in special,
Ne how thei come by lond or by navie,
How firste the sparke was kyndeled of envie
A-twyxe Grekins and hem of Troye town,
Of whiche Cornelye maketh no mencion,
Of her schippes nor of her vitaille,
Nor how pat Grece is called Gret Ytaille,
And the lasse, as bokys verrefye,
Is named now the londe of Romanye,
What noumbe of kynges and of dukes went
Toward the sege, al of oon assent,
To wynne worship & for excersise
Of armys only, in ful kny3tly wyse,
Abydyng there to sen the versiou
Of the cite and noble Yllyoun,
Nor what the maner was of her armure,
Nor at the sege who lengest dide * endure,
In what wyse eche other dide assaile,
Nor how often thei metten in bataille,
How mony worthi loste ther his lyf
Thorou3 olde hatrede wrougt vp with newe st[r]if,
Nor of her dethe he dateth nat the 3ere,
For his writyng was particular;
With-oute frute he was compendious,
This forseyde Romeyne, this Cornelius.
Wherfore but late in comparisoun,
Ther was an auctour of ful hige renoun
That besied hym the tracys for to swe
Of Dite and Dares, & cast hym nat transmwe

328. What was the gynnyng[ That was bigynnynge D 1.
344. lengest dide] dide lengest C.
347. loste ther his] there loste here D 1.
353. in] as in D 1.
PROLOG.] *Guido is the real Authority on Troy, and I follow him.*

In all the story a word as in sentence,  
But folweth hem by swyche convenience,  
That in effecte the substaunce is the same;  
And of Columpna Guydo was his name,  
Whiche had in writyng passyng excellency.  
For he enlvmyneth by crafte & cadence  
This noble story with many fresche colour  
Of rethorik, and many riche flour  
Of eloquence to make it sownde bet  
He in the story hath ymped in and set,  
That in good feythe I trowe he hath no pere,  
To rekne alle pat write of this mater,  
As in his boke 3e may beholde and se.  
To whom I seie, knelyng on my knee:  
Laude and honour & excellency of fame,  
O Guydo maister, be vn-to thi name,  
That excellest * by souereinte of stile  
Alle that writen this mater to compile.  
Whom I schal folwe as ny3e as euer I may,  
That God me graunt it be vn-to the pay  
Of hym for whom I haue vndertake  
So as I can this story for to make,  
Preynge to alle pat schal it rede or se,  
Wher as I erre for to amenden me,  
Of humble herte and lowe entenciouw  
Commyttyng al to her correcciouw,  
And ther-of thanke; my will is *pat* bei wynne,  
For thoru3 her support *bus* I wil begynne.  

["Explicit prologus"]

---

365. bet] be bete D 1.  
366. hath] had D 1.  
367. of] in A, on D 2.  
368. 369-162 of Book I. are missing in A.  
370. &] with D 1.  
371. excel] excellent C.  
372. ny3e] moche D 1.  
373. this] be D 1.  
374. om. D 2, D 1.  
1 The above rubric occurs in both D 2 and D 1.
BOOK I.

Here bigynneth ye first boke of Troy: howe Esone resyngned ye Crowne of Thesaly to Pellee.1

In Thessaly, I
Of Peleus, King of Thessaly, and his Myrmidons. [BK. I

Peleus was King.

The whiche is now y-named Salonye,
Ther was a kyng callyd Pelleus,
Wys & discrete & also vertuous.

The whiche, as Guydo lyst to specifie,
Hele the lordschipe and the regallye
Of this yle, as gouernour and kyng,
Of which [pe] pepil, by record of writyng,
Myrundones were called in tho dawes,
Of whom Ovyde feyneth in his sawes,
Methamorphoseos, where as 3e may rede
How pis peple sothfastly in dede,
So as myn auctor maketh mencioun,

and his folk were Myrmidons,
as Ovid tells.

They were all destroyd by lightning,

They were all destroyd by lightning,

sword and pestilence,

except the King, who went

1. of the D 1. 2. y-named] named D 2, enamed D 1.
For King Peleus, Jupiter turns Ants into Men.

In-to a wode for to make his mone,  
Sool by hym silfe, al disconsolate,  
In a place that stood al discolat,  
Wher this kyng, rooming to and fro,  
Compleynynge ay of his fatal woo  
And the harmys þat he dide endure—  
Til at the laste, of caas or aventure,  
Besyde an holt he sawe wher stode a tre  
Of ful gret heſt and large of quantite,  
Holwe by the rote, as he kowde knowe,  
Wher as he sawe, by the erthe lowe,  
Of amptis crepe passyng gret plente,  
With whiche sypte he felle down on his kne  
And made his preyer in his paynym wyse  
To the goddes with humble sacrifyse,  
Vp-on his wo and gret aduersite  
Only of mercy for to haue pyte,  
To turne thise amptis in-to forme of man.  
Thus gan he praye, with colour pale and wan,  
His lond tenhabite whiche stondeth disolat,  
And he alone, awaped and amaat,  
Comfortles of any creature,  
Hym to releu of that he dide endure.  
And, as Ovide maketh menciouw,  
That Iubiter herde his orisoun,  
And hath swiche rowth on hym at þe laste,  
That he anoon fulfilled his requeste,  
And of his myȝte, whiche þat is devine,  
His grace he made from henene for* to schyne  
Benyngnely vn-to the erthe dovyn,  
That a sodeyn transmutacioun  
Was made of amptis to forme of men anon,  
Whiche on her feet gode streȝt to goon.  
To Thesalye and salue ther the kyng,  
And lyche his liges token her dwellynge  
With-Inne a cite called tho Egee,  
As in Ovide þe may beholde and see.  
The whiche people for her worthines,
For her strenthe and gret[e] hardynes
Myrundones so longe haue boor the name—
As in the lyfe 3e reden may the same
Of seynt Mathewe, how thei be called soo,
Where the apostel so mochel hadde a-doo—
Whiche for wisdam & prudent aduertence,
Besy labour and wilful dilligence,
By for-seynge and discreciouw,
As I suppose* in myn opiouw,
This that fable of amptis was contreved,
Whiche by her wysdum han so myche achevid
Thoruz her kny3thod, who so list to loke
Her manly dedis thoruz-out Troie boke.
In al meschef so wel thei han hem born
That þei ful wysly prouided wern to-forn
Or that it fil, bothe in werre and pees;
For of no slouthe þei wer nat rek[e]les,
But as the ampte teschewen ydelnesse
In somer is so ful of besynesse—
Or wynter com, to sauen hir fro colde
Sche to-forne astored hath hir holde.
But in this mater I holde no sermoun,
I wil no longer make digressioun,
Nor in fables no more as now soiourne,
But there I lefte I wyl agayn retourne,
Of Pelleus ferther to procede:
Wiche kyng, forsothe, in story as I rede,
And as myn auctor lysteth to endyte,
Had a wyf that called was Tedite;
Of whiche two, platly this no les,
The manly man, the hardy Achilles,*
So as Guydo lesteth to termyne,
Descended was, sothly as by lyne,
Most renomd of manhood and of myʒt
Amonges Grekis, and the beste knyʒt

95. this] pis is D 1.
96. misplaced in C at top of column and marked b; 95 is marked a.
I-holde in sothe, thorou3-oute al her lond,
In worthines preued of his hond.
Whos cruelte Troiens sore about;
So passyng Merueilles in armys per he wrou[3]t
Duryng the sege, as 3e schal after lere,*
Paciently 3if 3e liste to here. *
But Pelleus, that I spak of a-forne,
A brother hadde of o moder born,
That hynte Eson, so fer y-ronne in zeris,
That he of luste hath lost al his desyris,
So fer he was y-cropen in-to age,
pat al his witte was turned to dotage;
For bothe mynde and memorial
For-dulled wern and dirked so at al,
That verrailly his discrciou
Was hym biraffe, in conclusion.
Wherfor the regne and lond of Thesalye,
Crovne and septre with al the regalye,
He hath resygned his brother for to queme,
Estate royal and also diademe:
B y-cause he was croked, lame, & blynde,
And to gouerne loste bope wit & mynde,
So febled was his celle retentif
And fordirked his ymaginatif,
That lost were bothe memorie and resououn;
For whiche he made a resygnacion
To his brother, next heyr by degre,
And next allye of his affinite.
But as somme auctours in her bokys seyn,
To southe he was restored new ageyn
By crafte of Medee, the gret sorceresse,
And renewed to his hustynesse;
For with hyr herbes and hir pocionas,*
Sotyl wyrchyng[es] of confeccious,
By que[ntyse ek]e of hir instrumentys,

106.  here] lere C.
107.  spak of] of spak D 2, of speke D 1—a-forne] by-forne D 2,
beorn D 1. 111 y-cropen] cropen D 2, D ’ 1.
133. pocionas] porciouws C. 135. of] and D 2.
Of Eson's son Jason, and the Love all folk bore him.

With hir charmys and enchauntmentys,*
Sche made a drynke, in boky as is * tolde,
In whiche a 3erde that was drye and olde
Withoute abod anoon as she it * caste
To blosme and budde it be-gan as faste,
Turne grene and fresche for to beholde.
And þorúþ þis drinke sche hath fro 3eris olde
Eson restored vn-to lusty age,
And was of witte & resouz eke as sage
As euer he had his lyve ben a-forn.

Eson's son was Jason,
The whiche Eson, of his wyfe y-born,
Hadde a son, and Jason was his name,
In wirk of whom Nature nas to blame;
For sche hir crafte platly and konnyng
Spent vp-on hym hooly in wirkyng,
Whan sche hym made, with hert[e], wil, & þouȝt,
That of hir crafte behynde was ryȝt nouȝt.
To rekne his schap and also his fayrnes,
His strenthe, his bewte, and his lyflynes,
His gentilles and wyse gouȝnaunce,
How large he was, and of daliaunce
The most[e] goodly þat men koude knowe,
In al his port bothe to hyȝe and lowe;
And with al þis avise and tretable—
That of konnyng God wot I am nat able
For to discreete * his vertues by and by.
For as myn auctor telleth feithefully,
He was beloued so of old and ȝonge,
That thoruȝ þe londe is his * honour spronge;
But for þat he was but ȝonge and sklender,
Of age also inly grene and tender,
He was committed to the gouernaile
Of Pelleus, to whom with-oute faille
In euery thyng he was as servisible,
As diligent in chambre and at table,

is] it is C, D 1.
she it] it is C.
for] on D 1.
and] & here D 1.
hooly] only D 1.
also] om. 1. 1.
discreye C.
þe] þis D 1—his] þe C.
and] as D 1.
As euere was any childe or man
Vn-to his lorde, in al þat euer he can
Devise in herte of feithful obeyschaunce;
So þat in chere nor in countenaunce,
Inwarde in herte nor outwarde in schewyn
To his vnclen ne was he nat grucchyng;
Al-be he had holly in his hande
The worthi kyngdam and þe riche lande
Of this Iason, and the eritage,
Only for he was to ȝonge of age.
Vn-to whom Pelleus dide his peyne
Ageyn[es] herte falsely for to feyne,
To schewen other pan he mente in herte,
And kepte hym cloos, þat no þing hym asterte,
Lyche an addre vnnder flouris fayre,
For to his herte his tonge was contrarie:
Benyngne of speche, of menyng a serpente,
For vnnder colour was the tresoun blente,
To schewe hym goodly vn-to his allye;
But inwarde Brent of hate and of envie
The hoote fyre, & ȝit ther was no smek,
So couertly the malys was y-reke,
That no man myȝt as by sygne espie
Toward Iason in herte he bare envie.
And merveil noon, for hit was causeles,
Saue he dradde þat he for his encres
And for * his manhood likly was tateyne
For to succede in his faders reigne,
Whiche Pelleus unjustly ocupieth;
And day be day cast and fantasieith
How his venym may be som pursute
Vpon Iason be fully execute.
Her-on he museth euery hour and tyme,
As he þat dradde to sen an hasty pryme
Folowen a chaunge, as it is wont to done,

173. Devis] Demvre A.
182. falsely] fully D 1. 184. asterte] of sterre A.
190. 2nd of] omit. D 1. 191-194 are omitted in D 1.
TROY BOOK.
Sodeynly after a newe moone;
He caste weyes and compasseth sore,
And vnder colour alwey more and more
His felle malys he gan to close and hide,
Lyche a snake that is wont to glyde
With his venym vnder fresche flourys;
And as the sonne is hoot a-fore pise schoures,
So of envie hattere bran the glede.
Vp-on a tyme he pouzte * to procede
To execute his menynge every del,
In porte a lambe, in herte a lyoun fel,
Dowble as a tygre slyly to compass,
Galle in his breste and sugre in his face,
That no man hath to hym suspiciouns,
Howe he purveieth the destrucciourc
Of his nnewe, and fat wth/wi-Inne a whyle,
Pretendyng loue, al-be the fyn was gyle.
His malys was I-schette so vnder keye,
pat his entent [ther] can no man be-wreye;
It was concealed & closed in secre,*
Vnder the lok of pryve Enmyte,
And that in soth greued hym je more:
Vp-on hym silf pe anger frat so sore,
Abydyng ay til [vn-to] his entent
He fynde may leyser convenient
Vp-on his purpos platly to procede
For to parforme it fully vp in dede.
Wher-of Jason hath ful lytel rou^t—
His vncele and he [ne] wer not in o thou^t—
Of whos menyng was no connenience,
For malys was coupled with Innocence;
And grownde of al, [so] as I can diuise,
Was the Ethik of false couetise,

207. caste] castid D 1, caste† D 2.
222. al-be] al [pou3 D 1—was] were D 1.
231. platly] pleiny D 1.
234. ne wer not] were not boje D 1.
236. coupled] encoupled D 1.
Whiche fret so sore, falsly for to wynne, 240 which is the worst of all sins, 244 and has ruind many lands.
As crop and rote of euery sorowe and synne, 248
And cause hath ben, syth[en] goo ful 3ore, 252 To Peleus was brought tidings of a
That many a rewme hath a-bou^t ful sore 256 Ram in Colchos.
The dredful venym of couetyse, alias 260 which had a fleece of gold.
Lat hem be war, pat stonden in this caas, 264 The king of Colchos was Cethes (Æolus),
To thinke a-forne & for to haue in mynde 268 son of the Sun.
That al falshed draweth to an ende: 272
For thou^e it bide and last a 3er or two, 274 This gold-fleeced Ram
The ende in soth schal be sorwe and wo 276
Of alle pat ben false and envious. 280
Here-of no more, but forthe of Pelleus 284
I wil 3ow telle, pat hath so long[e] sou^t 288
Vp-on pis thing, til per wer to hym brou^t.
Tidynges newe, & pat so merveillous,
That he astonyed was and alle his hous,
Of a merveaille that new[e]ly was fal
Besyde Troye, the plage oriental:
How in Colchos, as the tydyng cam,
With-Inne an Ile enclosed was a Ram
Whiche bare his flees ful richely of golde;
And for the richesse, it was kepte in holde
With gret avis and gret[e] diligence,
That no man my^t ther-to doon offence.
And in this Ile ther was a gouvernour,
A noble kynge, a worthi weriour,
That Cethes hi^t: wis, discret, and sage,
Whiche was also [y-]ronne fer in age,
That in his* tyme, as bokys can dueise,
Had vnder-fonged many gret emprise
In pes and werre, & moche worship wonne;
And he was sone also to the sonne,
That 3af hym eure to honour to atteyne,
So as poetis lusteth for to feyne,
Touching his line, I leue as now þe grete;
And of this Ram my purpos is tentrete,
Mars guarded the Fleece by Bulls and a Serpent. [BK. I

was under the charge of Mars,

That was committed, I dar 30w wel assure,
To the kepyng and the besy cure 276.
Of cruel Mars, the mystly god of werre,
Whoche with pe stremes of his rede sterre
And influence of his deite,
Ordeyned hath, by ful gret cruelte, 280-
This Ram to kepe, bolys ful vnmylde,
With brasen feet, ramegous and wylde,
And ther-withe ful fel and dispitous,
And of nature wood and furious, 284
To hurt and sleen euere of o desire.
Out of whos mouthe leuene & wylde fire,
Lyche a flawme euere blasid oute
To brenne al hem pat stode* nyʒ aboute; 288
Eke of her eyen pe lokys moste orible
To [a] furneis the stremys wer visible.
And who that* wolde, [to] encrese his glorie,
This Ram of golde wynnen by victorie, 292.
Firste he moste of verray force and myȝt
Vn-to outraunce with thise bolys fʒt,
And hem vengyseche, aldirfirst of alle,
And make hem humble as any oxe in stalle 296
Vn-to the ʒoke, and do hem ere pe londe;
Of verry manhood, þis most he take on hond.
And after þat he moste also endure
With a serpent of huge and gret stature, 300-
With-out[e] fauour, pleylyn haue a-do,
To outraunce eke, with-oute wordis mo.
þe wiche serpent, schortly for to telle,
Was lyche a fende comen out of helle, 304-
Ful of venym and of cruel hate;
And with skalys hard as any plate
He armyd was, to sto[n]den at diffence;
And his breth wers than pestilence 308-
 Infecten wolde environ al þe eyre
In iche place wher was his repeire.

306. skalys] his scales D 1.
He was so ful of corrupcioun,
And so dreedful of infeccioun,
That deth in sothe, schortly to deuise,
Was the fyn of this hige emprise
To swyche as wolde pis querel take on hond,
I-lyche in oon, bothe to fre and bonde,
But if he koude pe bet hym sill diffende.
And of his conquest he was eke the ende:
Dat when he had pe myȝty serpent slawe,
He most anoon, by custom and by lawe,
Out of his hed his tethe echon arace,
And thane sowe hem in the sill[e] place
Where the oxes herid hadde aforne;
Of whiche sede ther sprang a wonder corn:
Knys[k]es armyd, passyng of gret myȝte,
Eueryche with other redy for to fyȝte
Til eche his brother hadde brouȝt to grounde
By mortail fate & ȝone his depis wounde.
This was the ende of hem euerychon;
For in sothnesse of al per was noon
That lyue myȝt by that fatal lawe
Any lenger in soth than his felawe.
And by þis weye, dreedful and perillous,
Who desyreth to be victorious,
He moste passe and manly it endure,
And how so falle take his auenture.
Of noon estat was noon excepcioun,
Chese who so wele; for this conclusion
He may not skape for faunour ne for mede,
Who euer gynne, avise hym wel I rede:
For by the statute of the kyng he may,
Who so that wele, entren and assay;
But after þat he onys hath by-gonne
He may nat chese til he haue lost or wonne.
3et, as somme of þis Ram expresse,

323. oxes] oxen D 1—aforne] to forn D 1.
330. was] nas D 1.
This Golden Fleece was made by sorcery,

And of this flees also here witnessse,
It was no thyng but golde & gret tresour,
That Cethes kyng, with ful hyse labour,
Made kepe it by incantacionys,
By sorserie and false illucions,

\[BK. 1\]

Peleus's plot.

\[leaf 4 a\]

and many men riskt and lost their lives to win it.

371. pursued] pursue C.
374. And] As D 1—anoon he gan] he gan anoon D 1.
He first cal'd his nobles together, and made anon a conuocacioun of his lordys and his baronye, aboute enviroun the londe of Thesalye, for to holde a counseil outerly he caste, per-by tacheve his desire as faste; and so his court contweneth daies thre; til at pe laste his hidde iniquyte. 

He gan out rake, pat hath ben hid so longe, for he ne my3te no lenger forthe prolonge. 

Pe venym hid, pat frat so at his herte, in so sly3e wyse pat no man my3t aduerte vp-on no syde but pat he mente wel. 

For pe tresoun was cured enerydel and curteyned vnder trecherye; for he this thing so sly3ly gan to guye at pr[i]me face pat no man my3[e] deme. 

By any worde, as it wolde seme, in cher, in port, by signe or* daliaunce, but pat he cast kny3yly for tavaunce. 

His 3onge neyewe, as by lyklynesse, to hige honour of manhood and prowesse. 

For of pe entent, of whiche he gan purpose,
King Peleus praises and flatters Jason. [BK. I]

Peleus starts by praising Jason.

He tixte was hyd, but no thing he close,
Which he was conueied so with flaterye,
That the peple cowde not espye
Lytel or nouȝt of his entent with-Inne.
For whiche anoon to preyse hym he be-gynne,
That he suche honour to his nevewe wolde;
For with swych cher he be-gan vnfolde
To-form hem al his entenciou,
That he hath voided al suspicoun
From al that wern assemblid in pe place;
And toward Jason he torne gan his face
Ful lovyngly in countenaunce and chere,
And to hym seide, that alle rynten here
Thoruȝ-out pe courte, wharke maked was silence,
Juset word by worde platly in sentence:
"Cosyn Jason, take hed what I schal seyn,
For pe I am so inly glad and feyn
And supprised with myrth[e] þorȝ myyn herte,
That it enchaseth & voideth al my smerte,
For to considere in myn inspeccioun
Of þi ȝowthe þe disposicioun,
Þe whiche, shortly for to comprehende,
Saue to* vertu to no thyng doth entende,
Vn-to worship and to gentilnesse,
To manly fredam and to hyȝe largesse,
Þat verraily, wher I wake or wynke,
My loye is only ther-on for to thinke.
My sylf I holde so passynge fortunat,
And al my londe, of hyȝe and lowe estat,
Þat lykly arn in honour for to flete,
And to lyuen in reste and in quiete
Thorȝ thi support and þi sowpoaille,
Whos manhod may so moclhe vs availle,
By lyklyhed, and so moche amende,
In verry solte to saue vs and diffende
Agayn al tho, as I can descryne,

431. þorȝ] þorȝ out D 1.
432. smerte] hert D 2. 436. to] vn to C.
445. sowpoaille] supposaylle A.
446. may so moclhe vs] vs may so moche D 1.
Peleus suggests to Jason the Quest of the Golden Fleece.

Or rebellè in any maner weye,
Of surqued[?] ye or pride to werreye
Our worthines, assured in tranquille,
From al assaut of hem þat wolde vs ille,
For to perturbe oure noble estat rial,
Ageyn[e]s whom, when þou art oure wal,
Our myȝty schelde, and proteccioun:
Þus deme I fully in myn oppinioun,
For of þin age, þi witte, þi prouidence,
þi knyȝtly hert, þi manly excellence,
Reported ben, and þin hyȝe renoun,
In many londe and many regioun
þis rounde worlde aboute in circuyt;
How myȝt I [þanne] stonde in better plyȝt,
For þin honour, lyche as it is founde,
To my worship so higly doth rebounde,
þat I wolde pleynly and nat cesse,
þiffe I koude, helpe to encresse
þin hyȝe renoun y-wis in euery hour,
And ther-vpon spendyn my treour.
þis hyȝe desyre, with-outen any faille,
Of enteer lone me doth so sore assaille,
þat nyȝt nor day I may haue no reste;
And al schal turne I hope for the beste,
For to enhaunce þin honour to þe heuene,
Aboue þe pole and þe sterres seuene.
To whiche þing I haue a weye espied,
As I my witte þer-to haue applied,
þis is to mene, what schulde I lenger dwelle,
My dere cosyn, as I schal the telle:
þif it so wer by manhood souereyne,
Of þi knyȝt hood þat þou durst atteyne
þe flees of gold to conquere þi strenthe,
Which is spoke of so fer in brede and lenthe,
26 Jason undertakes the Quest of the Golden Fleece. [BK. I

And returne hom in body safe and sounde;
3if pis conquest my3t in the* be founde,
pat tou durstest acause pis emprise,
More hertes Ioye koude I nat deuise
In al pis worlde; for sothly at the best,
My rewme and I set wer þan in rest:
For, For þi manhod alle wolde vs drede.
Wherfore, cosyn, of kny3thood and manhed
Take vp-on þe my prayer and requeste,
And here my trouthe, & take it for beheste.
What euer nedeth in meyne or costage,
Ordeyne I-now3 in harneys and array,
þat nou3t schal faylen þat is to þi pay;
And, more-ouer, I pleylnly the ensure,
þat 3if I se þou do þi besy cure,
þis hi3e emprise for to bringe aboute,
þou schalþ nat fere nor [I-]be in doute,
After my day, by successiouñ,
For to be kynge of this regionñ,
And holy han septre and regalie.
Wherfor, Iason, lyfte vp þin hertiþ eye,
Thenke þi name schal longe be recorded
Thorú3-oute þe worlde; wherfor be accor[ded]
With-in þi silf, and pleylnly nat ne spare
Of þin entent þe somme to declare."
When Iason had his uncle vndirstonde,
He reioyseth for to take on honde
þis dreedful labour, with-out avisement;
He nouȝt aduiteth þe menyng fraudelent,
þe prevy poysoun vnder sugre cured,
Nor how to galle with hony he was lured,
þe dirke deceyt, þe cloudy fals engyn,

485. inJ om. D 1. 486. my3t in the] in the may C.
496. þis] þat D 1.
507. longe be] be longe D 1—be] be of D 2.
BK. 1] King Peleus has the ship Argon fitted out for Jason. 27

I-gilt with-oute, but vnder was venym,
Wher-to Jason hath noon aduertence; [leaf 4 d]
Jason thinks
Peleus true,

Pe kyng, he wende, of clene conscience,
With-out[e] fraude, had al pis ping I-ment;
Wher-for anoon he seveth ful assent
At wordis fewe, and pleynly gan to seie
His vncles wyl he wolde obeye;
He was accorded, in conclusion,
With humble herte and hool intenciou.

Wher-of Pe kyng resseyueth swyche gladnesse,
bat he vnnenthe myst it out expresse;
But ryzt as fast dide his besy payne
For pis Iorney in hast for to ordeyne.
And for as moche as Colchos, pe cunte,
Enclosed was aboute with a see,
And bat no man, how longe bat he striue,
With-out[e] schip theder may arive,
To his presence anoon he dide calle
Famous Argus, bat koude most of alle
To make a schip, & first bat art y-founde
To seille with by see* fro lond to londe,
Be whiche hath wrouút a schip by sotil craft,
Which was Pe first bat euer wave rauût,
To haue entre; and Argon bar pe name.
Gramariens recorde jit the same,
Bat eche gret schip, firste for pat mervail,
Is called so, whiche proudly bare hir seil,
As pis boke doth vs specifie,
How it be-fel forth of pis navie.
Whan al was redi, meyne and vitaille,
Be bide nouzt but wynde for to saille;
And many worthi was in pat companye,
Of noble byrth, and of gret allye,
In pat viage redy for to goon,
Bothe for loue and worshipp of Iason.

538. see] be see C.  539. wrouút] made D 1.
545-548 are repeated after 548 in D 1; the word vacat is written in the margin.
Amonges whiche he grete Hercules, of force, of my3t, of strent hie pereles;
And he begete was vppon Almene,
So inly fayr and wommanly to sene,
Of Iubiter, and pat ful long a-gon,
Takyng lyknesses of Amphytrion;
Down fro heuene, for al his deyete,
He was ravisched poruʒ lust of hir bewte;
For he hir loued with hert and hool entent.
And of hem two, sothly by descent,
Cam Hercules, pe worthi famus knyʒte,
Most renomed of manhood and of myʒte,
Whiche in his tyme was so mervellous,
So excellent, and so victorious,
pat Ouyde lyst recorde hym silue,
Methamorphoseos, his famus dedis twelue,
Whiche ben remembrid ther in special,
In his honour for a memorial.
And to reherse hem in order by and by,
3if 3e list here, I purpose outerly:

1. he slew Antheon,
He slouʒe Antheon in pe eyr on heỳʒt,
And many geant, what with myʒt & sleiʒte,
He outraide, for al her lymes rude;

2. and the Hydra,
3. bound Cerberus,
pe serpent Ydre he slouʒ eke in Palude,
And Cerberus pe hownde he bond so sore,
At helle ʒatis pat he barke no more,
And made hym voide his venym in pat strif,
And vpwarde ʒaf hym suche a laxatýf,
pat al pe worlde his brethe contagoyus
Infected hath; it was so venymous.
And with o wynde he wolde renne a stadye;
He fledde arpies, briddes of Archadye,
And slouʒ centauris, pe bestis monstruous;
pe feerse lyon he byrafte his houʒ;
pis [is] to seyen, whan pat he was slawe,
Out of his skyn he hath hym stripte & flawe,
With cruel herte, poruʒ his hige renoun;

558. ofD 1.  567. recorde] recorde it D 1.
572. here] to here D 1.  578. barke[ brak A.
The other Labours of Hercules. Jason proposes to sail. 29

The goldene applys he bare fro the dragoun; 592
The fyry cat he slou, with-out[e] more;
And of Archadye, the cruel tuschy boor;
And at the last, on his schulders square,
Of verray myst he firmament he bare.
But for that I may not rekne[n] al
His passyng dedis, whiche ben historial,
Redeth Ovide, and per 3e schal hem fynde;
Of his triumphes how he maketh mynde,
And of his peler at Gades* that he sette,
Which Alysaundre of Macedonye kyng,
that was so worthy her in his lyvyng,
Rood in his conqueste, as Guydo lust to write,
With al his hooste proudly to visite;
Be-3ownde whiche no land is* habitable,
Nor see to saille sothly couenable:
So fer it is by-3onde that occian,
That schipman noon ferber [no] skyl[le] can;
Sibellys streytes Maryners it calle,
And be boundes, þei named ben of alle,
Of Hercules, for he hym sily hem sette,
As for markys alle other for to lette
Ferther to passe, as Guydo maketh mynde;
And þe place is callyd, as I fynde,
Syracenya, as wyn of his labour,
Or Longa Saphi, recorde of myn auctour.
Of þis mater more what schulde I seyn; 616
For vnto Jason I wil retourne a-geyn,
That in al haste dothe hym redy make,
Of his vnclle whan he hath leue take,
Toward þe see, and Hercules y-fere,
With alle his men, anoon as þe schal here.

The tyme of þer, whan þe schene sondne
In his spere was so fer vp ronne,

Golden
Apples of the
Hesperides,
8. aye the
fyry Cat,
and 9, the
Erythian
Boar,
10. carried
the Firm-
ament on his
shoulders.

592. Golden
Apples of the
Hesperides,
8. aye the
fyry Cat,
and 9, the
Erythian
Boar,
10. carried
the Firm-
ament on his
shoulders.

596. He set up the
Pillars at
Gades.

600. He set up the
Pillars at
Gades.

603. no land is] is no land C.

604. in the Sibyls'
Straita.

616. But I'll return to
Jason.

621. y-fere] in fere D 1.
Jason and Hercules set sail for Colchos.

Jason, Hercules, and their friends

set sail for Colchos,

Philoctetes being captain.

pat he was passid þe sygne of Gemeny,
And had his charre whirlid vp so hy3,
Thorú þe draught of Pirous so rede,
pat he had made in þe crabbis hede
His mansion, and his see ryal,
Wher halowed is þe standyng estyval
Of fresche Appollo with his golden wayn;
Whan heeridemen in hert[e] ben so fayn
For [þe] hetre to shroude hem in þe schade,
Vnder þis braunchis and þise bowis glade;
Whan Phebus bemys, pat so byr3t[e] schyne,
Descended ben ry3t as any lyne,
And cause þe eyre be refection
To ben ful hoot, þat lusty fresche sesoun,
Whan cornys gyne in þe fulde to sede;
And þe grasys in the grene mede
From 3er to 3er ben of custom mowe,
And on þe pleyn cast and leide ful lowe,
Til þe moystour consumed be a-way,
On holt and heth þe mery somerys day—
At whiche tymre þis 3ong[e] kny3t Jason
With Hercules is to schip[þe] goon ;
And with hem eke, as I reherse can,
Of Grekys eke [ful] many a lusty man,
Schiped echon with ryal appareille.
And whan þei wer crossed vnder saille,
With-Inne þe schip, whiche þat Argus made,
Whiche was so stawnche it my3t no water lade,
þei gan to seille and had[de] wynd at wille;
þe schip gan breke þe sturdy wawys ille
Vppon þe see, and so bothe day and ny3te
To Colchos-ward þei helde þe weye ry3t,
Guying her cours by the lode sterre,
Wher þei seille by costys neþe or ferre.

For Philotetes was her alder guyde,
þat konde a-forn so prudently prouide,

Of verray insist to cast a-forn and se
Tempest or wynd, bothe on lond and* see,
Or whan ther schulde trouble of stormys fal;
For he was mayster pleynly of hem alle
In schipman crafte, and chose her gouernour,
And koude hem warne aforne of evry shour
That schulde falle, whan sterrys dide apere.
And specialy, as Guydo doth vs lere,
Philoctetes, whiche was no fool,
Hadde moste his syyt erect vn-to pe pool,
His aduertence and clere inspectioun,
To pe sterrys and constellacioun,
Which pe axtre rounde aboute goon,
Pat clerkis calle pe Septemtryon.
For as pe pool y-called Arthicus
Eure in on appeereth vn-to vs,
Ry3t so in sothe, who can loke ary3t,
Antharticus is schrouded from our sy3t.
But to schipmen pat ben discrete and wyse,
Pat list her cours prudently dense
Vp-on pe see, haue suffisaunce y-nowe
To guye her passage by Arthuris Plowe;
For it to hem is direccioun
Vn-to pe costis of euery regiouw,
With help only of nedle and of stoon,
Pei may nat erre what costys pat pei gon.
For maryners pat ben discrete and sage,
And expert ben of her loodmanage
By straunge costys for to seille ferre,
Guyen her cours only by pe sterre
Whiche pat Arthour compasseth enviroun;
Pe whiche cercle and constellacioun
I-called is the cercle Artofilax:

662. or] & D 1—and] or C.—This line is misplaced at bottom of column in D 2, and marked b; 661 is marked a.
663. of stormys] or tempest D 1.
675. y-called] called D 1. 677. can] pat can D 1.
683. is] is trewe D 1. 685. 2nd of] om. A.
692. misplaced at bottom of column in D 2.
693. I-called is] The whiche D 2.
Who knoweth it nedeth no more to axe.
For it to schipmen on þe sterry nyȝt
Iis suffisaunt, whan þei sen his lyȝt.
And as poetis of þis poolis tweye
In her bokys lyketh for to feyne,
And in her dytees declaren vn-to vs:
Calixtome and Archadius,
Hir oune sone, wern y-stellefied
In þe heuene and y-deified;
For that Iuno to hir hadde envie,
With Jubiter whan sche dide hir espie.
For whiche sche was in-to a bere turned,
And for hir gylt sche hath in erthe morned,
Sche was translated, eternally to dwelle
Amongis sterryss, wher as sche is stallyd,
And Vrsa Maior is of clerkys callyd;
So as hir sone, for his* worthi fame,
Of Vrsa Mynor bereth set þe name.
Of whiche þe course myȝt[e] nat asterte
Philotetes, þat was þe mooste experthe
Of alle schipmen þat enuer I herde telle;
For of konyng he myȝt bere þe belle.
And whan þe Grekys had[de] long[e] be
Fordryue and cast, seilyng in þe se,
For-weried after [her] traualle,
þei cast [i]arive, ȝif it wolde availlle,
Hem to refresche and dispote in Ioye,
Vp-on þe boundys of þe lond of Troye.

Howe Jason arryved bysyde Troy withe Hercules for to refresshe him and his menye.1

Whan Hercules and Iasoun on his hond,
Out of her schip taken han þe lond,

701, 702. D 1 omits the y in the participle.
703. Iuno to hir hadde] Iove had to hir D 1.
709. as] bat D 1—stallyd] estalled D 1. 711. his] hir C.
720. arive] arive D 2.

1 Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 11 c.
And with hem eke her knytes euerychon, 
pat fra pe see ben to lound[e] goon, 728  The Greeks land at Syme- 
For-weried after her trauaille; 729  onde, a port 
And pei in sothe come to arivaille 730  near Troy.
At Symeonte, an hauene of gret renoun, 731
pat was a lyte* by-syde Troye town— 732
And pei wer glad to ben in sikirnesse
From storm and tempest after werynesse; 733
For pei ne ment tresoun, harm, nor gyle,
But on pe stronde to resten hem a while;
To hynder no wy3t, of no maner age,
Nor in pat Ile for to do damage 736
To man [n]or beste, wher-euere pat pei goo,
But for to abyde per a day or two
Hem to refresche, and repeire a-noon
Whan pat pe rage of pe see wer goon. 740
And whiles pei [vp-]on pe stronde leye,
pe in thyng dide but disporte and playe,
And bathe & wasche hem in pe fresche ryuer,
And drank watrys pat were swote & clere,
pat sprange lyche cristal in pe colde welle,
And toke ri3t nou3t, but it were to selle.
It was no ping in her entenciour
Vn-to no wy3te to done offenciourn, 748  and do
For to molestre or greuuen ony wy3t;
But pe ordre of Fortunys my3t 750
Hath euere envy pat men lyue in ese,
Whos cours enhasteth vnwarly to dissece.
For sche was cause, God wotte, causeles,
His gery Fortune, his lady reccheles,
pe blynde goddesse of transmutaciou?
To turne her whele by revoluciou?
To make Troyens vniustly for to wene
pat Grekys werne arived hem to tene.
So pat pe cause of his suspiciou
Hath many brou3t vn-to destrucciou.

727. her] here grete D 1.
728. in] for D 2—to arivaille] to pe ryuaille D 1.
730. a [lyte] alyte C.

TROY BOOK.
Why Troy was destroyed by Fortune: for Revenge. [BK. 1]

Unjust suspicion was the cause of the destruction of Troy, merely that Fortune should take vengeance on it.

Ful many worthi of kynges and of princes 
þorouȝ-oute þe worlde, rekned in provinces, 
Werne by þis sclawnder vn-to myschief* brouȝt,
For thing, alas, þat was neuer thought. [leaf 6a] 764
For it was cause and occasion,
þat þis cite and þis royal town
Distroied was, as it is pleynly fownde,
Whos walles hiȝe were bete down to grounde. 768
And many [a] man and many [a] worþi knyȝte
Were slawe þer, and many lady bryȝte
Was wydowe made by duresse of þis werre,
As it is kouthe and reported ferre;
And many mayde in grene & tender age
Be-lefte wer sool, in þat grete rage,
And for no þing but þat Fortune wolde 776
Schewen her myȝt and her cruelte,
In vengauzce takynge vp-on þis cite.
Allas, þat euere so worþi of estate
Schule for lytel fallen at debate!
When it is gonwe it is not lyȝt to staunche:
For of griffyng of a lytel braunche,
Ful sturdy trees growe[n] vp ful ofte;
Who clymbeth hiȝe may not falle softe;
And of sparkys þat ben of syȝt[e] smale,
Is fire engendered þat devoureth al;
And a quarel, first of lytel hate,
Encausth flawme of contek and debate,
And of envie to sprede a-brod ful ferre.
And þus, allas, in rewmys mortal werre
[Is] First be-gonne, as men may rede and see,
Of a sparke of lytel enmyte,
 þat was not staunchid first when it was* gonne.
For whan þe fyre is so fer y-ronne,

The rise of Rome was due to the destruction of Troy.

The end of dispute is the sword and death,

Pat it enbraseth hertis by hatrede
To make hem brenne, hoot as any glede,
On ouuer party poru; his cruel tene,
Per is no staunche but scharp[e] swerdys kene,
Phe whiche, alas, consumeth al and sleth;
And bus pe fyne of enmyte is deth.
Poru; pe gynnyng be but casuel,
Phe fret abydyng is passyng[ly] cruel
To voide rewmys of reste, pees, and Ioye,
As it fil whilom of pis worthi Troye.
It doth me wepe of pis case sodeyne;
For euery wy3t ou3te to compleyne,
Except parcas poru3 goddys puruyaunce,
Pat pis mescheffe schulde after be
Folwyng per-chaunse of gret felicite.
For Troy[e] brou^t vn-to destrucciouw,
Was pe gynnyng and occasiou—
In myn auctor as it is specified—
Pat worthi Rome was after edefied
By pe of-spryng of worpi Eneas,
Whilom fro Troye whan he exiled was.
Phe whiche Rome, rede and 3e may se,
Of al pe worlde was hed and chef cite,
For pe passyng famous worthinesse.
And eke whan Troye was brou^t in distresse,
It was in cause pat many regioun
Be-gonne was, and many gret cite:
For pis Troyan, pis manly man Enee,
By sondri sees gan so longe saille,
Til of fortune he com in-to Ytaille,
And wan pat lond, as bookes tellen vs.
With whom was eke his sone Askanius,

But happe-

ness followd, for Troy's

ruin was

Rome's start,

800

801. gynnyng] begynnyng D 1.
802. fret abydyng] abidinge hete D 1.
804. whilom] somtyme D 1. 811. vn-to] to D 1.
812. gynnyng and] begynnynge & pe D 1.
820. was brou^t] brought was A. 822 many] many a D 1.
827. wan] whan D 2, D 1.
His successors were Ascanius, Silvius, and Brute, who won Britain from the Giants.

The land of Ytalle justly to possede;
And after hym his son Silvius,
Of whom cam Brute, so passeyngly famous.
After whom, 3if I schal nat feyne,
Whilom pis lond called was Breteynye;
For he of geantys poruz his manhood wan
pis noble yle, and it first be-gan.
From Troy also, with pis ilke Enee,
Cam worthi Francus, a lord of his degre,
Whiche vp-on Rome, tenceressen his renoun,
Bilt in his tyme a ful royal town,
be whiche sothly, his honour to avaunce,
After his name he made calle Fraunce;
And bus be-gan, as I understond,
be name first of pat worthi lond.
And Anthenor, departyng from Troyens,
Gan first pe cite of Veneyens;
And Sycanus, with-Inne a lytel while,
Gan enchabe pe lond of Cecyle.
And after partyng of pis Sycanus,
His worthi brother, called Syculus,
So as I fynde, regned in pat yle;
And after hym it called was Cecille.

But Eneas is to Tuscy goon,
It tenhabite with peple riȝt anoone;
And in Cecille he Naplis first be-gan,
To whiche ful many Neopolitan
Longeth pis day, ful riche & of gret myȝt.
And Diomedes, pe noble worpi knyȝt,
Whan Troye was falle with his toures faire,
As to his regne he cast[e] to repaire,
His leges gan to feynen a querele
A-geyn[e]'s hym, and schop hem to rebelle;

And of malys and conspiraqu,
How some Greeks were changed into Birds by Circe.

How some Greeks were changed into Birds by Circe.

By which time, as [per] pe kny[thes] of pis Dyomede,

To forme of briddes wern anon transmewed

By Cyrces crafte, doubter of pe sonne,

And in pe eyr to fleece anon pei go?me,

And called ben, in Ysidre as I rede,

Amonges Grekys briddes of Dyomede.

But as som bokys of hem ber witnesse,

pis chaunge was made be Venus pe goddesse,

Of wrath sche had to pis worthi kny[3te] ;

Only for sche sawe hym onys fy[3te]

With Eneas, hir owne sone dere.

At whiche tyme, as pei fau[3t] I-fere,

And Diomede with a darte I-grounde

Gan hame at hym a dedly mortal wounde,

His moder Venus gan anoon hym schroude

Vnder a skye and a mysty cloude,

To sauen hym pat tyme fro meschaunce.

And for pis skyl Venus took vengauce :

In-to briddes to turne his meyne.

And in pat forme fro 3er to 3er pei fle

Vs-to his townbe, wher as* he is graue.

So vp-on hym a mynde* 3it pei haue,

pat of custom for a remembraunce,

A rite pei holde and an observaunce

At his exequies, pise briddes everychon,

A dayes space, and peynys nou[3t] ne gon.

And ouer-more, as it to hem is dwe,

pei loue Grekis, and platly pei eschewe

Latyns alle, for ou3t pat may be-tyde:

890. pat] the A. 891. as] pat C. 892. a mynde] amynde C.
897. ouer-more] over that D 1—it to hem is] it is to hem D 1.
898. 1st pei] To A.
These Greek-changed birds avoid Latins. For pei present, a-noon pei flen aside; And eche from other, as bokys vs assure, pis briddes knowe, only of nature, Grekys and Latyns kyndely assonder, Whan pei hem seen: pe whiche is swiche a wonder* Vn-to my witte, pat I can nouʒt espie pe causys hid of swiche sorcerye— But wel I wot, pouʒ my wit be blent, pat rote of al was fals enchanterament. But of our feithe we ouʒte to defye Swiche apparencis schewed to pe eye, Whiche of pe fende is but illusion— Her-of no more. & þus whan Troie tovn Euersed was, and I-brouʒt to nouʒt, Ful many cite was I-bilt and wrouʒt, And many lond and many riche tovn Was edified by thocasioun;

Of þis werre, as þe han herde me telle. Whiche to declare now I may not dwelle From point to point, lyche as bokis seyn, For to Jason I wil resorte ageyn, pat londed is with worthi Hercules At Symeonite, þe haunede þat he* ches, As I haue tolde, to reste hem & counforte, And for not elles but only to dispore. But to þe kyng, regnyng in Troye town, þat was þat tyme called Lamedown, Of fals envy reported was and tolde, How certeyn Grekis wern of herte bolde To entre his lond, þe whiche þei nat knewe, Wel arrayed in a vessel newe. Whiche to arryve had[de] no lycence, And hem purpose [for] to doon offence, Be liklyhed, and his lond to greue:

For pei of pryde, with-outen any leue

Or safcondyte, han þe stronde y-take;
And swiche maistries on þe lond þei make,
As in her power wer alle maner thyng,
Havyng no rewarde pleynly to þe kyng;
Of his estat take þe noon hede.
Of swyche straungeris greetly is to drede,
Jise men be laches outhier necligent
Fully to wit what is her entent,
But furthe prolong, & no pereil caste:
Swiche sodeyn þing wolde be wist as faste,
And nat differrid til þe harme be do;
It wer wisdam þat it were seie to:
Men may to long suffryn and abyde
Of necligence for to lete slyde
For to enqueren of her gouernaunce.
Jis was þe speche and þe dalyaunce,
Eueryche to other by relacioun,
In euery strete thorou^oute Troye tovn.
Somme rovnyng & somme spak a-brood;
And þis speche so longe þer a-brood
From on to a-nother, sothly, þat þe sovn
Reported was to kyng Lamedon,
As þe han herde, þe whiche of wilfulnesse,
With-out[e] counsil or avisanesse,
To hast[i]ly maked hath his sonde,
To wit how þei wern hardy for to londe
Be-syde his leue, of presumpcioun.
Wher-fore he bad, in conclusiouiz,
With-oute abood sone to remwe,
Or finally þei schulde nat eschewe
To be compellid, mavgre who seith nay.
And so þe kyng, vpon a certeyn day,
In haste hath sent his embassatour
Vn-to Jason, of Grekys gouernour,
pat novther thou;þ harme nor vylonye,

940. greetly] greet A. 941. outhier] or be D 1.
945. be] were D 1. 950. and] of A.
But Innocent, with his companye,
Disported hym endelong þe stronde,
And euer hath do sethen he cam to londe.
And of þe charge þat he on hym leyde,
And word by word to Iason how he seide,
As in effecte with euery circumstauence,
þis was þe somme pleining in substauence:

Howe Kenge Lamedon, by vndiscret councele, sent
his messenger to Iason to go owt of his lande.¹

"The wise, worthi, moste famus of renoun,
þe myghty kyng, þe noble Lamedoun,
Hath vn-to 3ow his message sent,
Of whiche theffect, as in sentement,
Is þis in sothe: þat he hath mervaille
In-to his* londe of 3our ariuaille,
Bryngyng with 3ow Grekys nat a fewe,
And haue no condyte with* 30w [for] to schewe,
Proteccioun, pleynly, nor lycence,
In preiudise of his magnificence.
Wherfore he hath on me þe charge leyde,
And wil to 30w þat it be platly seyde,
þat 3e anoon, with-oute more delay,
With-out[e] noyse, or any more affray,
Of Troyme lond þe bowndis þat 3e leve;
Or 30w and 3oures he casteth for to greve.
And bet it is with ese to departe,
þan of foly 3our lyues to Iuparte,
In any wyse, for lak of prouidence,
Ageyns his wille to make resistence,
Outher of pride or of wilfulnesse,
For to be bolde with-oute avisenesse
To interrupte his felicite;
For he desyreth in tranquillite
To holde his regne, with-oute parturbance.

972. sethen] sith D 2, D 1.
974. to Iason how he] howe he to Iason D 1.
982. his] þis C.     984. with] for C.
985. nor] or D 2, ne no D 1.
986. his] his hiȝe D 1. 997. or] ouþir D 1.
1 Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 12 d.
In whos persone is made swyche aliaunce
Atwen his manhood & royal mageste,
That pei nyl suffre noon of no degre
Tenpugne his quiete in any maner wyse,
Wherfore I consaille, as se me wyse,
To taken hede wyn-to that I seye,
And his byddyng nost to disobeie,
Liste se offende his kyngly excellence.
For se schal fynde in experience,
With-oute feynyng, sothe al that I telle;
Take hede perch, I may no lenger dwelle
From pouyt to pouyt, syth se be wis and sage,
For this is hool peffecte of my massage."
Whan Jason herd of pe massanger
Pise wordes alle, he gan chaunge cher,
And kepte hym cloos, with sobre contenaunce,
And was nat hasty for Ire nor greuaunce;
For no rancour he cau3te of his tale,
Saue in his face he gan to wexe pale,
Long abydyng or o3t he wolde seyn.
And or he spak any worde ageyn
Vn-to hym that from pe kyng was sent,
He gan disclose pe somme of his entent
Vn-to his foolke stondyng ronde aboute;
For vn-to hem he discurede oute
Pe message hool, firste whan he abride,
And worde by worde pus to hem he seyde:

**Off the Answer of Jason to the messenger of Lamedown.**

"Sirs," he seyth, "to sow be it knowe—
Taketh hede, I praye, both hy3 and lowe—
How Lamedoun, that is kyng of Troye,
Hath sent to vs a wonderful envoie,
Chargynge in haste to hy3e oute of his lond;

1 Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 13 b (misplaced after line 1084).
And axeth how we vp-on þe stronde
For to arive hadden hardinesse,
With-oute leue : seth here * his gentillesse,
And his fredam, þe whiche is nat a lite !
How lyche a kynge þat he can hym quíte
Vn-to strauengeris þat entren in his Ile
For nouȝt, God wot, but for a litel while
Hem to refresche, and departe anoon,
Lyche as þe can recorden euerychon,
And bere witnes, bothe alle and somme.
Alas, fredam, wher is it now be-com ?
Where is manhood, and gentilnesse also,
Whiche in a kynge to-gidre bothe two
Schulde of custom han her restyng place ?
And wher is honour, þat Schulde also embrace
A lordis hert, which of knyȝtly ryȝt,
Of manly fredam, with alle his fulle myȝt,
Schulde straungeris refresche and reconforte,
þat aftir-ward þei myȝt of hym reporte
Largesse expert, manhood, and gentillesse,
þat þei han founded in his worthinesse.
For þiȝfe noblesse wer of his alleȝe,
And fredam eke knyt with his regalye,
So as longeth to honour of a kynge,
He Schulde haue chargid, first of al[le] thing, * [leaf 7 c]
His worthi liges, with al þat myȝt[e] plese,
To haue schewed þe comfort and þe ese,
With al hir myȝt and her besy cure,
Vn-to strauengeris þat of aventure
Wern in þe see dryuen and dismaied,
And of our comfort nat ben euel [a]payed.
For þiȝf þat he in any cas semblable,
Outber by fortune þat is variable,
By sort or happe, þat may not be wip-stande,
Arived had in-to Grekys londe,

1038. can] gan D 1. 1041. and] and to A.
1047. of custom han] haue of custome D 1.
1060. 2nd þe] om. A.
More honestly,* lyche to his degre,
He schulde of vs haue resseived be,
Lyche as it longeth vn-to genterie.
But syth þat he, for ouȝt I can espie,
Hath fredam, honour, and humanite
Atonys made oute of his courte to fle,
Chose dishonour and late worship goon—
þer is no more, but we schal euerychon,
þat he hath chosen help[e] to fulfille,
Whan power schal nat be lyke his wille;
þis [is] to seyne, and sothe it schal be founde,
þat his dede schal on hym silfe* rebounde—
Sith of malys he hath þis werke be-gonne—
Paraventure or þe somer sonne
þe sodiak hath thres gon aboute.
For late hym trust, & no þing ben in doute,
We schal hym serue with swyche as he hath souȝt;
For ȝif I lyue it schal be dere about,
Al-be þer-of I sette as now no tyde.
And in his* lond I nyl no lenger byde
Til I haue leiser better to soiorne."
And with þat worde he gan anoon to turne
With manly face and a sterne chere
Sodeynly vn-to þe massangere,
þat fro þe kyng was vn-to hym* sent;
And in þis wyse he scheweth his entent:

How Iason and Hercules toke displeasure with Kyng
Lamedowne of Troye, gyuyng his messanger know-
lege of their next commynge to gyue hym batayle
For his vndiscreet commaundement.1

"My frende," quod he, "I haue wel vnderstande
þe massage hool, þat pou toke on honde,
Of þi kyng to bryng[en] vn-to vs

1069. honestly] honestlyche C.
1080. schal on hym silfe[en] on hym silfe schal C.
1093. was vn-to hym] vn-to hym was C.

1 Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 13 c.
Jason's ironical answer to King Lamedon. [BK. 1

Rišt now vnwarly; & syth it standeth þus, 1100
þat I haue his menyng euerydel
From point to point, & vnderstonde it wel—
For word by worde I haue it plein conseived,
And þe ˙iftes þat we han resseived 1104
On his by-halue in our gret[e] nede,
I wil remembre, and take rišt gode hede
To euery þing þat þou hast vs brouȝt.
For trust[e] wel þat I forȝete it nouȝt,
But enprente it surly in my mynde;
And with al þis, how goodly þat we fynde
þe gret[e] bounte in al maner thing,
With-in þis lond of Lamedoun þi* kyng:
His wolcomyng and his gret[e] cher,
And goodly* sond þat þou bryngist her,
Nat accordyng [vn-]to oure entent;
For God wel wot, þat we neuer ment
Harne vn-to hym, nor pleynly no damage
To noon of his of no maner age.
And her-vppon þe goddis inmortal,
þat of kynde ben celestial,
Vn-to recorde with al myn hert I take;
And touchyng þis my borwys I hem make,
In witnessyng we ment[e] noon ofence,
Ne toke nat, as by violence,
With-in his rewme of womman, child, nor man;
And so þou maist reporte zif þou can—
But for þat we, fordriuen in þe se,
Compellid wern of necessite
For to ariue, as þou haste herd me seyn,
Only to reste vs her vp-on þe pleyn,
With-oute more, vn-to a certeyn day,
And after-ward to holde furþe our way
Vp-on our Iorneye, & make no tariyng,

1112. And] om. D 1—goodly] þe goodly C.
1123. his] þis D 1. 1125. fordriuen] dryven A—in] were in D 1.
1131. make] to make D 2.
Hercules threatens a Greek Invasion of Troy.

Liche as thou maist recorde to þi kyng—
And seye hym eke he schal þe tyme se
þat he par-avnter schal mow þanked be,
Whan tyme comyth, by vs or by som other:
Go furthe þi waye, & seie hym þus, my brother.”

And þan anoon, as Iason was in pes,
þe manly knytþ, þe worþi Hercules,
Whan he had herd þis þing fro poynt to point,
He was anoon brouþt in swyche disioint
Of hasty rancour and of sodeyn Ire,
þe whiche his hert almost set afire,
þat sodeynly, as he abreyde abak,
Of hiþ disdeyn euen þis he spak,
With cher askoyn vn-to þe messanger,
And seide, “þelaw, be no þing in wer
Of our abidyng, but be riþt wel certeyn,
þat or Tytan his bemys reise ageyn,
We schal depart and to schip[pe] goon;
þat of oure men þer schal nat leuen oon
With-Inne þis lond, & God to-forn, to-morwe.
And her-vp-on haue her my feith to borwe;
For we no lenger schal holden her soiour,
For elles-þher we schal make our retour
To-morwe erly in þe daw[e]nyng,
Vp peyne of repref; and so go seie þiþ kying. [leaf 3 a]

And or thre þere, þif God vs graunt[e] lyf,
Maugre who gruccheþ or makeþ any strif,
Vn-to þis lond we schal a-geyn retourne,
And caste anker a while to soiourne:
Take hede, þerfore, and note wel þe tyme;
A newe chaunge schal folwen of þis pryme—
And þanue his power schal not so large streche;
Of his saufconduit lytel schal we recche.
I seie þe platly, as is oure entent,
We wil not haue [vn-]to his maundement

Hercules threatens
Lamedon’s Ambassador.

The Greeks will set sail
next day.

but before 3
years they’ll
return.

and not ask
leave to land.
But lytel reward, and we that day abide;
For takyng leue schal be set a-syde,
Be-cause he hath now be-gonne a play
Which we schal quitte—be God, 3if [pat] I may!—
pat torne schal in-to his owne schame;
And spare nouȝt to seie pi * kyng þe same.”

Hercules's threats to King Lamedon.

Lamedon's Ambassador deprecates Hercules's menaces,
And seide, “syr, 3e may ne denye
Of honeste my massage to declare;
A-vise 3ow, for I wil not spare
þe kynges sonde pleynly for to telle.
And wher-so be 3e* lyst to goon or dwelle,
3e may 3it cheese, who so be lefe or lothe;
3e haue no cause with me to be wroth;
For it sit not vn-to 3our worthines,
Yffe 3e take hede be weye of gentilnes,
Of manassyng swiche arwes for to schete;
For more honest it were 3oure þreyng lete,
And kepe secrete til 3e ben at 3our large.
For certeiny no parcel of my charge
Is to * striue with 3ow or debate.
But bet it is by-tymes þan to late,
þat 3e be war for harme þat myȝt[C] fale.
And for my parte, I saie vn-to 3ow alle,
It were pite þat 3e distroyed were,
Or any man hyndre schulde or dere
So worþi persone, in any maner wise,
Whiche ben so likly to be discret & wise;
And list with wordis as now I do 3ou greue,
I saye no more, I take of 3ow my leue.”

1167. reward] rewarde ȝeve þer of D 1.
1171. in-to] vnto D 2, to D 1.
1178. be 3e] 3e be C—wher-so be 3e lyst to goon] weþir it so be 3e liste goo D 1.
1179. sit] it D 1.
1189. fale] besalle D 1.
1192. hyndre schulde] shulde hyndir A.
Howe Jason and Hercules departede from the boundes of Troy toward Calcos londe.

The nyȝt ypassed, at springyng of þe day, At dayspring,
Whan þat þe larke with a blisshed* lay
Gan to salue the lusty rowes rede
Of Phebus char, þat so freschely sprede
Vp-on þe bordure of þe orient;
And Aurora, of hert and hool entent,
With þe swetnes of hir siluer schoures
Bedewed had þe fresche somer floures,
And made þe rose with new[e] bawme flete,
þe sote lillye and þe margarete
For to vnclose her tender leuys white,
Oppressed hertes with gladnes to delyte
þat drery wern aforn of nyȝtes tene;
And hony-souklis amonge þe buschis grene
Enbamed hadde enviroun al þe Eyr;
Longe or Titan gan maken his repeire,
With þe briȝtynes of his bemys merye
For to reioische al oure Emysperye:
For longe a-forn, or he dide arise,
þis worthi Iason in ful hasty wyse,
And his felawe Hercules also,
I-charged han hir schipmen haue a-do
To hale vp anker and hem redy make;
And bad in haste euery man to take
þe riȝt[e] weye vn-to schippe a-noon.
For in sothnes, þis manly man Iason
þouȝt he was not stuffid of meyne
To gynne a werre on Troye þe cite;
For he was not, schortly to conclude,
Egal in noumbre nor in multitude,
As for þat tyme, a werre to be-gynne.
It was not likly þat he schulde wynne

1197. ypassed] passid D 1. 1198. a blisshed] a blisful D 1, ablisshed C.
1205. newe] þe newe D 1. 1207. to vnclose] vnto close A.
1224. gynne] begynne D 1—on Troye þe cite] vn to Troye cite D 1.

Royal MS. 18 D. ii. leaf 14 a.
The Greeks set sail, and reach Colchos.

Victorie as tho, for þei wer but a fewe;
And it is not holsom a man to hewe
Abouen his hed, whan it is ouere hiȝe,
List þe chippis wil fallen in his eye.
Wherfore of Frygye þei leue þe costis blyue;
þei lifte vp sail; þe schip be-gan to drieue;
þe wynde was good; þe goddys fauowable;
Fortune her frende, þouȝ sche be variable.

And þus to Colchos safe þei ben y-come,
And vn-to londe, boþen al and some,
þei ben arived in a lytel space;
For in þe see þei haue founden grace
Of Neptunus, þat caused hem as blive,
As I seide her, at Colchos for tarive.

Now in þis Ile, and þis * litel londe,
þat Colchos hiȝt, þe schal vnderstonde,
How þat þer was a rial * chef cite,
In al þat regine moste of dignyte,
Of worthines, of ryches, and of fame,
And lachonytos þat tyme bar þe name—
Chevest of alle, to spekyn ofbildyng,
And stretes large and corious howsyng,
And þer-whyte-al dyched wel with-oute,
Strong[œ] wâllid & toured rounde aboute,
Of huge heîste and aboue * batailled,
Maskued also, lyst þei wer assailed,
With many palys, staȝty and royal,
For [þer] þe sete was moste principal,
þe kyng to abide bet þan elles-þher;
And þat tyme it happed hym be þere.
And he was callyd Cethes, as I rede,
Ful renomed of knyȝthood and manhede,
And had aboute hym a wel beseyn meyne,
Lyche as was sytting vn-to his degre;

1234. lifte vp] make good D 1.
1243. new ] D 2, D 1—þis] in þis C. 1245. a rial] arial C.
And every-where, londys enviroun,
be fame spradde of his hise renoun.
And al aboute his myghti chefe cite,
Wher as Cethes helde his royal se,
Wer freshe ryuers, of whiche be water clene
Liche cristal schon ageyn be sonne schene,
Fair[e] playnes, as Guydo bereth witnes,
And holsom hylles ful of lustines,
And many laye and many lusty welle.
And yer wer eke, my auctor can sou telle,
Ful many a parke, ful feir and fresche to sene,
And many wode & many medowe grene,
With sondri flouras amonge be herbes meynt,
Whiche on her stalke nature hath depeynt
With sondri Hewes, with Innen and with-oute,
After be sesoun of * somer cam aboute.
For fyshyng, foulyng, & haukyng eke also,
For venerie and huntyng bothe two,
be place was inly delittable;
Of corn and greyne passyngly greable,
And plenteuous in al maner thing.
For yer men herde be briddes freschely syng
In tyme of dere in her armonye,
bat be noyse and soote melodye
On fresche branches, ful delicious,
Reioische wolde pise folkis amerous,
Whom louys brond hath fired to be hert,
And adawen of her paynes smert,
bet certeiny whan bat * grene ver
I-passed were, ay fro yer to yer,
And May was com, be monyth of gladnes,
And fresche Flora, of flouris emperes,
Hadde clad be soile new at her devise,
Jason and his men march to King Cethes's Palace.  

Jachonites is like Paradise.  

jis noble place was like a paradysse.  
And Ceres, goddesse of largesse and foysoun,  
Swyche plente 3af vn-to  hat region,  
Of flesche, fische, vyn, vitaille, and corne,  
hat þe licour of her ful[le] horne  
Vp-on pat lond so gan reyne and snowe,  
hat alle estatis, bothe hise and lowe,  
Ladden her lyf in souereyn suffisaunce,*  
With al þat Nature coude or mysþ avaunce  
þis litel Ile with her giftes grete,  
Lyche as to-forn þe haue herde me trete.  
For þer was plente, & þer was abusadaunce,  
And þer was al þat mysþ[e] do plesaunce  
To any herte, and al commodite.  
And so bifel, that to þis cite  
Jason is come, and with hym Hercules,  
And after hem * foloweth al þe pres,  
Ful wel arraied and rially beseyn,  
Armyys enclosed to-gydyre tweyn & tweyn—  
A peple chose as it wer for þe nonys;  
And þer-with-al of brawny & of bonys,  
Eueryche of hem of makynge and fasiouz  
Ful wel complete by proporciour,  
3ong of age and of good stature,  
Of countenaunce sad and ful demwre,  
hat euery wy3þ had[de] gret plesaunce  
To sen þe maner of her gouernaunce:  
So 3ong, so fresche, hardy [and] meke also.  
And al attonys þei to þe paleys goo  
With swiche a cher, þat eueryche hath disport  
To sen þe maner of her noble port.  
So gentilmanly þei demened were,  
þat þe peple gan presen euery-where  
To sen þis * straungeris, lyche þe Grekis gyse,  
Demene hem silfe in so thrifty wyse;

---

1299. fische] of fishe D 2, & fishe D 1.  
1301. gan] coude D 1.  
1302. And] And of D 2.  
1303. suffisasaunce] sufficiaunce C.  
1304. foloweth] foloweth al þe pres, D 1.  
1305. soldiers D 1.  
1306. of brawny & of bonys, D 1.  
1307. Eueryche of hem of makyng and fasiouz, D 2.  
1308. Ful wel complete by proporciour, D 2.  
1309. 3ong of age and of good stature, D 1.  
1310. of countenaunce sad and ful demwre, D 1.  
1311. To sen þe maner of her gouernaunce: D 1.  
1312. So 3ong, so fresche, hardy [and] meke also. D 1.  
1313. With swiche a cher, þat eueryche hath disport D 1.  
1314. To sen þe maner of her noble port. D 1.  
1315. So gentilmanly þei demened were, D 1.  
1316. þat þe peple gan presen euery-where D 1.  
1317. To sen þis * straungeris, lyche þe Grekis gyse, D 1.  
1318. Demene hem silfe in so thrifty wyse; D 1.
BK. I] Jason and Hercules are well received by K. Cethes. 51

And of desyre þe peple nolde cesse
Abouten hem to gadren and empresse,
And to enquire what þei myȝ[t]e be,
þat of newe with swiche rialte
Ben sodeynly entred in-to toowne.
þus eueriche wolde with his felawe* rowne;
þei wern so rude to staren and to gase,
To gape & loke,* as it wer on a mase;
þis townysche folk do so comownly
On euery þat falleth sodeinly.
But how þat Cethes, liche a worthi kyng,
Whanne þat he herde first of her comyng,
Receyveth hem and hooly þe maner,
3iffe þat 3e liste, anoon 3e schal [it] here.

Howe Kenge Cethes of Calcos wirshipffully ressavith
Iason and Hercules into his Cytee Called Iacony-
thes, wher þe Flees of golde was.1

Whan þat þe kyng hath sothly vnderstonde
How þe Grekis comen wer to* londe,
And how Iason was also þer-with-al,
Borne by discent of þe blood roial
Of Thessalye, and likly to ben eyr,
If he by grace hane ageyn repeyr,
þe aventures acheved of Colchos,
þe kyng anoon out of his se a-roos
Of gentilnes, in al þe haste he may,
In godely wyse to mete hem on þe way,
And hem receyveth with chere ful benyngne;
And vn-to hem anoon he doth assigne
His offyceris tawayte hem nyȝt and day,
Charyng hem in al maner way,

1  Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 13 d.
King Cethes hospitably entertains Jason in Jachonitos.

K. Cethes orders that Jason and his men are to have all they want.

He receives them in his chamber, gives them wine, takes his royal seat, and bids Jason

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{pat what-so-euer may to hem don ese,} & \hspace{1cm} 1360 \\
\text{Or any ping pat may hem queme or plese,} & \hspace{1cm} 1364 \\
\text{pat pei it haue in foysouz and plente,} & \hspace{1cm} 1368 \\
\text{Eueryche of hem, lyche to his degre,} & \hspace{1cm} 1372 \\
\text{bus he comauadeth in al maner ping.} & \hspace{1cm} 1376 \\
\text{And pan anoon pis noble worthi kyng,} & \hspace{1cm} 1380 \\
\text{As he pat was of fredam a * merour,} & \hspace{1cm} 1384 \\
\text{Thoruz many halle and many riche tour,} & \hspace{1cm} 1388 \\
\text{By many tourn and many diuerse way,} & \hspace{1cm} 1392 \\
\text{By many gre made of marbil grey,} & \hspace{1cm} 1396 \\
\text{Hath hem conveyed a ful esy pas,} & \hspace{1cm} 1400 \\
\text{Til he hem brouzt ter his chambre was,} & \hspace{1cm} 1404 \\
\text{Wher he with hem helde his daliaunce.} & \hspace{1cm} 1408 \\
\text{And ter anoon with euery circumstauce} & \hspace{1cm} 1412 \\
\text{Of manly fredam, he made to hem chere;} & \hspace{1cm} 1416 \\
\text{And in his chambre, englasid bri3t and clere,} & \hspace{1cm} 1420 \\
\text{pat schon ful schene with golde & with asure} & \hspace{1cm} 1424 \\
\text{Of many ymage pat was ter in picture,} & \hspace{1cm} 1428 \\
\text{He hath comauadetd to his officeris,} & \hspace{1cm} 1432 \\
\text{Only in honour of hem pat were * strauengeris,} & \hspace{1cm} 1436 \\
\text{Spicys and wyn, and after pat anoon,} & \hspace{1cm} 1440 \\
\text{pe jonge fresche, pe lusty man Iason,} & \hspace{1cm} 1444 \\
\text{As faste gan be lycens of pe kyng} & \hspace{1cm} 1448 \\
\text{For to declare pe cause of his comyg.} & \hspace{1cm} 1452 \\
\text{But first pe kyng, with gret rialte,} & \hspace{1cm} 1456 \\
\text{Ascendid is in-to his royal se,} & \hspace{1cm} 1460 \\
\text{Clothis of gold hanged enviroun} & \hspace{1cm} 1464 \\
\text{After pe custom of pat regioun,} & \hspace{1cm} 1468 \\
\text{pat to be-holde it was a noble sy3te,} & \hspace{1cm} 1472 \\
\text{Stondyng aboute many a] worthi kny3te} & \hspace{1cm} 1476 \\
\text{And many squier and many gentil man} & \hspace{1cm} 1480 \\
\text{Ful wel be-seyn; and pe kyng ri3t than} & \hspace{1cm} 1484 \\
\text{Vn-to Iason, stondying in presence,} & \hspace{1cm} 1488 \\
\text{Comauanded hath of his magnificence,} & \hspace{1cm} 1492 \\
\end{align*}
\]
With Hercules to sitte down by-syde, 
And Iason pan no lenger liste abyde 
Of his comyng pe cause for to schewe, 
\[leaf 9 b\] 1396 
\[leaf 9 b\] 
Saue Iason, or he his tale gan, 
Ful wel avised, and cherid lyche a man, 
Concevied hath and noted wonder wel 
From point to point his mater everyled, 1400 
And nat for-gat a word in al his speche; 
But evene lik as rethorik doth teche, 
He gan his tale so by crafte conveie 
To make pe kyng, to pat he wolde seie, 1404 
Condescende, and rather to encline 
For tassent pat he myȝt[e] fyne 
Of his comyng pe knystly hïe emprise, 
bus worde by worde as I schal her deuise: 1408 

**Howe Iason purposede his instance in pe presence of Kenge Cethes of Colcos to grante him licence to darreyn batel for pe flees of golde.**

"R yȝt worthi prince, present in pis place, 
Only with support of your hîe grace, 1399. down] down there D 1. 
And your goodnes, most excellent and digne, 1397. gan] bigan D 1. 1399. wonder wel] eucry ðele D 1. 
With pacience of your faoure benign, 1400. euerydel] wonder wele D 1. 
Disple[se] it not pat I may seyn and schewe, 1402, D 1 inserts two lines: 
And declare with wordys but a fewe 
pe fynal grounde and cause of my comyng; 1404. 
So pat ȝe list, whiche ben so noble * a kyng, 1412 
In goodly wyse, with-oute more ofence, 
Benygynely to ȝeven audience 
To my request, and [pat] ȝe nat disdeyne 
his request, 

1393. 
1400. euerydel] wonder wele D 1. 
*After 1402, D 1 inserts two lines: 
fful benignely & in humble wise 
As men may leren writen of the wise. 
1403. He gan] Bigan D 1. 
1418. ȝeven] ȝeue me D 1. 

1 Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 14 a.
he wants leave to get

the Fleece of Gold.

Goodly to graunte pat I may atteyne
In pis lle, if it may availe,
pe flees of gold frely for tassaille,
As pe godlys in pis auenture
List to ordeyne for my fatal ewere.
In whom lyth al, pleynyly, and fortunate,
For to gouerne things in comowne,
In werre and pees, conquest and victorie,
And of armys pe renoun and pe glorie,
Discomfeture & bringyng to outraunce—
Al lyth in hem to hyndren or avaunce—
Ageynes whos myȝt no mortal man may chese.

Win or lose,

But for al pis, wherȝer I wynne or lese,
Or life or dethe be fyn * of my labour,
3iffe pat ȝe list to done me pis fauour,
To geve me leue and no more delaie,
I am acorded fully for to assaye,
Liche as pe statut maketh mencion.
Mo liste to make noon excipioun,
Vp-on no syde fauour for to fynde;
But as pe Rytys pleynyly make mynde,
What euer falle, I schal hem vnderfonge,
Lawly besechyng pat ȝe nat prolonge
My purpos now, and maketh no delay,
But of your grace setteth me a day
Myn emprise pat I may acheve;
For myn abood stant vp-on your leue—
Seith but a worde of grauntynge at pe lestest,
And ȝan I have pe fyn of my requeste.”
And whan pe kyng had herd * ceryously
[leaf 9c]

he'll try for it,

If Cethes 'll fix a day for his start.

He stynt a litel, and kepte hym clos a while ;

1420. pat] & pat D 1. 1421. ȝif ] ȝif pat D 1.
1424. List] For me D 1—for] and for D 1.
1425. 26 are omitted in D 2.
1426. Al] As D 1—avaunce] tavaunce A.
1429. where] where A, wher D 2. 1433. fyn] myn C.
1441. vnderfonge] vnderstounde D 2.
1447. Seith] Set A—of] or A—of grauntynge] and graunțe} D 1.
1448. herd] herkned C. 1450. seide] pat seide C.
Til at pe laste he goodly gan to smyle
Toward Jason, and seyd[e] to hym þus:
“Jason,” quod he, “þou þou be desyrous
To vnderfonge þis pasyng hiȝe empriſe,
Mi counsail is, liche as I schal deuise,
Ful prudence for to caste a-foren
þe mortal pereyl, or þat þou be lorne;
For in þis þing þer is a lawe set
Be enchantement, þat may nat be let
Nor remedied, for favoure nor for mede.
For deth in soth, who so taketh hede,
Is þe guerdoun platly or þei twynne,
Of all þat caste hem þe flees of gold to wyynne.
For help is noon in manhod nor fortune;
þe streyte weye is so importune,
So dредful eke, and so ful of rage,
þat saue dethe, þer is no passage,
Of victorie þe palme to conquere.
For sothly, Jason, as I schal þe lere,
Founded of old by merueillous wyrkyng
Ben þe statutes of þis mortal þing;
So sore bounde vnder my regalye
þat þe rigour I may nat modefy.
Wherfore, Jason, or þou * þis þing attame,
Liste afterward on me wer laide þe blame
Of þi lesyng or destruïon,
Of fyeþful hert and trewe entencioun
I warne þe, my siluen for to quyte;
So þat no man iustly schal me wyte,
þoue þou of þouþe & of wilfulnes
þi silfe distroye, with-out avisenes,
Synth I aforne, of þis perillous cas,
From point to point haue tolde þe al þe cas.
Be now avised, and put no faute in me,
For þe surplus frely lyth * in þe,
Of al þis þing, siȝen þou maist chese;

1453. Toward[| Towardes D 2, D 1—to] vn to D 2.
1460. þat] wiche D 1. 1461. nor] or D 1.
1486. frely lyth] lyth frely C.
Cethes leaves Jason to choose if he'll try for the Fleece. [BK. I

And wher-so [be], pat thou wyne or lese,
No man to me it justly * may arrette:
For pe lawe pat Mars hym silfe sette,
No mortal man of due riȝt may passe;
For hīȝe nor lowe get noon other grace,
Pan * pe goddys list for hym ordeyne,
What euere he be pat cast hym to darreyne
Pis diuerse ping, moste furios of drede.
Wherfore, Jason, how-euer pat thou sped,
I haue to pe openly declared
Holly pe pereil, and for no fauour spared,
As fer in sothe as resoun, wil, and riȝt;
For thou wost wel, it lyth nat in my myȝt
For to debarre, or any man to lette,
Pat of manhood knyȝtly cast to sette
Vp-on pis ping, as thou hast herde me telle.
What schulde I lenger in pis mater dwelle,
Iit wer but vayn, for now thou knowest al.
Be war of hir pat turneth as a bal;
For at pis tyme thou gest no more of me—
Do as thou list, I putte pe choyse in the.”
And with pat word the kyng ros vp anoon,
Vp-on pe tyme when he schulde goon
Vn-to his mete, and Jason by his syde,
As ȝe schal here, ȝif ȝe liste abide.*

Howe Kenge Cethes sent for his doughtire Medea to chere his straungers, to his owne damage.¹

The tyme aprocheþ, & gan to neiȝen faste,
Pat officeris ful besely hem caste
To make redy, with al her fulle cure,
And in pe halle pe bordis for to cure;

¹ Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 15 c.
BK. I] King Cethes feasts Jason and Hercules in his Palace. 57

For by þe dyal þe hour þei gan to marke,
that Phæbus southward was reised in his arke
So hie aloft þat it drowe to noon,
þat it was tyme for þe kynge to goon
Vn-to his mete and entrent in-to halle.
And Cethes þanne, with his lordis alle,
And with his knyȝtes aboute hym euereçchon,
With Hercules, and also with Iason,
Is set to mete in his roial se,
And euerych lord, lyche to his degre.
But firste of alle, is worþi man Iason
Assigned was, by þe kynge anoon,
For to sitten at his owne borde;
And Hercules, þat was so gret a lorde,
Was set also faste by his syde.
And þe marchal no lenger list abide
Tassigne estatis wher þei schulde be,
Liche as þei wern of hie þor low degre;
And after þat, on scaffold hie a-lofte,
þe noyse gan, lowde & no ping softe,
Both of trompetis and of clariouneris.
And þer-wit li-alle þe noble officeris
Ful prifthely serued han þe halle,
Liche as þe sesoun þat tyme dide falle,
With alle deintes þat may rekned be;
þat soþfastly þe foysouþ and plente
Of knyȝtly fredam vn-to hie and lowe,
So fulsomly gan to reyne and snowe,
þat þorþ þe halle was þe manhod prised
Of þe k[i]ng, and his renoun reysed,
þat can his gestis, soþly for to seye,
Whan þat hym liste, cheren and festeye [leaf 10 a]
So liche a kyng, and in so prifty wyse,
58 K. Cethes's Feast. He sends for his daughter Medea. [BK. I

The feast is so fine that
With al deinte pat man can deuise.
For at pis feste and solemnitie,
be Grekas muyt be grete nobley se
Of kyng Cethes, and be worthines,
And by reporte per-of bere witnes
Wher-so pei com, after al her lyue.

I can't describe all its courses.
I want[e] connynge, by ordre to discribe
Of every cours pe diversytes,
be straunge sewes and pe sotiltes
bat wer pat day seruid in pat place.
Hath me excused, pou3 I li3ly passe,
Pou3 I can not al in ordre seyn;
Myn englishe is to rude and eke to pleyn.
For to enditen of so hige a ping.

King Cethes sends for his beautiful daughter,
But forthe I wil reherse how pe kyng
To schewe his gestis his nobley ouer al,
Hath for his douter sent in special,
And bad sche schulde forth anon be brou3t.
be whiche in soth, pou3 men had[de] sou3t
bis world pou3-out, I do sou pleyn assure,*
Men my3t haue founde no fairer creature,
More wommanly of port nor of manere,
Nor more demwr, nor sadder of hir chere,
Whos bewte was not likly for to fade.
And whan sche cam pe Grekas for to glade,
be halle in soth sche walkyth vp and down,
Of wommanlyd and pure affeccioun
To make chere vn-to pe[se] gestis newe.
And pus Medea with hir rosenhe hewe,
And with freschenes of pe lyle white,
So entermedled of kynde be delite,
bat Nature made in hir face sprede
So egally pe whyte with pe rede,
On the Beauty and Learning of Medea.

δat δe medelyng, in conclusion,
So was ennewed by proporcioun,
δat finally excesse was δer noon,
Of neuer * nouper; for bothe two in oon
So Ioyned wer, longe to endure,
By thempres δat callyd is Nature.
For sche hir made lyke to hir deuise,
δat to biholde it was a paradys,
In verray soth, bothe to oon and alle,*
Of olde and long syttyng in the halle.
δer-to sche was, as by successioun,
Born to be eyr of δat regiou,  
After hir fader, by discent of lyne,
3if sche abide and dure after his fyne;
Syth he ne hadde by ri3t[e] to succede
Non eyr male δat I can of rede.
Sche was also, δe bok maketh menciou,
Wexe vn-to 3eris of discrecioun,
Able for age maried for to be;
And not-with-standyng also ek δat sche
Was of bewte and of wommanhede,
On δe faireste δat I can of rede,
3it [n]oon of bothe han * hir 3outhe let,
δat to clergye hir desire was set
So passyngly, δat in special,
In alle δe artis called liberal
Sche was expert & knowyng at δe beste;
It was hir ewre to konne what hir liste.
Of swyche a womman herde I neuer telle.
At Elicon sche drank so of δe welle,
δat in hir tyme was δer noon semblable
I-founde in soth, ne noon δat was so able
To conceyve by studie and doctrine.
And of naturis disputen and termyne
Sche koude also, and δe causis fynde
Of alle pinges formed as by kynde;
Sche hadde in lernyng so hir tyme spent,
Medea's wondrous powers over Nature.

Medea is a master of various arts. She is expert in Astronomy, Necromancy, Illusion-making, and Heavenly Influences. She can make storms, thunder and lightning, rain and earthquakes, and turn day into night.

But most she wrought by nygromauncye, with exorzismes and cozinurusions; and vsed also to make illusions with hir charmys seide in sondri wyse; and with rytis of diuere sacrifice, encens and rikelis cast in to fe fire, to schewe pinges liche to hir desyre—With gotis hornys and with mylke and blod, when fe mone was equat and stood in fe fifpe or fe * seuenpe hous, and was fortuned with lokyng gracious, to chese an hour that were convenient and fortunat, by enchantement, to make and werke sondry apparences: so wel sche knewe fe heunely influences and aspectis, bothe wrope and glade; for sche by hem alle her pingis made that appartene to swyche experimentis. For whan hir list, by hir enchantementis, sche koude make fe wyndes for to blowe, to thondre and lijte & to hayle and snowe, and frese also, to greue men with peyne; and sodeinly sche coude make it reyne, schewe what wedir that hir liste to haue, and gasten men with sodein erthe-quave,* and turne fe day vnwarly vn-to nyzt; and panne anoon make fe sonne brixt schewe his bemyx, ful persyng and ful schene,

1633. and werke] a werke of D 1—apparences] apparens A.
1634. lokyng] looks D 1.
1637. and werke] a werke of D 1—apparences] apparens A.
1638. influences] influens A.
1645. frese] to frese D 1.
1648. gasten] castyn A—erthe-quave] erthe quake C.
1649. vn-to] to fe D 1—nyzt] the nyght A.
Medea's wondrous powers over Nature.

With goldene hornis, to voyde ny3tes tene;
And reyse floodis, with many dредful wowe;
And when hir list sche koude hem eft with-drawe.
Eke 3onge trees to sere, rote and rinde,
And afterward make hem, agein[es] kynde,
With lusty braunchis blosme and budde newe;
Also in wynter with flouris fresche of hewe
Araye þe erpe and tapite hym * in grene,
þat to beholde a Ioye it was to sene;
With many colour schewyng ful dүvere,
Of white and rede, grene, ynde, and pers,
þe day[e]s[y]e with hir riche croune,
And ober floures, þat wynter made froune,
Vp-on her stalke freschely for tapere.
And sodeinly, with a dedly chere,
Sche koude somer in-to wynter tornes,
Causyng þe day with mystes [for] to morne *;
And olde men sche koude make 3ong,
And eft ageyn, or any her * was sprong,
Sche koude hem schew boþe in hed & berd
Ful hor and grey, in craft sche was so lered.
And trees with frute sche koude make bare
Of rynde and lef, to do men on hem stare;
Clipse þe mone and þe bри[s[e] sonne,
Or naturally þei hadde her cours y-roune
To hem approprid, whiche þei may not passe;
For þif þat Titan his cours by kynde trace,
When he meveth vnder þe ecliptik lyne,
þe clips mote folowe, as auctours list diffyne :
So þat per be, by hir discrіceiuou,
Of bothe tweyne ful coniunciou,
And þat þe sonne with his bemys rede

1652. to] and D 1. 1659. hym} hem C, D 1.
1660. a Ioye it was] it was a Isie D 1. 1665. for] om. D 1.
1668. morne] morne C.
1670. her] hor C—was] wer A, were D 1.
1671. hed} here D 1. 1673. koude] koude eke D 1, D 2.
1676. y-roune] ronue D 1.
1678. his] by D 1—by] his D 1.
God forbid that we believe Ovid's fables about Medea.

Haue his dwellyng in pe dragoun hede,
And pe mone be * set eke in pe tail,
As by nature, pan it may nat feil

*bat per mote falle Eclips of verray nede,
In sondri bokys liche as pe may rede,
Be-cause of certein intersecaciouns
Of diuerse cercles, and reuolucons,*
*bat maked ben in pe heuene alofte,
Whiche causen vs for to faylen ofte
Of pe fresche comfortable streemys
*bat ben to vs yschad fro Phebus bemys.
For pe mone hath made denisioyn
By hir sodeyn interposiciouns,

by forces above that we can't see.)

May nat be-holde, nor I-sen at al,
Nor to oure lust fully comprehende,
How Appolo is in his chare schynende,
As we wer wont a-fornhand for to se.

But of al his grete Tholome,
Kyng of Egypte, telleth his cause why,
With-Inne his boke ful compendiously,
Bothe of Eclips and comnuacciouns,
And whi pei falle by natural mocion.

But of Medee, pou3 his clerke Ouide,
Tencrese hir name vp-on euery syde,
List in his fables swyche pinges telle,
*pou3 he of poetis was pe spring & welle:

Yit God forbede we schulde 3if credence
To swyche feynyng, or do so hize offence;
Syth of nature muste be denied
Al swyche afterynyng, and also ben diffied
Of euery cristen * stedefast in bileue.

For certeiny it wolde hizly greue
Our conscience, in any wise wene,
Ageyn[e]s kynd, which is so hiȝe a quene,
but any wyȝt or lyvyng creature
Scholde haue power, I do sow pleyn assure,
So cursed pinges supersticious
To do or worche, to kynde contrarious.
For God almyȝt, Iuge of Iuges alle,
Hath sette a lawe, [pe] whiche may nat falle,
Amonge planetis perpetuely tendure,
A-form ordeyned in his eternal cure,
pe whiche may nat, as clerkys list termynye,
Vp-on no syde bowe nor decline;
But as pei wern from discord or debat
Eternally yformed and creat,
Thorȝ pe fynger of his sapience,
Alwey to meve in her intelligence
Lyche as pei ben to his lordschip boynde.
For neuer zit ne was eclips y-fovnde,
pe mone not beynge in coniunccioun,
As I haue tolde, saue in pe passioun;
pe whiche eclips was ageyn[e]s kynde;
Nature her knot pe tym[e] dide vnbynde,
Whan Goddis sone starfe vp-on pe rode.
pe soune of life was dirked for oure goode,
Whan heuene and erpe with hiȝe compunccioun
Han signes schewed of lamentacioun,
By erpequaves liȝt turned to * dyrknes,
And dede bodies vpward gan hem dresse
From her tombis ageyn fro deth to lyue;
Stoon and roche a-sonder gonne * riue;
In pe temple pe veil was kut on two;
And signes many wern I-schewed tho—
but for wonder and tokens merveilous,

1728. nor] nouther (one stroke of the u missing) D 1.
1729. debat] bate D 1. 1730. yformed and] formed or D 1.
1733. to] vn to D 1.
1746. gonne] gan C, D 1—riue] to rive D 1.
1747. on] a D 1.
When Dionisius the Areopagite saw the day darkt, he said, 'Either the God of Nature dies, or this round world shall be dissolvd.'

God can restrain the elements, as when He made the Sun stand still for Joshua at Gibeon.

\[ \text{Be grete worpi Dionisius,} \]
\[ \text{Which at Athens, as clerkis of hym wryte,} \]
\[ \text{Was called in scolis Ar[y]opagite,} \]
\[ 1752 \]
\[ \text{Bat when he sawe—his noble famus clerke—} \]
\[ \text{Be bri[te] day sodeynly so derke—} \]
\[ \text{Al-pei he were a paynym in po dawes,} \]
\[ \text{And was infecte with rytys of her lawes,} \]
\[ 1756 \]
\[ \text{As he bat was most chef and principal} \]
\[ \text{Of philisophres, for to rekne al—} \]
\[ \text{Yet bat tyme, astonyed in his mynde,} \]
\[ \text{Seide platly: "oufer [pe] god of kynde} \]
\[ \text{Suffreth fe deadly, oufer out of doute—} \]
\[ \text{His rounde worlde whiche is so large aboute} \]
\[ \text{Schal be dissoluid and y-brou^t to nou^t} \]
\[ \text{By sodeyn chawnge, hasty as a thought."} \]
\[ \text{By his clergie he knewe no better skylle.} \]
\[ \text{For God bat may al chaungen at his wille,} \]
\[ \text{And hath power of swiche coaccioun,*} \]
\[ \text{Vnder whos my^t and disposicioun*} \]
\[ \text{Is lawe of kynde constrayne, soth to seie,} \]
\[ \text{From point to point lowly to obeye} \]
\[ \text{In euery ping bat hym list ordeyne—} \]
\[ \text{Of elementis he may be cours restreyne,} \]
\[ \text{As holy writ witnesses: 3e may se} \]
\[ \text{How at be requeste of worpi Issue,} \]
\[ \text{Be bri[te] sonne stood at Gabaon} \]
\[ \text{A days space in O degre, and schoon,} \]
\[ \text{Schewyng pis tokne to his trewe kny^t,} \]
\[ \text{Fynally for to 3eue hym ly^t,} \]
\[ \text{Bat he my^t by his h^e proves} \]
\[ \text{His cruel soon manfully oppresse,} \]

1755. Al-pei] Al be D 1—were] om. D 2.
1760. ou^r] bat ou^r D 1.
1761. ou^r out of] with oute any D 1.
1763. and] ou^r D 1—y-brou^t] brou^t D 1.
1766. may al] al may D 1. 1767. coaccioun] coacciouns C
1768. disposicioun] disposiciouns C.
1772. restreyne] constrayne D 1. 1774. pe] om. A.
Ovid tells lies about Medea. She comes to K. Cethes's Feast.

Whan þat he fast, þis knyȝt, þis Iosuè,
With kingges fyve, reignyng in Amorre:
So longe laste þe pursyte and þe chas,
Til þei were take, and for her trespass
Demp[t] to be ded, þe bible can þou telle.
Now syth þat God þus hiȝly list fulfille
Of his knyȝt requeste and orisoun,
What wonder wast þou; in þe * passioun
Of Criste Iesu, incarnat for our sakes,
þe sonne bemys þouȝ þei weye blake;
Sith he hath lordschipe of planetis alle,
And as hym list nedis it mote falle.
For of Medea thouch Ovidius
In his fables rehersyth and writ þus,
As he þat liste hir name to exalte,
3et from þe trouȝe somewhile he doth halte,
Al-be sche were a passyng sorceresse,
And ferpest named of any chanteresse—
I wil passe ouer ageyn to my matere,
And how sche cam to mete þe schal here.
Whan hir fader hadde * for hir sent,
Sche cam anoon at his comaundement;
But or sche cam, I fynde þat to-fore,
For to make hir bewte semyn more,
In hir closet sche toke hir beste array,
For to encrese al þat [euer] sche may
Natures wirke with royal apparaile.
For þis wommen gladly wil nat feyll
Whan þei of bewte haue plenteuous largesse,
To make it more þei don her besynesse,
With riche attirure yppon eueru syde;

1786. syth] sithe D 1—þus hiȝly] om. D 1—fulfille] to fulfelle
D 1.
1788. wast] was A, D 1, was it D 2—þe] his C.
1789.oure] his D 1.
1796. somewhile] somtyme D 2, som tym D 1.
After 1800, D 1 inserts:
If þat þou liste a while þeue aduertence
Hauie me excused I can noon eloquence.
D 1.
1804. semyn] seme þe D 1.
1810. To make it more] It to embelisshe A.

TROY BOOK.
Cethes imprudently bids Medea sit next to Jason. [BK. 1

Medea is so fine that her coming gladdens the hall.

Cethes seats her next to Jason, to cheer him.

If out be myss, pei can it close and hide,
For al pe foule schal couertly be wried,
\( \text{that no deaute outward be espied.} \)

But sche was bothe fayre & wel beseyn,
And in hir port [so] wommanly certeyn,
\( \text{that hir comyng gladeth al pe halle;} \)
For it was Ioye vn-to oon and alle
To sen pe maner tho of hir entre.
To whom hir fader bad to take hir see
Be-syde Jason, hym for to disporte
Of wommanhede, and to recomforte.

Howe Medea first lovede Jason, and of pe insaciate change and mutabilite of women.¹

But o, allas, per lakked hiz prudence,
Discret avis of inward prouidence,
Wisdom also, with pereil caste a-fore,
To trust a maide of tendre 3eris bore,
Of vnhappy fonned wilfulnes!
For pis kyng, of his gentelnes,
Comaundd hath to his confusioun,
To his dishonour and destruccioun,
His owne douster, born to be his eyr,
\( \text{that was also so wommanly and fair,} \)
So sodeynly doun to descende—
Considered nat pe meschef of pe ende.
Alas, why durst he in hir southe affie,
To make hir sytten of his cortesie,
Wher sche myzt by casuel mocioun
Ful liȝtly cacche or han occasionun
To don amys; allas, whi dide he so!
Why list hym nat taken hede per-to,
Nor to aduerte in his discresiouw,

1825. with pereil caste a-fore] hat he shulde haue cast a forn D 1.
1832. and] & so D 2, D 1. 1833. to] for to A, D 2, D 1.
1840. taken] to take D 1.

¹ Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 17 b.
Women are unstable, ever changing, never constant.

Wysly to caste a-forn in his resoun
pe vnwar chaunge pat is in wommonhed,
Whiche euery [wise] man ou3[t]e for to drede!
For who was euer * 3it so mad or wood,
pat ou3t of resoun conne ari3t his good,
To 3eue* feith or hastily credence
To any womman, with-oute experience,
In whom is nouthter trust ne sikernesse.
pei ben so double & ful * of brotilnesse,
pat it is harde in hem to assure;
For vn-to hem it longeth of nature,
From her birth to hauen alliaunce
With doublines and with variaunce.
Her hertes ben so freel and vnstable,
Namly in 3outhe, so mevynge and mutable,
pat so as clerkis of hem liste endite
(Al-be pat I am sori it to write)
pei seyn pat chawng and mutabilite
Appropred ben to femyn[ynte—
bis is affermed of hem pat were ful sage.
And speciali while pei be tender of age,
In her wexyng, and whan pat pei be 3onge ;
Whos herte acordeth ful selde with her tonge.
For if pe trouthe inwardly be sou3te,
With pe surpluse and remnaunte of her pou3te,
Men may per pe trewe patron fynde
Of Inconstaunce, whos flaksisable kynde
Is to and fro mevyng as a wynde,
pat Hercules wer nat strong to bynde,
Nouthter Sampson, so as I bileue,
Wommannes herte to make it nat remeve.
For as pe blase whirleth of a fire,
So to and fro pei fleen in her desire,
Til pei acomplischi fulli her delite.

1845. euery] euery C—or] or so D 1. 1846. conne] to kunne D 1.
1850. double] dulle D 1—ful] so ful C.
1860. ben] is D 1—femynynite] femynite D 1.
1869. a] pe D 1. 1871. so as I] as I on D 1.
1872. nat] to D 1. 1873. of] as D 2.
Women can't be content with one Man. Their Hypocrisy. [BK. I]

For as mater charitable appetite,
Kyndly denying after forme,
Till he his course by processe may performe,
So his women restreyn[en] hem he can
To sue her lust ay fro man to man. 1876

Women follow their lust, from man to man.

Howe women be nevere content in lustes Abitite til pai han assaiede pe abitite of pere Eye. And pat is, fro man to man.¹

pei wil not cesse til al be assaied;
But wolde God, as mater is apaied
With o forme, and holdeth him * content,
Whan of his boundys he hath pe terme went, 1884
And not desyreth further to procede,
But stille abitite and wil it nat excede,
pat by ensam[ple] alle womme[n] wolde
Resten in on, as dually thei schulde,
And holde hem peyde and stille per abide.
But unsure fotyng doth hem ofte slide;
For pei be nat content with vnite:  [leaf 11 d]
pei pursue ay for pluralite,
So of nature to mevyng pei be thewed;
Al-Jou[3] amonge, by signes outward schewed,
They pretend a maner stabilnes;
But vnder pat is hid pe dowbilnes
So secretly, pat outward at pe eye
Ful harde it is pe tresoud to espie.
Vnder curteyn and veil of honeste,
Is closed chaungne and mutabilite;
For her desyr is kepte ful cloo in mewe;
And ping pei hadde leuest for to soew,
Only outward for to haue a laude,
pei can decline with feyneyng and with fraude. 1904

¹ Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 17 c.
The folly of Cethes in making Medea known to Jason.

Wherfore, Cethes, þi wit was to bareyne,
þat þou aforne by prudence naddist seyne
What schulde folwe of þis unhappy caas.
Whi wer þou bolde for to suffre, allas,
þin owne doubt, so fair and freshe of hewe,
With straunge gestis entred but of newe,
So folily for to lete hir dele!
Wherþour, þin honour, þi worship, & þin hele
Was lost in heste, and sche to meschef brouȝt,
In straunge londe, with sorwe and myche þouȝt.
Wher as sche to grete sclaunder of þe,
In gret miserie and aduersite
An ende made; and þou wer lefte al sool.
þou myȝstel wel compleyne and make dool.
Allas þe while, ȝif in þi prudent syȝt
þou haddest grace to remembre aryst,
And to haue cast by discreet purvyance,
And weied wysely by mesour in balaunce
þe fraude of wommon, and þe fre[ȝ]te;
In whom ful selde is any sikerte,
As in [his] latyn Guydo dothe expresse.
Wherfor, þou Cethes, of vevray reklesnesse
þou hast attonys, in augment of þi woo,
With-out recure bothe two for-goo:
Firste þi tresour, and þi douȝter dere,
þat was to þe so passyngly entere,
And eke þin ayre; for whan þat sche was goon,
As seithe myn auctor, other was þer noon,
After þi day for to occupie
þi royal septre, nor þi lond to guye.
But what was worþ þe gret[ȝ] prouidence,
þe wakir kepyng, or besy diligence
Of myȝtj Mars, þat god is of bataile—
What myȝt it help, diffende, or availe
Ageyn þe wit of womman, or þe sleȝte;
Whos fraudes arn of so huge a weȝte,
For Medea stole her Father's treasure.

As she sat by Jason, her colour went and came; she changed from pale to red;

she grew cold and hot;

and the more she lookt at Jason, the more taken

she was with him.

pat as hem list ay þe game gothe,
Her purpos halt, who so be lefe or lothe—
þei ben so sliþe, so prudent, and so wyse!
For as þis story plainly doth devise,
þis Medea by hir engyne and crafte,
From hir fader his tresour hath berafte
þor þe werchyng of hir sleiþy gyle,
As þe schal her with-Inne a lityl while.
For as sche sat at mete in þat tyde,
Next hir fader, and Iason by hir syde,
Al sodeinly hir fresche rosen hewe
Ful ofte tyme gan chaunge and renewe,
An hondrid sythe in a litel space.
For now þe blood from hir goodly face
Vn-to hir hert vnwarly gan avale,
And þere-with-al sche wexed ded and pale;
And efte anoon, who þat can take hed,
Hir hewe chaungeth in-to a goodly red.
But euere amonge tennwen hir colour,
þe rose was meynt with the lillie flour;
And þouþ þe rose stoundemele gan pase,
3it þe lillie abideth in his place
Til nature made-hem efte to mete.
And þus with colde and with sodein hete
Was Medea in hir silfe assailed,
And passyngly vexed and travailed.
For now sche brent, and now sche gan to colde,
And ay þe more þat sche gan * beholde
þis zong Iason, þe more sche gan desyre
To loke on hym, so was sche sette a-fire
With his bewte and his semlynesse;
And evry þing sche inly gan enpresse,
What þat sche sawe, bothe in mynde & þouȝt,
Sche al enprente[t]h, and for-gat riȝt nouȝt;
For sche considereth evry circumstaunce
Bothe of his port, and his gouernaunce:

1944. þis] þe D 1.
1957. can] gan D 1.
1968. gan] be gan C.
Medea is Jason's, body and soul, but daren't show it.

His sonnysshe* here, crisped liche gold wyre,
His knyxtly loke and his manly chere,
His contenaunce with many noble signe,
His face also, most gracious and benigne,
Most acceptable vn-to hir plesaunce;
For, as sche pou3t, it was suffisaunce,*
With-outen more, vn-to hir allone,
To considre and loke on his persone.
For in pat tyme, with-outen any drede,
Of mete or drinke sche toke but litel hede;
For sche of food hath loste hir appetit,
To loke on hym sche hath so gret delite,
He was so prented in hir remembraunce.

Loue hath hir cau3t so newli in a traunce,
And y-marked vrilli his firy brond,
pat sche may nou3t eskapen fro his hond,
Nor eschewe his strok in special;
For sche was 3olde body, herte, and al,
Vn-to Jason, platly and to seye,
And euere among on hym sche cast hir eye,
Whan pat sche fonde a leyser oportune.
But of wisdam sche wolde nat contvne
Hir loke to longe, list men dempte amys;
But as pe maner of pis wommen is,
Sche kepte hir cloos and wonderly secre,
pat by hir chere no man my3t[e] see
What pat sche ment, by noon occasiou
Sche put hem out of al suspicioun;
For openly pe was no tokne sene.
Sche cast[e] rather pat men schulde wene
pat penchesoun of hir abstinence,
And why pat sche satte so in silence—
How pat it was only of wommanhede,
Of honest schame, and of chaste drede,
at to-gidre in hir hert[e] mette;
pe whiche tweyn so pis maide lette

1980. his face was gracious.
1982. suffisaunce] sufficiaunce C.
2004. But she kept this secret.
2008. Wanting men to think her silence was due to Modesty.
Medea controld her countenance.

And as girls can hide their feelings,

So Medea, keeping silent,

didn't show the hot fire of love within her, but still

longed for the handsome Jason.

Fro mete and drink, as it wolde seme.
þus of wisdam sche made hem for to deme,
And so to cast in hir opiouin;
And þus sche blent hem by discrecioun;
For hir chere koude euery þing excuse.

Sche ȝaf no * mater folis for to muse,
No * cher vnbrilded þat tyme hir asterte;
For þer was oon enclosed in hir herte,
And another in hir chere declared.

For maidenes han ofte sythes spared
To schewen* oute þat þei desyre in dede,
As it falleth, who so can take hede;
þat whil þei flouren in virginite,
And for ȝouthе haue no liberte
To specific þat her hert[e] wolde,
þei kepe hem cloos, for þei be nat bolde
To schewen* out þe somme of her sentence.

And þus Medea, kepyng ay silence,
Ne lete no worde by hir lippis passe,
But couertly with sobre chere and face,
What sche ment schewep with hir Eye

So secretly þat no man koude espie
þe hoote fire in hir breste y-reke;
And in hir self riȝt þus sche gan to speke,
As sche in sothe þat so moche can:
* So wolde God, þis ȝonge lusty man,
Whiche is so faire and semly in my siȝte,
Assured were to be myn owne knyȝte.
Whiche is to me most plesaunt and entere,
With berd y-sprong, schy[n]ing liche gold were,
So wel I-lemed, and compact by mesure,
Wel growe on heigte, and of gode stature;
And lyketh me in euery part so wel,
þat by assent of Fortune and hir whel, I ewred were to stonden in his grace.

2016. And þus sche blent] For to blende D 1—by] by hir D 1.
2044. on] of D 2, D 1. 2047. in] at D 1.
For as me semeth, on his knythly face
It is to me an heuene to by-holde,
Al-be þer-with myn hert I fele colde;
And þit in soth it may noon other be.
Alas! whi nadde he vp-on my wo pite,
Or, at þe lesthe, he knewe in his entente,
How moche trowth to hym þat I mente!
Of whiche, alas, he taketh no maner hede,
Al-be for hym I brenne as doth þe glede,
And to be ded I dar me not * discure.
Alas! my pitous and woful aventure
Is to rewful, and my mortal peyne,
So to be mordred, and dar me not compleyne
To frende nor foo of my chaunce, alas!
To vinden help or socour in þis caas.
And trew[e]ly, þit as I schal denise,
I no þing mene but in honest wise,
Liche as it schal openly be founde;
For I desire to be knet and bounde
With hym in wedlok, & neuer fro hym twyne;
For my menyng is with-owten synne,
Grounded and set vp-on al clennes,
With-oute fraude or any doubilnes—
So cleene and pure is myn entencioun!"
Loo, ay þe maner and condicioun
Of þis woman, þat so wel can feyne,
And schewen on, þouȝ þe[i] þink[e] twyne;
And courtyly, þat no þing be seyn,
With humble chere and with face pleyn,
Enclose her lustis by swych sotilte,
Vnder þe bowndis of al honeste
Of hir entent, þouȝ * þe trecherie
With al þe surplus vnder be y-wrye.
And þouȝ þat þei feith a-forn pretend, *
And can her fraude with florissyng wel diffende,  
And flaterie, only pe worlde to blende,  
With dowbilnes * enclosed in the ende,  
3it ay deceyt is * benethe ment,  
Vndre pe sugre of feyned clene entent,  
As it were soth, in verray existence;  
But, trust me wel, al is but apparene.  

They show one thing, but mean another:  
pei can schewe on, and another mene,  
Whos blewe is liishly died in-to grene;  
For vnder flores depeint of stabilnes,  
pei serpent dareth of newfongilnes.  
So pleyne pei seme with wordis fair[e] glosed,  
But vnnder-nethe her couer wil is closed;  
For what ping be most vn-to þer pay,  
pei wil denye and rathest þer swere nay.  

So says Guido.  
Alas, whi wolde he so cursedly write  
Ageyn[e]s hem, or with hem debate!  
I am riȝt sory in englishe to translate  
Reprefe of hem, or any euel to seye;  
Leuer me wer for her lone deye.  
Where-fore I preye hem to take in pacience;  
My purpos is nat hem to done offence;  
pei ben so gode and parfyte euerenchon,  
To rekne alle, I trowe þer be nat on,  
But þat pei ben in wille and her[t][e] trewe.  

But I, John Lydgate, say  
women are perfect.  
It they take new lovers,  
it's because men teach 'em to.  
If they take new lovers,  
and þif I koude I wolde hem * excuse.  
It sitteth nat a womman lyue alone;  

2082. wel} om. D 1.  
2084. dowbilnes] dowmbilnes C.  
2085. is} it C—ment] y ment D 1.  
2083. seme] seyn D 1.  
2084. wil] wel D 2, D 1.  
2085. þer} hir D 2, D 1.  
2086. rathest þer] þere rapest D 1—þor] they A.  
2088. write] I wryte A.  
2102. deye] to deie D 1.  
2103. to} om. D 1.  
2104. hem to done] to do hem D 1.  
2105. parfyte] so parfyte C.  
2112. hem] here C.  
2113. lyue] to lyve D 1.
It is no stor but pei haue more pan oon.
Preying to hem for to do me grace,
For as I hope, to hem is no trespas
Lydgate denounces Guido.
Where he mysseyth, late hym bere pe wyte;
As Guydo wryt in his original—
For it sit wel, pat pe vengance byte
So let Guido be blamed,
On hym pat so pis wommen haþ offendid;
And zif I myst it schul[de] ben amendid.
For 3if he died with-out repentaunce,
And not me, Lydgate.
He schulde reseyue duely his penaunce;
I am dispeired of his sauacioun,
Howe he schulde euer haue remissiou[n,
But he were contrite his synne to redresse;
It may not ben, as clerkys bere wytnesse.
And be my trouthe, and he were alyue—
I mene Guydo—and I schulde hym shryue,
If he were alive, and I shrove him,
So bitter penaunce pleynly he schulde haue,
I'd give him bitter penance.
Pat to pe tym[e pat he were I-graue,
He schulde remembre, and platly not asterte
For to repente hym with al his hol[e] herte,
Pat he so spake to his confusion.
I wil no lenger make digressiou[n
[leaf 13 a]
Fro my matere, but let Guydo be,
But to return to Medea.
And telle forpe pe worching of Medee,
She goes to her chamber.
Pat hath licence of hir fader nome,
She goes to her chamber.
And to hir chaumbre is allone y-come,
Whan oute of halle * with-drawn was pe pres,
She goes to her chamber.
And whan Iason, and also Hercules,
Liche as pe kyng after mete bad,
To her chaumbres conveyed wern and lad,
Ful rially arrayed and beseyn;
For euery wal was cured in certeyn
With clothe of golde, in ful statly wyse.
And in pis while, as 3e han herde Denise,
Was Medea to hir chaumbre goon,
How burningly Medea is in love with Jason. [BK. 1

Wher by hir sylf, compleynyng euer in oon,
Sche 3af issu to hir peynis smerte,
Patre hir so sore han wounded to þe herte:
For Loue hap brouȝt hir in a sodeyn rage,
Pate was not likly sone for taswage;
For in sothenes, þe furious god Cupide
Hath swiche a fir kyndeled in her side,
Pate it was neuer likly hir to lete,
So violent and fervent was þe hete,
Pate mor an[d] mor encresen gan hir peyne.
For in hir breste þer was atwixe tweyne
A gret debate, and a stronge bataille,
So fervently eche other dide assaile;
And þis contek, in ernes and no game,
Iuparted was betwixe Lone and Schame,
Metyng to-gidre þer at vn-set stevene,
Al-be þe felde was nat parted evene.
For Loue in * soth, ful of hije renoun,
Was bolde and hardy, liche a fers lyoun,
And was nat ferful of sper, swerde, nor knyf,
But hoot and hasty for to awnter his lif,
Eke surquedous, stout, and ful of pride,
Chefe champioun of þe god Cupide,
Pate caunseth ofte, bothe fre and bonde,
Ful many pereil for to take on honde.
And caused hath ful many mannes dethe,
And many on to ȝelden vp þe brethe,
And made her wounds largely to blede;
For of pereil Loue taketh noon hede,
To gete hym honour by excellence of fame.
But in contrarie * his enmy called * Schame,
Liche a coward, feynyt and hert[e]les,
As he þat neuer dar put hym self in pres,
For lak of manhod drawiþ hym euer a-bak;

2157. neuer likly] likly neuer D 1.
2163. misplaced at bottom of column and marked a in C; 2164 is marked b.
2163. ernes] ernest A, D 2, D 1—no] not in D 1.
2164. Iuparted] In partyd A. 2167. in] for C.
2180. in contraire] þe contrarie C—called] is called C.
He is so dreadful and ferful of pe wrak,
Lyche a child, song and tender of age;
For he hath noughter herte nor corage
For to assaille, he is so feble of myste;
And hit ful ofte he hath stonde in pe siste
Of many louer, to let hym for to sped,
Shame checks the Ardour of Lovers.
77
lovers from

2184  Shame stops

2188  lovers from

For Drede and Schame, whan pei ben allied,
Of on assent haue pitously denied
Vn-to Loue, herte and hardines,
shame stops
Lyche a child, 3ong and tender of age;
For he hath nouthur herte nor courage
For to assaille, he is so feble of mysté;
And hit ful ofte he hath stonde in pe siste
Of many louer, to let hym for to sped,
Shame checks the Ardour of Lovers.
77
lovers from

2184  Shame stops

For whan hit Loue of manhod wolde speke,
pe wode fire out of his brest to vnreke,
Vp-on pe point whan he schulde assey,
Cometh Schame anoon, 6outterly seith nay,
And causeth Loue hornys for to schrynke,
To [a]baische his chere & pitously to * wynke,
2200  speaking out.
Cowardly his cause to appeire.
And bus is Schame froward and contrayre,
Shame hinderers them,
Jorun fals conspiring of his broþer Drede.
For Drede and Schame, whan pei ben allied,
Of on assent haue pitously denied
Vn-to Loue, herte and hardines,
shame stops
Lyche a child, 3ong and tender of age;
For he hath noughter herte nor courage
For to assaille, he is so feble of mysté;
And hit ful ofte he hath stonde in pe siste
Of many louer, to let hym for to sped,
Shame checks the Ardour of Lovers.
77
lovers from

2184  Shame stops

For whan hit Loue of manhod wolde speke,
pe wode fire out of his brest to vnreke,
Vp-on pe point whan he schulde assey,
Cometh Schame anoon, 6outterly seith nay,
And causeth Loue hornys for to schrynke,
To [a]baische his chere & pitously to * wynke,
2200  speaking out.
Cowardly his cause to appeire.
And bus is Schame froward and contrayre,
Shame hinderers them,
Jorun fals conspiring of his broþer Drede.
For Drede and Schame, whan pei ben allied,
Of on assent haue pitously denied
Vn-to Loue, herte and hardines,
shame stops
Lyche a child, 3ong and tender of age;
For he hath noughter herte nor courage
For to assaille, he is so feble of mysté;
And hit ful ofte he hath stonde in pe siste
Of many louer, to let hym for to sped,
Shame checks the Ardour of Lovers.
77
lovers from

2184  Shame stops

For whan hit Loue of manhod wolde speke,
pe wode fire out of his brest to vnreke,
Vp-on pe point whan he schulde assey,
Cometh Schame anoon, 6outterly seith nay,
And causeth Loue hornys for to schrynke,
To [a]baische his chere & pitously to * wynke,
2200  speaking out.
Cowardly his cause to appeire.
And bus is Schame froward and contrayre,
Shame hinderers them,
Jorun fals conspiring of his broþer Drede.
For Drede and Schame, whan pei ben allied,
Of on assent haue pitously denied
Vn-to Loue, herte and hardines,
shame stops
Lyche a child, 3ong and tender of age;
For he hath noughter herte nor courage
For to assaille, he is so feble of mysté;
And hit ful ofte he hath stonde in pe siste
Of many louer, to let hym for to sped,
Shame checks the Ardour of Lovers.
77
lovers from

2184  Shame stops

For whan hit Loue of manhod wolde speke,
pe wode fire out of his brest to vnreke,
Vp-on pe point whan he schulde assey,
Cometh Schame anoon, 6outterly seith nay,
And causeth Loue hornys for to schrynke,
To [a]baische his chere & pitously to * wynke,
2200  speaking out.
Cowardly his cause to appeire.
And bus is Schame froward and contrayre,
Shame hinderers them,
Jorun fals conspiring of his broþer Drede.
For Drede and Schame, whan pei ben allied,
Of on assent haue pitously denied
Vn-to Loue, herte and hardines,
shame stops
Lyche a child, 3ong and tender of age;
For he hath noughter herte nor courage
For to assaille, he is so feble of mysté;
And hit ful ofte he hath stonde in pe siste
Of many louer, to let hym for to sped,
Shame checks the Ardour of Lovers.
77
lovers from

2184  Shame stops

For whan hit Loue of manhod wolde speke,
pe wode fire out of his brest to vnreke,
Vp-on pe point whan he schulde assey,
Cometh Schame anoon, 6outterly seith nay,
And causeth Loue hornys for to schrynke,
To [a]baische his chere & pitously to * wynke,
2200  speaking out.
Cowardly his cause to appeire.
And bus is Schame froward and contrayre,
Shame hinderers them,
Jorun fals conspiring of his broþer Drede.
For Drede and Schame, whan pei ben allied,
Of on assent haue pitously denied
Vn-to Loue, herte and hardines,
With-out assaut þe castel were y-3olde;
It were no nede a sege for to leyn:
For in swyche case longe trete were in veyne;
For of nature þei loue no processe.*
But now, alas, Drede & Schamefastnesse
Han daunted Loue, in ful lowe manere,
And maked hym ful humble of port & chere;
And þei han eke by her violence,
For al his manhod, put hym in silence,
And ben gret cause of moring of his peyne.
And amyddes of þis ilke twyne,
So between Of Loue and Schame even vp-on þe point,
Stood Medea in ful gret disioynt,
þat sche ne may þe peyne nat endure,
So hoot sche brent, þis woful creature,
By-twuxe bothe—I mene Loue and Schame. [leaf 15 c]
For whan þat Loue wolde eny þing attame
Of his desires to declare hem oute,
Cam Schame anoon, and put him * in [a] doute;
And Drede was redy his lust for to denye.
And pus sche stood in a lupardye
Of Loue and Schame, in maner of a traunce,
Vn-euenly hanged * in balaunce;
For Schame was gret, & Loue þit was more,
As sche wel knewe, by hir si̇ges sore,
And by hir stormy cruel aventure.
For Drede and Schame durst[e] not discure
þe fire þat Loue had in hir brest enclosed,
Whiche was ful harde for to be deposed.
And þus sche henge euen atwixe two,
þat sche ne wist what was best to do;
Til þat Fortune with hir double face
Vnhappily hath wrought to gete hir grace,
With þe whirlyng of hir whele aboute,
That causeth * wrecches ful lowe down to loute, 
When þei best wene to sitten hire alofte—
Be experience, as men may sen ful ofte, 2256
By hir gery reuolucioun.
For þis lady of transmvtacioun, 
Ful ofte tyme fals and ful vnstable, 
Enhasteth þinges to foolish greable, 2260
Whiche in þe ende, to her confusioun, 
Can vnder sugre schrowden her poysoun.
For ay Fortune, as hir maner is, 
To wrechis scheweth * oþir þan it is; 2264
For with fayr chere and face of flaterie—
As sche þat can with a benigne eye
Fully of folis parforme the entent, 
Wherþoru þei be in gret meschef schent 2268
At þe ende, and can no * crafte [t]eschewe
þe vnwar harme þat at hir * tail doþ sewe—
Ry3t as it fel, whilom of Medee, 
Gynnyng and grounde of hir aduersite— 2272
For þis lady, þat called is Fortune,
I-graunted hath a leiser opportune
To schewe Jason hooly al hir herte,
Whiche made hir after ful sore wepe and smerte. 2276
For on a day, after meridien, 
Whan Appollo with his bemys schene
From þe southe plage gan to webster faste, 2280
Cethes, hir fader, hath y-sent in haste
To Medea to com to hym anoon,
And bad to hir þat sche schulde goon
Vn-to Iason and [to] Hercules, 
To make hem chere amongis al þe pres. [leaf 13 d] 2284
And whan sche caus3te opportune space 
To hir desire, and sawe eke in þe place,
þat hir fader was most occupied,
Medea visits Jason, and warns him.

As sche pat pouzte * not to ben espied,
Apparseyuynge his grete besynesse,
Toward Iason anoon sche gan hir dresse ;
And he in haste with a ful kny[3]ty chere,
In curteys wyse gan to drawe nere
Towards hir, & sawe per was no lette.
And whan pat pei were to-gidre sette,
jis Medea with sy^ing first abreyde,
And to Iason even pus sche seide :

Howe Medea exorted Iason not to take vpon him pis iopardy to preve his manhode. And howe she delyverde him thre penges for to distroy Martis ordynaunce.1

She begs him "Iason," quod sche, "of pin híše noblesse,
Of pi manhood and pi * gentillesse,
Bothe assembled in pi persone y-fere,
And of kny3thod, first I the requere
In pi conceyte and oppinioune
Nat to arette to presumpcioun,
To doublinesse nor to inconstaunce.
Of womanheded, nor to variaunce,
hat I am bold & can for no ping spare
My menyng clerly to 3ow to declare,
With-out[e] feynyng, in wordis plat & pleyn,
Besching firste, to hat pat I schal seyn,
With-out[e] more, of 3oure goodlyhede
Benyng[e]ly for to taken hede,
And paciently to my wordes leste,
And what I seye, to take it for pe beste
In 3our entent, and no ping 3ou to greue.
For pinges two myn hert[e] sore meve,

2288. pouzte] souzt C.
2292. drawe] drawe him D 1.
2294. And] But D 1—sette] met A.
2308. 1st hat] it D 1.
2311. paciently to my wordes leste] to my wordes paciently
liste D 1.

1 Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 19 c.
Medea warns Jason of danger in his Gold-Fleece Quest.

Medea tells Jason that

pis to seyne, loue and gentillesse,
What pat I mene clerly to expresse
To 3our persone, and no pis to concele
Or we parte, liche as 3e schal felte.
For me semeth, first of curtseye,
In sothefastnes, and of gent[e]rye,
pat to straungeris ever maner wy3t
Is bounde and holde of verray due ri3t
To make chere, and trewly as for me,
Be-cause, Jason, pat I in 3ow se
So moche manhod, & so gret worpinesse,
I wil not feyne with al my besynesse
To helpe and forther in al pat may 3ou like."
And with pat word of herte sche gan to sykc,
For his sake, and seide hym ouermore :
"For 3ou I fele ful gret anoy and sore,
pat meved arm withoute avisesesse,
Only of 3outhe and wilful hardinesse
be flees of gold to geten 3if 3e may ;
be whiche emprise, who-so-euer assay,
More perillous is pleynly to acheue,
In verray soth, pan 3e koude leue : 2336
For dout[e]les, I do 3ow wel assure,
be final mede of pis auenture
Is nat but deth, saue report of schame ;
For per 3e wene to gete 3ow a name,
be ende pleynly schal turnen in contrarie,
Fro pe gynnyng so pe fyn schal varie.
For wit of man, nouper engyn nor my3t,
Dou3 he be neuer so wel expert in fy3t,
Or haue in armys passyng exercise,
With alle pe sle3tes of olde or newe emprise,
Or Dou3 he be best brep3ed* to endure,
Or what deuis per be of his armvre,
Or what wepne also pat he brynge,
Harde3 with stele, trenchaunde or persyne,

2315. pis] This is D 2, That is D 1.  2316. to] I wele D 1.
2346. or] & D 1.  2347. brep3ed] bre3et C.
2350. trenchaunde] trenchaunt A, D 2, D 1.
TROY BOOK.
82 Medea promises to help Jason; and he vows to obey her. [BK. I

can save him, unless she aids him.

3it at pe last, when he hath al * sou3t,

With-out[e] me it vaille may rizt nou3t.

Wherefore, Jason, I haue compassioun

On * 3our 3outh, of * pure affecciou3:

Of wilfulnes 3e schuld[e] pus be lorn,

pat ben of blood and * lyno so hize born ;

For certeynly it may noon other be,

But zif pat 3e 3our conseil take of me,

For noon but I may do zow help or ese.

Allas, Jason, whi wil 3e not appesse

3our manly corage, in pis caas I-blent,

And to my counseil ben obedient !

If he'll obey her, he'll win

Pan durst I swerne 3e schulde haue victorie,

Ben remembred and put in memorie

Perpetuelly, and pouru3 3our knythod wynne

pe flees of gold, pe whiche is 3ond with-Inne,

In pe Ile pat stant here be-syde,

Of whiche pat Mars is gouernour & guyde.

Wherfore attonis in 3our silfe assent,

To my conseil fully to consent,

At fewe wordis, zif 3e list to spede,

And leue 3our lust and wirke after my rede."

Jason thanks Medea, and

To whom Jason with [ful] humble chere,

Answered and seide, "myn owne lady dere,

I thanke 3ow in al my best[a] wise,

Rizt as ferforth as I may suffise,

And as my power platly may atteyne,

Myn hertis quene and lady souereyne ;

Whom pat 3e may hooly, I ensure,

Al pe while pat my life may dure,

Trustep rizt wel, me list not for to feyne,

To liue or dye, at 3our lust restreyne,

As hym pat is 3our owne trewe man,

3ow for tobeye in al pat euer I can,

2351. hath al] al hath C.
2352. vaille may] may availle D 1.
2356. and] of C—born] I born D 2, y born A.
2354. he D 1. 2373. new T D 1.
With-oute chaunge or any doubilnes,  
While þat I lyve, in verray sothfastnes.  
þat 30w list of trewe affeccioun,  
Vp-on my life to haue compassiou,n,  
Of gentilnes, and [þat] 3e list to haue  
Swiche cherte my body for to saue,  
þat in good feith, of verray due ríjt,  
I am y-bounde to be 3our owne knyʒt*  
Vn-to myn ende; and þat more specially  
þat of 3our grace so benygnely  
3e liste 3our silfe of my conseil be,  
þat neuer a-forn to 3ow in no degre  
Ne dide seruise to 3oure wommanhede;  
And with 3oure wordis ful of goodlyhed,  
3our owne man listeth recomforte.  
þe whiche in soth, so as I can reporte,  
A þousand folde be þe more plesaunt,  
þat neuer a-forn no merit gat him* graunt,  
Ne no decert, requeste, nor prayere;  
But more frely, with hert[e] ful entere,  
Liste vnrequered on my wo to rewe,  
And vndeserued ben to me so trewe,  
þat I ensure vp-on my feith as faste,  
In 3our seruise I schal vn-to my laste  
Perseuere, sothly, þat þer schal be no slouthe,  
Nor variaunce, and þe[r]-to here my troufe:  
For finally with-outen [any] wene,  
At fewe-wordes, I seie ríjt as I mene,  
Me list not feyne, flatre, nor delude,  
For my behest with deth I schal conclude,  
Whan þat parchas my lyves thred to-rende;  
þis al and som, and þus I Make an ende.”  
“þanne,” quod sche, “ful wysly in 3our herte  
þe moste a-forn consideren and aduerte  
If Medea will save Jason,  
he will be her Knight till death,
Medea dissuades Jason from his Quest.

Your Quest

Be * aventure, pat 3e take on honde,
And prudently be pereil vnderstonde,
And ful warly caste and haue in mynde
Be mortal harme at be tael be-hynde,
Pat is wel more pan it is credible;
For leue me wel, it is an impossible
To gynne [in] honour, & also for to fyne.

For pilke flees be hi3e power devyne
Preseruyd is, and eke with Martis my3t,
Pat who-so entrep beere for to fi3te,
It wer ful harde [to] hym to eskape
Be firy flame, whan be bolis gape,
Pat ben of bras, trapped al in leuene,
More for to drede pan li3tnyng of pe heuene
To-fore pe dent of pe grete thonder,
Pat seuered hath many tour assondre;
For to assches pei moste * a man consume.

Wherfor I rede pat 3e nat presume
Pe Ram tassaile, lest 3e 3our labour lese;
With-drawe * 3our foot 3it sithen 3e * may chese,
By good avise and discreccioun,
3our honour saue, and 3our hige renoun.

Whe-so 3e list of 3our wilfullnes,
Only of foly and of hastines
To pis emprise of heed to procede,
Or wher 3e list, liche as I 3ow rede,

Save yourself from woe.

Sauen 3our silfe from wo & al meschaunce,
Liche as 3e schal, jif to myn ordynaunce
3e 3ow committe, and lowly list obeye
With-outе fraudе—per is no more to seie.”

And Jason pan, sittyng at pe borde,
Of Medea enprentyng euery worde,  
Wexe for Ire almost inpacient,  
And seide, "allas, [and] is pis 3our entent,  
Me to counseile to leue pis emprise?  
Certis it were to fowle a cowardyse,  
To gynne a thing I my`ste leue pis emprise;  
For euery man wolde me repreue,  
And report to my confusioi

This angers Jason, who says it would be cowardice and shame to give up what he'd undertaken.

He'd rather be cut to bits than for sake his enter prise.

He'd rather be cut to bits than forsake his enterprise.

If he abandon it for fear.

Endure A.
I schal parforme þat I haue begonne;
And þouȝ so be, it may not be wonne,
But þat I moste with my dethe it bye,
I wil not leue, for leuer I haue to dye
þan lyue aschamed of cowardyse & slouthe.
For me semeth, it is to hije a routh
A man to apere or dore schewe his hede
After tyme when his worchip is ded,
Or to lyue when his name is slayn;
For every man schulde be rather* fayn
to dye in honour, þan lyuen as a wreche;
And þouȝ þis þing to my deth now streche,
It is welcom, I schal it wel abide:
þis al and som, what so of me betide."
"þan," quod sche, "sythen it is so,
þat þe algatis desyre to haue a-do,
þer is no more by ouȝt I can espie,
But þe haue leuer schortly for to dye,
Rather þan lyue and to haue a schame;
And þit it is an ernes and no game,
With suche monstres vnwarly for to dele,
Lyche as in dede her-after þe schal fele.
Wherfor I am meved of pite,
And greetly stered, þat þe of volunte,
With-out avis or discrecioun,
Counseil or good deliberacion,
List take on þow þis merveillous viage;
For þow þouthe and also þow corage
Gouerned ben, as in þis materie,
Al after luste; for bothe two I-fere
Iuparted ben, þif þe þow purpos swe;
For impossible is* to þow teschewe
A sodeyn deth, for nouþer fre nor bonde

2486. it] þat it D 1.
2488. leuer I haue to] I hadde leuere D 1.
2500. algatis desyre] desire algates D 1.
By craft of man hath power to with-stonde. 
Wherfor I pinke of herte and good entent 
To cast a weye, 3it or 3e be schent, 
And to 3our Iorney schape a remedie, 
Swiche rauhte I haue 3at 3e shulde * dye; 
For my fader, whom I loue moste, 
Rather 3an 3e schulde 3us be loste, 
I schal offende, and outerly displesse 
My frendes alle, so it may do 3ow * ese. 
For I schal fynde swych a menne weye, 
At 3e lest 3at 3e schal nat deye; 
For in 3is cas, I thinke be 3our guyde, 
So 3at for 3ow I schal sette a-syde 
My birth[e] first, of 3e stoke royal, 
And ouermore myn heritance with-al, 
And myn honoure schal be putte a-bak 
3ow for to helpe, 3at per schal be no lak 
Founden in me, so * 3e wil be kynde, 
And 3at 3e liste for to haue in mynde 
As I disserue goodly me to quite, 
Consnydering firste 3at it is not a lite 
To saue 3our life, 3at stant in iupartye 
More perilously 3an 3e can espie. 
But for al 3is, I schal it so ordeyne, 
Por3 my crafte, only atwixe vs tweyn, 
3at or we parte I hope al schal be wel: 
Vp-on 3is point so 3at I may fel, 
Feithfully for Ioye, wo, or smerte, 
With ful acorde of body, wille, and herte, 
To my desire 3at 3e condiscende, 
I vndirtake to maken a good ende.” 
“3is, sothly, lady,” seide Jason tho, 
“I am assented, with-oute wordes moo, 
For to fulfille with euery circumstaunce 
What 3at euer may be to 3ow plesaunce.” 
“3aune,” quod sche, “3er is no more to seyn— 
But first of al, with feith & herte pleyne,
Medea asks Jason to pledge his faith to her.

Medea says Jason must promise to wed her.

Jason pledges his faith to Medea.

With all your might, and all your best cure,
And menynge hool, pat 3e me assure
pat 3e her-after schal take me to wyve,
To holde and kepyn after al 3our lyve,
So pat 3our dede acorde with 3our heste;
his is pe fyn and somme of my requeste:
Excepte only pat 3e shal* ordeyne,
In 3our repaire to 3our fadres reigne,
pat feithfully 3e schal me with 3ow lede;
And after pat, when pat 3e sucede
After his day in-to 3our heretage,
With herte ay oon, and with o corage,
3e schal to me ben y-lyche trewe,
And cherische me for chaunge of any newe,
Liche myn estate, with-oute variaunce,
And while 3e liue han in remembraunce
My kyndenes in 3our grete nede.
For 3er is noon alyue pat may spede,
Creature pat is here mortal,
For to assaille pe forcys marcial
Of pe drageune and bolis, bothe I-fere;
But it so be of me pat he lere
Holy pe maner how he schal hym guye,
Liche as to 3ow I thanke specific,*
When it happeth pat we mete ageyn;
For noon but I may helpen, in certeyn,
In pis cas, as platly 3e schal fynde,
And I not aske but pat 3e be kynde.”
“Sothly,” quod Jason, “al pis schal be do
As 3e deuise, I wil pat it be so;
And here my faith, pe-pon I 3ow assure,
O goodlieste of any creature
pat enere 3et I saie vn-to my paye,
And fairest eke, in soth it is no nay—
And of bounte 3e ben incomperable;
For of my deth 3e ben so merciable,

2556. fyn and somme] somme & fyn D 1.
2561 shal] schulde C. 2570. 3e] I D 1.
2576. he] 3e D 1. 2578. specific] to specific C.
2589. bounte] beaute D 1.
Jason will be true to Medea, the Fairest of the Fair.

Pat while I live, I seie 3ow be my feith,
Myn hert[e] menyth as my tong[e] seith,
I wil be founde 3our owne trew[e] man
For life or deth, in al pat euers I can;
So pat of grace it be 3ow plesaunt
For to parforme 3our hestis and 3our graunt,
And wereche fully to my sauacioun,
As 3e han seide, in ful conclusiou.
For trewly 3e, of alle pat bere life,
In bewte han a prerogatyfe,
Passyng echon, me liste not for to glose,
Amongis flouris as doth pe rede rose,
Which in somer amyd pe herbes swote,
After pat ver hath made oute of pe rote
pe humydyte kyndely tascende,
pe bareyn soyl to clothen and amende,
And pe braunchis, pat wynter made bare,
With soote blosmys freschly to repare,
And pe medwes, of many sondri hewe,
Tapited * ben with diuerse flouris newe,
Of sondry motles, most lusti for to sene,
And holsomm bawme is schad among pe grene—
Ri3t as pe rose is fairest of echon,
Ri3t so Nature sette 3ow allon,
When sche 3ow made, first at hir deuys,
Above alle other for to haue a pris,
As 3e pat be of bewte spring and welle.
per-to in bownte sothly 3e excelle
Alle pat lyven, for no comparysown
Ne may be made; and of discrecioun
3e passen alle, as euery man may se.
And with al pis I fynde 3ow [vn-]to me
pe most goodly pat euers 3it was born,
With-out whom I were as now but lorn,
Of helpe and socour fully destitut,

2592 Jason declares he'll be true to Medea
2596 In life and death.
2599 For she's the most beauteous woman,
2600 like the rose above all other flowers,
2604 when the meads are carpeted with blooms.
2608 Nature has set her first;
2612 none may compare with her.
2620 to D 2, be to A.
2615. first at hir] at hir owne D 1.
2618. bownte] bewtee A.
2624. but lorn] forlorn D 1.
Ne were pat I founde in 3ow refute.
Fro whom al fredam to-me-ward dop abounde, [leaf 15c]
In so moche pat I am euer bounde
As ferforthe as my lyfe may streche, 
pat for your sake of deth I ne recche,
3if per-with-al I my3[c] 3ow agree,
pat to my helpe so goodly list to seen.
For 3if pat I of negligance schulde
Any þing refusen þat 3e wolde,
I my3t of resoun ful wel marked be,
And noted eke, of wilful nycete
So folily to voyde away my grace.
It were a rage a man from hym to chase
Welful Fortune, whan sche is benigne;
Wherfor as now hooły I * resigne
Herte, body, my life, and eke my deth
In-to y3ur hond, while me lasteth brethe,
With alle þe othes þat I afferme may,
For to perseuere to myn endyng day
3our trewe[ç] spouse, as I haue said and sworne,
And 3ou behested pleynly her-to-forne;
And her-vppon, euery þing obeie
þat may 3ou plese, til tyme þat I deye.
þis al and som; what schulde I lenger tarie?
From þis byheste I schal neuer varie.”
And whan sche sawe his grete stedfastnes,
Sche was suprised with so híye gladnes,
With so gret Ioye, pleynly in hir herte,
þat sche was voide of euery wo and smerte;
For he so lowly to hir luste obeyde.
And or sche went þus to hym sche seyde :
“Jason,” quod sche, “þan I schal ord eye
A mene weye þat we bothe twetyne
May efté ageyn at leyser mete sone,
For to parforme al pat is to done
In pis mater, liche to oure entent,
Wher schal be made a fynal sacrament
Of oure desyre, pat no man schal vnbynde,
Pour now pér-to we may * no leyser fynde.
Toward even, It schal me not eskape,
Trust me ry$t wel, a tyme for to schape,
Secrely pat we [may] mete y-fere;
For I schal sende a privy chaumberere
To 3ou of myn, whyche schal 3ou conveye
Vn-to my chambre by a privy weye,
A certeyn hour, with-outen any fable,
To oure entent pat be moste greable:
Vp-on pé point whan Phebus with his lîst
I-westrid is, and pé dirke ny3t
Hath with pé dyymes of his schadowes blake
Our Emysperie fully ouertake,
Pat ofte ùeueth by fauour of fortune
Vn-to louers a leyser oportune
For to parforme her lustis * and achewe.
And ri3t anoon, as it draweth to eve,
I schal for 3ow to my closet sende,
Of euery ping for to make an ende;
Wher as we schal at good leyser speke
Eueryche with òper, and our hertis breke,
And declare pé somme of al oure wille.
And whan we han spoken al our fille,
By good leyser, I fully 3ou behete,
We schal ordeyn whan so vs list to mete,
To sette a tyme, who-euer pat seye nay,
Alweye be ni3t, whan passed is pé day.
For my3ti Iove as wysly me socoure,
As hens-forthe I wil ben hoolly 3oure,
While Þat I live, wakyng and a-slepe,
3if it so be Þat 3e 3our hestis kepe.”
To whom Jason lowly gan tencline,

2664. may] schal C. 2665. me not] not me D 1.
2667. y-fere] in fere D 1. 2679. lustis] lustus C.
2695. new D 1—tencline] encline D 1.
Medea considers the Difficulties of her purpose. [BK. I]

Jason declares he'll be true
And said, "as far as man may ymagyne,
Or any wit may clerly comprehende,
I wil to you, to my lyves ende,
As a seruaunt feithfully me quyte;
And pouz pat I can nat seyn but lite,
My trewe herte herte wilnep neuer-lesse;
And pouz I can not paynt[e] nor compasse
No gay process, my souereyn hertis quene,
Til I be ded, trewly I schal mene;
Hath her my troupe whil I haue life & mynade,
As in pe ende trewly 3e schal fynde."
And of her speche an ende þus þei make.

They part, Medea goes
And Medea schope hir for to take
Hir leue anonges al þe pres,
First of hir fader and þan of Hercules,
And bod no lenger, but furwe-thi anoon
Vn-to hir chambr[e] sche is goon,
Where vp and down sche made many went,
Noon of hir meyne wetyng what sche ment,
Castynge weyes hir purpos to acheve,
And in hir wittes gan besely to meve,
As sche rometh in hir habitacle,
On any syde zif þer were obstacle
Or any lettyng, whiche wolde hir sore greue.
þis was hir studie til it drowe to eue,
Where I hir leue compleynynge in her wo,
With many a thouȝt, walkynge to and fro.
þe mydday hour is goon and ouerslide,
Titan so fast hath * in his char[e] ride,
þe dayes arke from est to west compassid,
His fery stedis han almost I-passed
Our orizonte, and drawe douȝt ful lowe
His golden wayn, þat no man myȝt[e] knowe
Where as he hidde his fyre * bemys briȝt,
In his discence ful fer out of oure * siȝt;

2704. I schal] shal I D 1.
2713. many] many a D 1.
2718. any] many A.
2723. new] O D 1.
2729. fyry] fyre C.
2730. discence] diffence D 1—oure] her C, om. A.
Of Medea's feelings while waiting for Jason.

And Herynes, with hir copis myrke,
pe heuung be-gonne for to dirke,
2732
In pe twyliȝt whan pe day gan fade;
And Esperus, with hir stremes glade,
2736
pat bene so fresche so lusty, and so mery,
Gan recounforte al our emesperie:
Whan Medea by hir sylf allone,
2740
Of híȝe deriȝe gan to make hir mone,
at sche so longe abood after hir knyȝt,
Alweye acountying þe houres of þe nyȝt,
2744
So ful of trouble and so ful of pouȝt,
Which hath ful streytly cerched out & souȝt
A redy weye vn-to hir purpos,
Al-be þat sche kept it in ful cloos
2748
Amyd hir herte, quapyng as a wawe
For drede and fere, til hope gan a-dawe,
2752
And bad sche schulde be riȝt mery and glad,
Til drede a-geyn-warde made hir sober & sad
Liste hir desire troubled were or let.
And þus sche was at a-bay I-set
2756
Amyd of hope and of drede also,
þat sche ne wyste what was best to do:
For híȝe desire and affecioun
·So sore brent in hir oppiniouw,
Of lust sche hadde to meten with Iason,
2760
And þer ageyn[ȝ]s drede cam in anoon,
And made hir ferful list sche were espied.
But al hir sorowe was holp and remedyed
Only by Fortune and þe dirke nyȝt,
2764
By whiche sche was made ful glad & liȝt.
For recounforted only with þise two,
And with good hope þat made hir glad also,
Sche gan anoon to casten and deuise,
Whanne þat þe mone on heuen wolde aryse,
Medea watches & waits, & at Midnight sends for Jason. [BK. 1]

Medea sees Medea sees And whanne þat sche, with hir hornys pale, Wolde schede hir liȝt vp-on hil and vale, Sché gan acounte and cast[e] wel þe tyme, And fonde a quarter was passid after pryme, 2768
As sché þat was wel knowyng in þat arte, And sawe in soth þat þe ferþe parte Of þe mone was schad with new[e] liȝt, And passed was in hir cours ful riȝt, 2772
After þe tyme of coniuncionioun, Thre signes ful by computacioun, And complete was seuen daies of hir age. 2767 [leaf 16 b]
the 7-day old moon shine, and peers about to see if any one is moving.

And whanne þat sche, with hir hornys pale, Wolde schede hir liȝt vp-on hil and vale, Sché gan acounte and cast[e] wel þe tyme, And fonde a quarter was passid after pryme,

2768
As sché þat was wel knowyng in þat arte, And sawe in soth þat þe ferþe parte Of þe mone was schad with new[e] liȝt,

And complete was seuen daies of hir age. 2776
At whiche tyme sche, bryȝmyng in hir rage, And þouȝ-darted with Cupides arowe,

2778
Gan to loke and beholde narwe At euery dore, and listen besily 3if any wyȝt þat sche myȝt espie

2780
Of al þe couerly þer walke or goo,

Or any man romyng to and froo,

So sore sche dradde, goyng vp and down,

Whan sche herde ouþer noyse or sown,

Or whan sche heryth wispring eny-where; It was venym sothly in hir ere:

Sche wisched al hadde ben a-bedde.

þis pitous life þe longe nyȝt sche ledde, With-out respit, þouȝ no wyȝt koude it knowe,

2788
Til hiȝe mydnyȝt þat þe cokkes crowe;

2792
At whiche tyme, w[h]an al was hust and stille, For to [a]complische þe remnaunt of hir wille, And euery-where maked was silence,

she calls an old dame, At midnight she calls an old dame,

Sche cleped anoon vn-to hir presence An aged vekke, fer in zeris ronne,

2767. tyme] mone D 1. 2768. pryme] soone D 1. 2767 and 2768 are repeated after 2768, as follows, in D 1:

And fonde a quarter was passed after prime,
She gan rekene & knewe wel þe tyme.

Jason is brought to Medea's room by her Messenger.

Jason is brought to Medea's room by her Messenger.

\[\begin{align*}
\text{Thrifty to bring a ping a-boute.} & \quad 2796 \\
\text{For } pei a-forme can casten euery doute;} & \\
\text{Of } pei passed olde experience} & \\
\text{Hath } pei to hem so passyng hise prudence,} & \\
\text{pat pei in loue alle } pei slei\text{tes knowe;} & \\
\text{And sche was made as dogge for } pei bowe. & \\
\text{To whom Medea discureth al hir } pou3t & \\
\text{From point to point, } \& \text{ for-gat ri\text{st nou}3t,} & 2804 \\
\text{And charged hir, in reles of hir smert,} & \\
\text{And recomfort of hir troubled hert,} & \\
\text{To hasten hir anoon vp-on hir weye} & \\
\text{Vn-to hir chambre Iason to conveye.} & 2808 \\
\text{And sche anon, not rekles in } pis cas,} & \\
\text{Is goon for hym a ful softe pas,} & \\
\text{As sche } pei \text{ was of newe nat to lere,} & \\
\text{And brou3t hym forth anoon as } pei \text{ schal here.} & 2812
\end{align*}\]

\[\text{Howe Medea sent for Iason to com to Here in pe night,} \]
\[\text{And howe he was sworn to wed here, aftire } pei \text{ lawe of his pany3m rite.}^{1}\]

\[\begin{align*}
\text{Whan } pei \text{ cok, comoun astrologer,} & \\
\text{pe mydny3t hour with his vois ful clere} & \quad \text{At midnight} \\
\text{Be-gan to sowne, and dide his besy peyne} & \\
\text{To bete his brest with his wyngys tweyne,} & 2816 \\
\text{And of } pei \text{ tyme a mynute wil not passe} & \\
\text{To warnen hem } pei \text{ weren } in } pei \text{ place} & \\
\text{Of } pei \text{ tydes and sesoun of } pei \text{ ny3t,} & \\
\text{Medea to awayte } \text{ vp-on hir kny3t} & 2820 \\
\text{Ful redy was } pei \text{ entre for to kepe,} & \\
\text{As sche } pei \text{ list ful litel for to slepe,} & \\
\text{For } pei \text{ ne was no parcel of hir } pou3t. & \\
\text{And whan Iason was to hir chambre brou3t,} & 2824
\end{align*}\]

2818. weren] ben C—pe] that A.  
2820. Medea] And Medea D 1—awayte] wayten C.  
2822. ful] om. A.  

1 Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 22 b.
Medea makes Jason swear to take her to Wife. [BK. I]

With-out espying of eny maner wist,

Jan sche anoon conveyeth hym ful ri3t
In-to hir closet, in al pe hast sche may,

Ful wel beseyn with gret and riche araye,

Where by hir side sche made hym take his se.
And first of alle, pis ilke lees of thre,

By hir pat was moste expert in pis cas,
Was sodeynly turned to a bras;

For pe vekke to stare vp-on pe mone
Is walked out, and [ha8] hem lefte allone.

And when Medea pe dores hadde schet,
Down by Iason anoon sche hath hir set.

But first I fynde, with al hir besy my3t,
Aboute pe chamber pat sche sette vp li3t.

Of grete torches and cyrges ful royal,
Aboute on pilers and on euery wal,

Whiche 3af a li3t, liche pe sonne schene.
And to a cheste, wrou^t of cristal clene,

First of al, sche taketh hir passage,
Out of pe wiche sche toke a rich * ymage

Of pured gold, ful lusty to beholde,

\[pat\] by custom of pis rytes olde

To my3ti Iove, eterne and increat,

I-halwed was, and also consecrat.

\[pe\] which ymage, deuoutly as sche ou3te,

With humble herte to Iason first sche brou3te,

And made hym lowly \[per-on\] take * his othe

Vn-to his haste, ouper for lefe or lothe,*

\[pat\] he hir schulde take vn-to his wife

Fro pat day forth duryng al his life,

With hert vnfeyned and feith inviolat,

And cherischen hir liche to hir estat.

For to pat tyme, I fynde how \[pat\] sche

Hadde euer floured in virginite;

And as myn auctor wel reherse can,
Ay kepte hir clene from touche of any man, 2860
In þouȝte and dede, and neuer dide amys:
For sche of herte so hool[y] 3ouen is
Vn-to Jason, and þat for euer-mo.
And he anoon hath put his honde þer-to, 2864 Jason swears
to marry Medea.
And sworne fully, as þe han herde me say,
Al hir requeste, with-oute more delay,
To kepen hem whil his life may laste.
But, o alas! how sone he ouer-caste 2868 But alas!
His heste, his feith, with whiche he was assured,
And hadde his fraude with flaterie y-cured
So courtly þat hir Innocence,
Hir trewe menyng and hir diligence, 2872 [leaf 10 d]
And al þat euer sche deuise can,
Desayved was by falshed of þis man!
And þouȝ þat trouthe was apparent above,
Doubilnes so slisly was in schoue, 2876 His false-
As þouȝ he hadde sothly ben allied
With trewe menyng, & so no þing espied
Vnder faire chore was feynyng & fallas.
For what myȝt sche ha wrouȝt more in þis cas,
þan for þi sake, septr[e] and regalye, 2880 What more
can, for so þe lordis eke of hir alye
For-soke attonyys, and toke of hem noon hede;
And of pite and verray goodlyhede 2884 She gave up
Loste hir frenedes and hir good[e] fame,
Only, Jason, to sauc þe fro schame!
And ȝit, more-ouere, forsoke hir heritage— 2888 she, so high-
Sch[e] þat was born of so hire parage,
And schulde haue ben by successioun 2888 she, so high-
Eyre by dissent of þat regioun.
But wommanly for sche wolde hir quite, 2892 born, and the
Of al y-fere sche sette nouȝt a myte,
But at oon hour al sche hath forsake,
And vn-to þe sche hath hir hooly take; 2892 she, so high-
Only for truste þou schulde[st] hane be kynde,
For Jason, Medea left riches and chose exile,
Riches and honour sche hath y-left by-hynde,
And ches in exil with þe for to goon,
From al hir kyn, þís cely maide allone.
Alas, I wepe for þín vnkyndenes!
What, hath sche nat fro deth and fro distresse
Preserued þe, and þít þou takest noon hede,
þat schust a deyed, nadde sche ben þin rede!
Of þi conqueste sche was þe verray cause!
þat I may nat, schortly in a clause,
Written hir bounte nor brefly comprehende,
Effectuelly performed to the ende,
At wordes fewe it may nat be tolde.

and won him the Fleece.
þóruȝ whom þou hast þe riche flees of golde
Manly conquered, whiche with-oute doute
Vnlîkly was the to haue brouȝt aboute;
For whan þou were of helpe destitut,
Sche was þi couȝfort and singuler refut.
And with al þís, þou maist it nat deneye,
Al erthly honour how sche gan defye
þe to conserve out of heuenes;
And hir fader sche hath of þis riches
So emporisched, þat pite is to here:
Be exavmple of whiche, wommen myȝt[e] lere
How þei schulde truste on any man.

Alas! why didn't she, by the stars, foreknow her destiny?
Alas! Medea, þat so moche can
Bothe of sterris and of astronomye!
þet sawe sche nat a-forn hir destenye:
Loue hadde hir put out of gouernaille,
þat al hir crafte ne miȝt her not availle.
Sche was to slowe by calculacioun
To cast a-forn the constellacions
Of hir birth, and hir woful fate;
For rekleshed sche sawe it al to late.
But I suppose hir konraynge was fallible;
For dout[e]les, me semeth nat credible,
þat ȝif sche hadde wist of it to-fore,
So pitously sche hadde nat be lore—
As 3e schal seen here-after hastily,
So as pe story reherseth by and by,
Howe it be-fel of Iason and Medee.
But first 3e schul pe ordre & maner* se
How sche wrouȝt after he was swore:
pe same nyȝt, alas, sche hathe forbore
Hir maidenhed, and þat was grete pite.
And ȝet sche ment nat but honeste;
As I suppose, sche wende haue ben his wyfe;
But touching þat, I holde as now no strife.
And ȝit o þing I dar asserme and seyne,
þat þe menyng of þis ilke tweyne
Ne was nat on, but wonder fer atwene;
For al þat sche treu[el]y gan mene,
Of honeste þinkyng noon outerage,
Liche a maide Innocent of age,
He to a-complische his fleschely fals delite
And to performe his foule appetite,
Wrouȝt euery þing to hir entent contrarie.
Allas, þat sche was so debonaire
For to trust vppon his curtesye,
Or to quite hir of hir genterie,
So hastely to rewe vp-on his smerte:
But wommen ben of so tender hert,
þat þei wil gladly of routhe* and pite,
Whan þat a man is in aduersite,
Sauen his life, rather þan he deye.
And so Medea, sohortly for to seye,
Castyng no pereil after þat schal falle,
His desyris and his lustis alle
Hooly obeyeth, with al hir ful[le] myȝt;
And þat so longe almost þat þe nyȝt
Hath his cours rounde aboute goon.
At whiche tyme to hir spake Jason,
Jason asks Medea to rise and tell him how to work so as to get the golden Fleece.

He promises to take him with her to Greece.

And lowly seide, “my lady, it is tyme pat we arise, for sone it wil be pryme:
3e may se wel pe day begynneth springe,
For we may here how pe briddes singe.

Preying to 3ow in al my best[e] wyse,
How I schal wyrke pat 3e list deuise,
And ceryously euery ping dispose,
I 3ow besche, O goodly fresche rose,

Myn emprise to bringen to an ende;
And paune at erst, hen[ne]s wil I wende—
Saue pat I pinke first with 3ou to trete
In what wyse pis contre 3e schal lete,
And in-to Grece repere ageyn with me,
Whiche is a londe of gret felicite.

For trusteth wel, & beth no ping in drede,
In-to pat regne with me I schal 3ou lede,
After my conquest, 3if so be pat I wynn,
Wherfore, I praye 3ou goodly to begynne,
How I schal werke, in al pe hast 3e may,
For in good feith anoon it wil be day.”

To whom sche spake, seying as 3e schal here:

Howe Medea declarede to Iason the vertue of here relikis, and deliuerde pem to Iasone.1

“Myn owne Iason, vn-to me more dere
3an is my silfe, as in conclusion,
I am assented, with ful affeccion
Of my wittes, and [al] myn hool[e] herte,
3ou to enforme how 3e schal asterte

Euery daunger of pe litel Ile,
3if it so be 3e list abide a while.”*

And vp sche ros, in al pe hast sche may,
And to a cofre where hir tresour ley
Sche went anoon, & brouzt him in her honde
A riche anoon, & broght him in her honde

2970. here] see D 1. 2975. 2nd to] at D 1.
2993. pe] this D 1. 2994. while] litel while C.

 BK. 1] Medea also gives Jason an Ointment, & an Agate Ring. 101

Whiche sothly was of merueillous entaille,
Whos power was and vertu to availle,
Effectueltly to her bothe entent,
Ageyn magyk and al enchant[e]ment,
And to with-sitte pe force of sorcerye.
For it was made be astronomye,
In houre chose* & equat for pe nonys,
By clerkis olde; for ful longe a-goon is,
Whilom whan þei were flouryng in her ages,
þat þei vsede to make suche ymages,
As dide þe kyng called Tholome.
And so to Iason commaunded hath Medee
To bere þis ymage on hym pryuely,
As þe han herd, to werche effectueltly
In euery þing, as sche dide assygne.
And þan sche toke to hym * a medecyne
Made in maner of an oyntement,
To enoynte hym with, þat he be nat brent,
þat was more riche & precious þan bame
Ageyn þe malis of euery fire and flame.
And after þat sche toke to hym anoon
A riche ring, where-in was sette a stoon
þat vertu hadde al venym to distroye,
þat on no syde it myȝt hym nat anoye.
þe whiche stoon hadde also þis myȝt,
þat zif a man coude it bere a-riȝt,
With-Inne his honde next þe skyn enclosed,
þe stregteþe of siȝt schulde be deposed
Of hem þat wolde gasen or biholde;
For who-so-euer in his hond hit holde,
By þe vertu þat was infallible,
þe story seith, he schulde be invisible.
þe whiche stoon wyse clerkis calle
Achates, moost vertuous of alle;
And it is founde sothly in Cecile.

3001. to] in D 1. 3005. chose] chose oute C, A.
3006. for] om. D 1—is] it is D 1.
3014. toke to hym] to hym toke C.
3024. it bere] bere it D 1. 3026. deposed] disponyd A.
Medea gives Jason a Glue to stick the Bulls' jaws. [BK. 1]

Medea also gives Jason
1. written directions

Of which stoon whilom wrot Virgile,
How pat Venus to Eneas it sent.
First whan [pat] he in-to Cartage went.
And after pis, sche to Jason toke,
A certeyn bille, written liche a boke,
pat to his Iornay myȝt[e] moche availle;
And bad hym wisly pat he nat ne faille,
3if he cast hym graciously to spede,
Firste of alle, pe scripture pat he rede,
Or he pe Ram touche in any wyse;
Hym chargyng eke, a-fore pis hire emprise,
With humble herte and deuocioun,
pat he knelyng seye pat orisoun,
pat vp and doune was written on pe bille,
Preying pe goddys lowly to fulfille
His request, and mercy for to haue,
Of verray pite from meschef hym to saine.
And after pat, for his chefe socour,
Sche toke to hym a viol with licour,
And bad hym manly with-cute fere or drede,
When he come vn-to pe boles rede,
3if he hym schape knyȝtely to eskape,
pat as faste as he seth hem gape,
In-to her goles pat he pe licour caste,
pan dar hym not but litel of hem gaste;
For her Iowes to-gidre it schal glewe,
pat on no syde pei schal not eschewe
Tobeye his luste in what hym list constreyne.
For, doubt[es], maugre al her peyne,
He schal hem so daunte & make * tame,
pat wher hym liste, in ernest or in game,
He myȝt hem make louten and encline,
And don hem bowe bope bak and chyne:
pe licour schal her chawlys so coharte,

3034. whilom wrot] wrote som tyme D 1.
3035. To Eneas howe] pat Venus it sente D 1.
3044. a-fore [pis] of his D 2.  3046. [pat] this D 1.
3047. om.] in A.  3054. vn-to] to D 2, D 1.
3055. to] for to D 1.  3057. caste] gaste D 1.
Jason takes leave of Medea, & prepares for his Quest. 103

And when sche hadde þus vn-to hir knyȝt In euery þing ȝone instrucciuon, Pleyn doctrine, and informacion 3072
How he schal skape þe daungeris by & by, 3if he tak hede and werke advisely, And þanne acorded, þei þouȝt[e] for þe beste For to parte, or men out of hir reste 3076
A-waked werne, for it drow to day, As þei wel seio by þe morwe graye. And list men hadde to hem suspicioiuon, Of hyȝe prudence and discrecioune, 3080
Atwen þe tweyliȝt and þe rody morwe þei[...] toke her leue, with seynt[e] Iohn to borwe, With ofte kyssyng, as louers whan þei twyne; And so he went, and sche [is] lefte with-Inne, 3084
Beyng in hope to mete ageyn som day. And Iason þanne, as faste as euere he may, Gan ordeyn hym his lorney to acheue, And þouȝt he wolde anon go take his leue. 3088
And in what wyse, withiν-in a litel while, After þe maner of my rude stile, Mi purpos is, sothly, and nat spare, With ȝour support pleynly to declare. 3092

Howe Iason requirede þe Kenge Cethes withoute delay
to graunt hym to do his Armes in vinqwesshinge, if he myght, þe Flees of golde wrought by Martis ordynance. 1

When Medea had given Jason full instructions,

When Medea had given Jason full instructions,

When Medea had given Jason full instructions,
I mene Aurora, pe whiche a-for pe sonne
Is wont tenchase pe blake skies donne,
And pe dirknes of pe dymme ny3t;
And fresche Phebus, with comfort of his li3t,
And the bri3tnes of his bemy schene,
Haddde ouer-gilt pe hige hilles grene;
And floures eke ageyn pe morwe-tyde
Vp-on her stalke gan splaie her levis wyde,
When pat Jason with al his companye
Toward pe kyng ful fast[e] gan hym hy3e.
Whom pat he fonde, liche to his estate,
With septer in hond, ful pompus and elate,
H3e in [pe] se of his regallie,
Sittyng ful kyngly amyd his chiualrie,
And his lordys abouten enviroun.
At whiche tyme pis 3ong[e] champiouw,
Vnder a vowe stondyng of pe Ram,
With sterne face to-fore pe kyng in cam,
Beseching hym of his magnificence
pe same day to graunten hym licence
To don his armys, and make no delais,
Concludyng playnly, pat at al assaies
He wil pat day in pe felde be founde
For to acheue, lyche as he was bounde
Of olde beheste, and nat a poynt declyne,
For lif nor deth, til he parforme and fyne
Hooly pe auntres, vn-to pe fles pat longe,
pe kyng requeryng no lenger hym prolonge,
But goodly graunt pe fyn of his emprise.
And panne pe kyng, in ful sobre wyse,
Consideryng pe somme of his demaunde,
To Jason spak and seide * he schal comande
bat his requeste performede be in haste—
“Al-be,” quod he, “I am ful sore a-gaste,
Of wilfulnes pou schust distroied be,
List men pi deth arretten vn-to me,
And *per-vppon* wolde a blame sette,
Of royal power *pat* I nat ne lette
*bi* manly *southe* from swiche iuapartie;
Whiche were in soth a gret vilonye
And *preiudise* to myn estat and name,
*pat* afterwarde men putte me in blame
*boru3 false reporte & wrong oppinioun,*
*pat* I withstod not *pi* destruccion.
Wherefore, I rede *3it* *pou* be avised,
And my *counsel* lat *nat* be dispised;
For bet it is, *with* honour in certeyn
In-to *pi* contre to repeire ageyn,
*than* wilfully for to take on honde
A mortal *ping* *pat* no man may *with-stande.*
*bi* is my rede, and fully myn avis,
Take *hede* *per-to,* sith [*pat* *pou* art wys,
List *pou* repente whan it is to late;
And *ziif so be pat* *pou* wilt aylate
*bi* purpos holde, and *nat don as I rede,*
*Almy3ti Mars I pray[e] pe to spede,*
*be* for to guye, *what-so-euer* falle;
And eke I pray to *pe* *goddis alle,*
Saffe and sounde *bi* body to restore—
*bi* al and som, of me *pou* gest no more."
And whan *Iason* had[de] herde *pe* kyng,
*Nat dismaied nor stonyed in no ping,*
In kny†ly wise *dide* hym reuercene,
*bankaung hy3ly* his royal excellence,
*bat* of his grace and benignite
Vp-on his deth hym list to haue pite;
*Fully concludyng,* touching his bataille,
*bat noupher red nor counsel may anayle,*
In no wyse his purpos to withdraw;
But *liche* *pe* statute, pleynly, *&* *pe* lawe,
Rigt as ferforth as Fortune wil hym Ewre,
What *so be-tide* of his aventure,
Seityng a-side euery feere and drede,
Seide platly *bat* he wil procede

3144. lat] let it D 1. 3150. sith *pat] sijen D 1.
3158. new *&* D 1. 3160. no *ping] om. A.
106 Jason is alone responsible, & will go on with his Quest. [BK. I

Jason also says,

The task he'd undertaken, For to parforme that he hath undertaken—

It wer in ydel mo skeles for to make,

Or to allege more pery or ageyn.

And Jason pan, ful opunly and pleyyn,

Touching pe surplus of pis dredful ping,

At his departyng seid[e] to pe kyng,

In audience of his lordis alle:

“What-so-euer of me now be-falle,

Or who-so-euer of malis pery or mvse,

To alle pe worlde, first, I 3ow excuse,

And to pe goddis platly 3ow to quite,

Thoug I deye, 3e be no ping to wyte,

Ne no man schal [a]rette it 3ow of skele;

For pis I wirke is frely at my wille,

Ageyn pe avise of 3our hyse prudence,

And lif and deth, here in 3our presence,

Holy of herte, and neuer for to flitte,

To pe goddys and Fortune I committe,

So as hem list for me to ordeyne,

Ageyns whos wille I schal neuer pleyne,

Nor hem nor 3ou putten in no blame

What so betide, honour, Ioy, or schame,

And of pis ping 3us an ende I make,

And for pis tyme of 3ou my leue I take,

And of all tho pat aboute 3ou stonde.”

And on by on he toke hem by pe honde.

And [in] what wise forthe he gan hym dresse,

To 3ou anoon I pinke to expresse.

Howe Jason, aftire his leve take of pe Kenge, enterde pe Ille of pe golden Flees.1

\[\text{W}han Titan had, with his fervent hete,\]

\[
\text{Draw up pe dewe from pe levis wete,}\]

3178. tjoin to D 1. 3180. of me now] nowe of me D 1. 
3196. of 3ou my leue] my leue of 3ow D 2. 
3197. aboute 3ou] yow a bowte A, 3ow a boute D 2. 
3201. Whan] Whan that A. 
3202. levis wete] om. excepting two letters, “ve” A.  
1 Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 24 b.
Toward myd morwe, as I can diffyne, 
Vpon pe hour whan pe cloke is nyne, 
Jason ful manly and ful lyke a kny)t, 
Armed in steel, of chere ful glad & lyjt, 
Gan dresse him forth, what hap pat euer falle, 
And seide adieu vn-to his feris alle, 
He in pe bot and pei vp-on pe stronde. 
And al alone, when he cam to londe, 
And in pe water had his vessel lafte, 
He first of al remembring on je crafte 
Of Medea, with al pe circumstaunces, 
And how he schulde kepe his obseruaunces 
In euery ping, and had it wel in mynde— 
And peanne anoon ful manly, as I fynde, 
He schope him forpe & wente a knyjlty pas 
Toward pe bolis, pat forged * wer of bras. 
But at pe point whan he his Iorne gan, 
For hym Medea wexe ful pale & wan, 
So sore agast pat no ping myjt hir glade— 
A routh it was to se wat wo sche made:
For pe teris on hir chekis tweyne, 
Ful pitously don distille and reyne, 
pat al for-dewed wern hir wedis blake. 
And ay pis sorwe sche made for his sake, 
Liche a womman ferful and in doute, 
While he his armys ful manly brou)t aboute. 
To sobbe & sye * sche can not ben in pees, 
List he for hast were ou)t rek[c]les, 
From point to point to don liche as sche bad.* 
pis was pe life pat sche for hym hath lad. 
And for to seen how he schulde hym defende, 
Sche gan anoon by greces to ascende, 
Of a tour in-to a h3e pynacle,

Next day, at 9 a.m., Jason, arm'd in steel, takes boat, lands,

[leaf 18 c] and goes towards the Brazen Bulls.

and goes up to a pinnacle,
Medea prays for Jason. The Ointment saves him.

Medea prays for Jason.

Where she can see Jason.

Wher * as sche myʒt haue noon obstacle,
Nor lettyng nouther, for to han a siʒte
Of hym þat was hir owne chose knyʒte.
And euer among with wordis out sche brak,
And stowademel þus to hir silf sche spake:
"O þou Jason, my soureyn hertis helo,
3if þou knewe what wo for þe I fele,
Sothly, I trowe, it schulde þe nat asterte
For to be trewe with al þin hool[e] herte,
And God, I praye, þis Tourne at þe lest
May þis tyme tornen for þe * beste,
And kepe þe sauf & sounde in ever y membre,
And 3if þe myʒt fulli to remembre,
As I þe tauȝt, and in þe same forme,
Euery þing fully to parforme,
Only þis day þin honour to avauwce,
Whiche for to sen wer al myn hool plesance:
For certis,* Jason, 3if þe fil ouȝt amys,
Fare-wel myn helpe & al my worldly blis,
And fare-wel þame my myrthe & my solace,*
And my welfare, my fortune, and my grace,*
And al attonys, myn hertly sufficiance!
"Lo, þis for him was hir gouernaunce,
From þe tyme þat he þe lond hath nome.
And first of al, whan þat he was come
Where as þe bolis, fel and dispitous,
Out caste her fire & flawme furious
At her mowpe, wonder large and huge,
Ageyn [þe] whiche, for his chefe refuge,
Hym to saue þat he wer nat brent,
He was enoynt with an oignement
On his body, þat kepte hym fro damage
Of þilke fire, þat was so ful of rage,

3236. Wher] per C.
3240. þus to hir silf] to hir silf þus D 1.
3242. for þe I] I for þe D 1.
3243. þe nat asterte] not fro þe sterte D 1.
3246. þi] þi C. 3253. certis] certeyn C.
3255, 56 are transposed in C.
3258. for him was] was for hym A. 3264. his] þe D 1.
And þe smokys, dirke and ful horrible, Whiche to eskape was almost impossible For any man, of what estat he be, With-out comfort and conseil of Medee—

By whos doctrine Jason can so wirke, þat he is skapid from þe mystis dirke Of þe fire with his blases blake, þat al þe eyre so cloudy dide make.

Sche had hym made so discrete & sage, Only by vertu of þilke ymage, Which þat he aboute his nek[ke] bare, Wher-by he was so prudent & so war, þat whan þe bolis han most fersly gaping, He hath her malis avisely eskapid.

For thenfeccioun of hir troubled eyr He hath venquesched & was in no dispeire; For in effecte, ageyn þe foule fyme, þat wolde a man vn-to þe deth consyme, þe ymage was a preseruatif, Hym to defende and to saue his life.

And more surly to kepe hym oute of drede, Ful ofte sythe þe writ he dide rede; For þe vertu of þat orisoun Was vn-to hym ful proteccioun, þat he nat fil in-to no distresse.

And after þat, for more sikernesse, Hym to preserue in þis mortal caas, He toke þe licour þat in þe viol was, And þer-with-æl, ful like a manly man, Al attonis, he to þe bolys ran, And for-gat nat so warly it to caste; And þer-with-al her chaules wer madeaste, And by þe vertu so my43tely englewed, þat he þer-foruþ hath utterly eschewed þenfeccioun of þe smoky leuene.

And when he eyr gan cleryn, & he heuene, 3304
And he mystis wern waftid hym to-forn,
With manly hert he rau²[t[e] by he horn
he sterne bolis, and by violence
He drowe hem forpe, in whom was no diffence, 3308
And 3oeketh hem, so as he maner was,
And with he plowe he made hem gon a pas,
Nowe vp, nowe doun, and to ere he lond.
And at his lust so buxvm he hem fonde, 3312
bat he soil, smope, bare, and pleyn,
bei maked han redy to bere greyn,
And on rengis it torned vp-so-dovn:
For fo in hem was no rebellion,
But humble and meke & redy at his wille,
Alle his desires pleynty to fullfille.
And Jason þanne, liche a champioūn,
Gan hym enhaste * towards þe dragoun,
þat was a beste gret and monstruous,
Foule and horrible & rjit venymous,
And was enarmed in skalis large and pikke,
Of whom þe brethe more perillous and wikke 3324
Was þan þe eyr of any pestelence;
For his venym was of swiche violence,
þat it was ful dedly and mortal.
And at his prote þer issed oute with-al 3328
A flawme of fire, as of a fournes mouthe,
Or liche þe leuene þat down by þe southe
Out of þe est is wont in tempest smyte:
Rjit so þe dragoun, sothly for to write,
Out of his mouthe had a flawme blasid,
Wher-of Jason first a litel masid *
Was in his hert of þat dreadful þing,
But whan þat he remembred on his ring,
Al fer and drede was leide a-synde & goon;
For in þat ring þe[r] was sette a stoyn,
The wonderful working of Medea's Agate Ring.

The Agate

Ful riche and noble and rìst vertuous,
Þe whiche, as techith * gret Ysydorus,
And * myn auctor also, as I fynde,
Most comovnly cometh out of Ynde,
And mot be kepte chast & wonder clene,
And of colour surnounteth euer grene.
Whos vertu is al venyn to distroye,
And to withstande þat it may nat [a]noye,
Of dragons, serpent, adder & of snake.
And specially, if þat it be take
And yholden in þe opposyt
Of any werm, even ageyn þe syzt,
With-oute abood, in sothe, he may not chese,
Of his venym þe force he most[e] lese,
How strong it be or violent of rage.
But to þe stoon it doth ful gret damage;
For whan he hath his vertu don, as blyue
On pecis smale it gynnyth al to rive,
And in it silf hool a-bit no while.
For in þe londe þat called is Cecyle,
Þer is a worme þat Bufo bereth þe name;
And whan men wil of malis make him tame,
And his venym outerly represse,
Þei take a squille, myn auctor bereth witnes,
Whan þei wil wirke, or a large canne,
And in þe ende þis * ston þei sette þanpe,
And lyne rìst a-geyn þe wormes hed
þei holden it, til þat he be ded.
For þat is sothly his vertu of nature,
Þat no venym may lasten nor endure
In þe presence of þis rich[e] stoon.
And as I fynde, þis Bufo rìst a-noon,

3340. þe] Of A—techith] teched C—gret] the gret D 2, þe
gret D 1.
3347. adder] of adder A, D 2, D 1.
3349. opposyt] opene sït D 1.
3355. his vertu don] done his vertue D 1.
3358. þe] this D 1.
3360. tame] take D 2.
3364. þis] þe C, D 1.
3365. a-geyn] agens D 1.
3366. he] it D 1.
3367. of] and D 1.
The Goddess Nature has given this power to the Agate.

And by it, Jason conquers the Dragon,

The Goddess Nature has given this power to the Agate.

And by it, Jason conquers the Dragon,

And so Jason, by vertu of pis ring,

And so Jason, by vertu of pis ring,

And porus his ston, pat myzt him most auaunce,

And porus his ston, pat myzt him most auaunce,

Hath with his swerd spent on him many [a] stroke,

Hath with his swerd spent on him many [a] stroke,

And leied on him as men hewe on an oke—

And leied on him as men hewe on an oke—

His briæt[e] squamys wern so harde & dure,

His briæt[e] squamys wern so harde & dure,

pat wel onethe he ne myzt endure

pat wel onethe he ne myzt endure

Hym to dismember & smyten of his hed.

Hym to dismember & smyten of his hed.

And pan anoon, in pe stede of sed,

And pan anoon, in pe stede of sed,

He gan his teth out of his hed arrace,

He gan his teth out of his hed arrace,

And riȝt forpe-with, in pe silfe place,

And riȝt forpe-with, in pe silfe place,

He gan hem swee, liche as men do corn,

He gan hem swee, liche as men do corn,

Vp-on pe lond pat ered was a-forn.

Vp-on pe lond pat ered was a-forn.

Of whiche sede pe sprang a wonder greyn,

Of whiche sede pe sprang a wonder greyn,

Briȝt armed knyȝtes stondyng on pe pleyn,

Briȝt armed knyȝtes stondyng on pe pleyn,

pe whiche anon, with scharp[e] swerdis grounde,

pe whiche anon, with scharp[e] swerdis grounde,

Eueryche gan oþer for to hurte and wounde,

Everyche gan oþer for to hurte and wounde,

Til eche his felawe hath cruelly y-slawe:

Til eche his felawe hath cruelly y-slawe:

pis of hir fate was pe fynal lawe,

pis of hir fate was pe fynal lawe,

3371. on tweyne] a tweyne A, atweyne D 2, atweine D 1.

3375. herbe gras] gras herbe D 1.

3379. hir] his A.


3395. arrace] race D 1. 3398. ered was] was ered D 1.


3403. y-slawe] slawe D 1.
Jason slays the Ram, and shears its Golden Fleece.

Jason then goes to the Ram,

And after this, Jason gan to wende
The Ram with all his diligence,
In whiche he fonde no power nor diffence,
No maner strife nor rebellion,
And my3tely the Ram he draweth down,
And sette on hond [vp-]on euery horn,
And slowe it first, and that he hath it schorn
Out of his flees of gold so passyng riche,
That in his world ther was no tresour liche.
And after that he made no delay
To take his bote in al that he may,
And roweth forthie in-to that other yle,
Wher Hercules, al that mene while,
Vp-on that brinke, with many another mo,
Abod Jason til he hadde do.
And euerychon I fynde that as blive,
Only for Ioye whan he dide aryve,
That gan to panke to her goddes alle,
So graciously that it hath y-falle,
And that thees he hath so kny3tly wonne,
That schon as clere as that somer sonne,
Whiche that he hrou^t with hym vn-to londe,
His feris alle abyding on that stronde.

Howe, aftire his conquiste, Jason was ressaunide of
Kenge Cethes with feynide chere into his Cyte.

And whan Appollo of his daies arke
Had in the west almost ronne his marke,
And fast[e] gan downward to declyne,
And on that wawes ful watery gan to schyne;
Yet or he was passed the Occian,
King Cethes, tho' sorry for Jason's success, pretends joy.

114

Jason is comm with many a manly man
Of his feris to the presence of the kyng,
As he that had ached every ping
Whiche that longeth to conquest of the Ram.
And Cethes pan, as sone as ever he cam,
To make hym chere outward hap him payned,
Al-be in herte that it was but feyned;
For he was sor, with-outen any drede,
Of the explyt and the good spede
Of this Jason, that he flees hath wonne.
But liche in soth as these feyners come,
Whan that hem list craftely compace
To schewe outward a feithful trewe face,
And that venym enclosed hool with-Inne,
As in menyng þere wer no maner synne,
Risst so þe kyng with looke & forhed clere
Made vn-to Jason outward risst good chere,
And gan to hym speke in wordis fewe,
Of frendlyhed many signes schewe,
As þei he had his conquiste euerydel
From point to point liked wonder wel,
And ben ful glad þat he was so fortuned,
Vn-to þe ende þat he hath cuntuned,
And reioiseth in speche and countenaunce,
That Fortune list hym so avaunce,
And to his paleis gan goodly hym conveye,
And day be day ful richely festeye—
Al-be þat it was no ping do of* herte.
For þis no lees, he felt[e] ful gret smerte,
Þat of his tresour he was dispoiled so,
And þat he hath þe riche flees for-go
To his damage and confusioun.
And þus þer was a grete diuisiou
A-twexe his chere and menyng of his pouzt,
As it fareth ofte Þif it be wel souzt,
Þat many man, in menyng fals and double,
Can with þe calme curen so þe trouble  
Of higþ malis hid in his desire,  
And rake falsly þe wikked couert fire,  
Ful hoot[e] brennyng inward of envye.  
So wel wer him þat coude hem oute espie,  
And knewe her menyng false & fraudelent,  
Wer-þorúþ, alas, ful many an Innocent  
Deseyved is, þat wote not what þei mene;  
And namly swiche þat nat but trouþe wene;  
And euery chere þat men to hem make,  
Of Innocence for þe beste take,  
And in no wise þenke nouȝt but wel:  
Riȝt so certeyn þis Jason euerydel  
Hath take in gre what þe kyng hath wrouȝt,  
Not aduertyng þe grucching of his pousȝt;  
For dout[es] it sat þe kyng ful sore,  
þat he þe Ram hath lost for euere-more.  
But whan þat he hath outterly yseyn,  
þouȝ he gruche, þat þer was no geyn,  
But finally, of necessite,  
At þat tyme it myȝt noon other be,  
And pleynly sawe þat he may* not chese,  
But þat algate þe flees he mot[es] lese,  
Wheȝer it were þat he were lefe or lothe,  
He feyneth chere, as he wer not wrothe;  
For only he, of his gentilnes,  
No signe outward of gruching dide expresse,  
But day be day of verray curtesye  
He cherith Jason and his companye.  
At whiche tyme, abouten environ  
From euery party of his regioun,  
þe peple cam to staren and to gase  
Vp-on þe Ram, as it were a mase;  
þe ioke & wondre & deme what hem liste,  
Many folk cover their malice with pretence,  
and deceire the innocent.  
But Jason takes Cethes's kindness as genuine;  
and since Cethes can't help the loss of the Fleece,  
he treats Jason and his friends cheerly.  
People come to look at the Ram.
Folk’s unstableness. Medea tells Jason to come to her. [BK. 1

On whos domys is but litel triste:
þey ofte varie and torne to and fro,
þat, who þat wisely taketh hede per-to,
þe comoun peple chaungeth as a phane,
To-day þei wexe and to-morwe wane,
As doth þe mone, þei be so flaskysable,
Who trusteth hem schal fynd hem ful vnstable.
For somme wer glad þat Iason hath sped wel,
And some sory, and like it neuer a del,
And somme seide þei wonder how he my3t
Ageyn þe dragoun or þe bolis fijt,
Or how þat he ageyn þe force of Marte
Out of þe yle alyue my3t[e] parte.
A-nother seide þat parauenture
By crafte was wrouht þis discomfeture,
Outher by charme or som sorserye :
þus sche of hem after her fantasie
Gan deme of hym al þe longe day.
But at þe last, makeyng no delay,
Ful glad and liȝt Medea doun descendeth
From hir chambe, & outwarde pretendeth
Sadnes of chere, as sche no þing ne knewe.
Men koude nat conseyme* by hir hewe
Hir secre menyng, for sche so wommanly
Demened hir, and so prudently,
þat sche avoyded by discrecioun
Al fantaysye and suspicioun,
þat no man koude of hir wirkyng deme
No þing but wel; for as it dide seme,
By port & chere þer was no cause why.
And so by processe sche drowe hir prinuely
Toward Iason, for sche was not to lere,
And secrecy bad hym in hys ere,
In al wyse þat he not ne leue
To hir chambe for to come at eue;
For maters þei hadde for to trete,

3508. þat] so D 2.
3510. wane] þei wane D 1. 3512. ful] om. A.
3521. or] or by D 1. 3522. her] his D 1.
3528. conseyme] perseyue C. 3532. and] and al D 1.
Jason and Medea spend the night together. 117

Whiche he schal know at leiser whan pei mete. 3544
And so anoon, whan entred was pe niȝt, At night
Sool by hym silfe, with-oute torche or liȝt, 3544 Jason goes
to Medes,
To Medea he hath pe weye take, 3548
And sche abood slepes for his sake,
Wonder deuoutly desyryng, as I gesse, 3552
With hym to trete of som holynes,
Touching maters of contemplacioun; who wisht to
For sche was smete with a deuocioun 3556
Of fresche Venus to holden a memorie
With hym allone in hir oratorie—
Not openly as ypocrites preye
In durers angles Ioynyng on pe weye,
Of pe peple [for] to be comendid;
But pei not so han pe nyȝt dispendid .
For veynglorie nor noon ydel laude,
But by hem silfe, pinkyng on no fraude,
Secrely þis ilke twyne allone,
With-oute liȝt ouer of sonne or mone, 3560
þe long[e] nyȝt han lad with-oute reste :
For as hem þouȝt it was not for þe beste
To speke of slepe til þat it was prime,
For þei hem cast to lose as þo* no tyme.
And þus þe nyȝt to-gidre þei dispende,
þat I am dul for to comprehende
þe observaunce of swiche religious,
Prolix in werkyng & not compendious—
Demeth þour silfe, þe gete no more of me,
For wel þe wote, in euery faculte
Who hath knowyng and experience,
Men wil to hym rapest þif credence. 3572
Wherfore I seie, þe þat be wyse and can,
Axeþ not me, whiche am so rude a man,
To deme a þing, & namly whan þat it

3544. or] om. D 1. 3545. take] y take D 2, D 1.
3546. aboode] aloone D 1. 3554. Ioynyng] goynge A.
3557. nor] or D 2, ne for D 1—ydel] othir A.
3563. was] were D 1. 3564. to lose as þo* as þo to lose C.
3567. observaunces] observaunces D 2, observaunces A.
3570. wote] wite D 2, wete D 1. 3571. knowyng] knowlache A.
Passyth my knowyng also and my witte; 3576
For-dullid is myn ymagynatif,
To deme in practik or in speculatif,
Where-fore I passe and late it ouer slyde,
And forbe I pink, 3if 3e list abide, 3580
Pleylyn tellen of Iason and Medee.
pe whiche acored and assented be,
bat sche with hym schal in-to Grece wende
Whan pat he goth, schortly pis pe ende,
Vnwist hir fader & euery other wy3t
Saue he allone, pat hath his troupe pli3t
For to be trewe, hope in wele and wo,
Vn-to his laste, to hir and to no mo. 3588

Howe Iason stalle away by nyght withe Medea and
here Faderes tresure & Richees.1

And when Iason after his Iourne,
Ful richely, liche to his degre,
Refresched was in Colchos of pe kynge
With al pat myst[e] ben to his likyng,* 3592
And a moneth passed was and goon,
He with his Grekys assented in-to oon,
Purposed hath, schortly 3if he my3t,
With Medea to stele a-weye be ny3t, 3596
With moche tresour and pe riche flees,
And ful acorde also of Hercules.
But o Medea! þou hastest al to faste,
þou wer to slowe wysly for to caste 3600
What schulde falle, whan þou þi Iourne toke!
For how þat he in meschef þe forsok3e,
And how þat he was false and eke vnkynde,
For alle his othes to þe, as I fynde, 3604

3577. For-dullid] For dulle it D 1.
3581. tellen] to telle D 1.
3590. liche to] aftir D 1. 3592. likyng] plesyng C.
3598. acorde] accorded D 1.
3603. was false and eke vnkynde] in meschef þe forsok3e D 1 (the correct reading apparently erased).
3604. marked b D 1—his] þe D 1.
1 Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 26 a.
And how put thou, bothe at eve and morwe,
pi fatal chaunce* and pi pitous sorowe
By-weptist after, & gan pi silf to rende,
Til deth of al made a woful ende—
It wer but veyn to makyn rehersaille;
I wote no pat it myst availle,
Nor how Iason vakynde for pe nonys,
Resseived hath penam tallionis
Of pe goddis for his disnaturesse;
For he in meschef and in wretchednesse
Made eke an ende poru3 pe cruel hate
Of fel[le] Mars: lo here pe mortal fate
Of pis tweyn pat made her ende so!
But as I trowe, liche as write Guydo,
For her gynnyng was nat vertuous,
An ende folweth ful contagious.
Alas! pei hadde take hedde a-forne,
plan had pei nat in meschef ben so lorne.
But who wil not a-forn his meschef se,
May not eschewe to haue aduersite
In pe ende, platly to devyne;
For euene liche as a medicine
Availeth nat, when pe seke is ded:
For what may helpen pe stomak or pe hed
Letuarie, emplastre, or pocioun,
Or any receyt or confeccioun,
Herbe or stoon, or al pat leches knowe,
Whan pat pe* cors is leied in erpe lowe,
Or whan a beest is torned to carein!*
Myn auctor seip, pat it is but veyn,
For his recure, vp-on any halve,
To his ere for to leyn a salve:
For verrailly, after his fantasey,
It helpeth nat, nor doth no remedie;

Why didn’t Medea forecast her death, and the Gods’ revenge on Jason?

It was, as Guido says, because she began badly.

What’s the good of medicine to a corpse?

It’s no use putting a salve on carrion.
Medea sails from Colchos with Jason and his men.

For ping parformed in his due date
More vertu hap pan whan it commep late.

Those who won't look out for danger,
Ri3t so in cas, verrailly semblable,
Of worldly trust, fals & ful mutable,
Who cast no pereil til pat it be-falle,
In-stede of sugre ofte * tasteth galle :

and disregard the future,
Blendid with lust, whiche pat is present,
Of pe future slouth and necligent
Pat hem ne liste a-fern no * meschef caste,

get caught in the snare,
Til in pe snare pei ben englued faste ;
For to provide pei ben graceles,
Ful vnprudent and wilful rek[e]les,

like Medea and Jason,
To caste pereil or pat it be-tythe :
Pei swe her luste, her reson goth a-syde,
As it be-fil whilom of pis two,

tho' she was most harmed.
Of Medea and [of] Iason also.
But how-so-euer of Iason pat it be,
I fynde pleynly pe * harme allone had sche, [leaf 20d] 3656
Pe grete damage and pe final smerte,
For lak of wisdam pat sche solde aduerte
What schul[de] falle, whaz sche her Iowne toke,

She acted wilfully,
And hir fadir folily forsoke ;
But sith sche wrou^t only of wilfulnes,
With-oute conseil or avysenes,
Me list no more hir harmes to be-wayle,
For lite or nou^t it my^t[e] now avayle.

and chose a luckless time.
Late hir allone complayne hir damage :
For wel I wote touching hir passage,
It was not take in good plite of pe mone,

She takes ship with Jason.
Of hastines sche began to sone,
Chesyng an hour pat was nat fortunat ;
For sche allone of frendys desolat
Colchos forsoke, and is to schyp[pe] goon ;
And in al haste be byddyng of Iason,
Hercules and al his companye,
Jason soon forsakes Medea. She slays her Sons, & dies.

That with him com oute of Thesalye,
With-oute tarynge, at onys at a worde,
I-entred ben with-Inne [pe] schippes borde,
Only for cause that he wynd was good
And euery ping at her lust tho stood.
And so be assent, pei stele a-vey be ny3t
With al pe tresour pat pei cache my3t,
And with hem had plente of vitaille;
By many coste & many sondry Ile,
Toward[es] Greece; and al pis mene while
Was Medea glad and of good chere,
Sche and Jason sittiyn bothe I-fere.
And Hercules, of verray gentilnes,
Hir to comfort dide his besynes,
Al feyni[n]gly, for pe maner sake,
As pis louerys ful queynt can it make,
Til pei han had hooly her plesauace;
Her lust fulfilled, fan entrep variaunce,
As it was preved by Jason outerly,
That hathe for-sake ful vnkyndely
Pis Medea, in peyey, sorwe, and wo.
Of hir Guydo writ no wordis mo,
Ne maketh of hir non other mencion,
By-cause, I trow in myn opiniov,
Pat hir sorwes, ende and euerydel,
Rehersed ben ful openly and wel
Methamorphoseos, & wryte per ful pleyn:
Wher as Naso recordeth in certeyn
Hir deth nat only, nor hir heuynes,
But parcel eke of pe vnkyndenes
Of pis Iason, and telleth pleynli how
Medea hir bothe sonyis slowe,
For pei wer like her fader of visage;
And telleth eke, pat put hir moste in rage,
How King Peleus received Jason deceitfully.  

Jason, forsaking Medea, loves Creusa.

How falsely he, I can hym not excuse,
Loued another pat called was Ceruse;
Eke in his pistles, who so taketh hede,
Hir dedly sorwe he may beholde & rede,
And how pat sche hir troupe abouzt[e] sore.

Of Medea 3e gete of me no more
In al pis boke, nor of hir aventure.
But I wil now do my besy cure
Hooily to turne my stile to Iason,
And of pe were he made on Lamedoun,
Liche as in Guydo is openly discrived,
After pat he in Grece was arived.

Howe Kenge Pellee ressavide Iason with faire visage,
but inwardly he was full woo of his gode spede in Calchos. And howe Iason requires his vnkele for a navye to destroy pe Cyte of Troy.

First whan Iason & Hercules also
I-londed werne, with many anoper mo,
In pe regne and lond of Thesalye,
Kyng Pelleus, with al his cheualr[i]e,
Caste hym pleynly pat he wil nat faille
To mete his nevew at his arivaille.
And whan pei mette, in contenaunce & chere,
Made it outward as hool & as entere
As he had hadde souereyn[ly] gladnes
Of his kny3thood & his hy3e prowes,
Of his renoun and his manlyhede,
Of his exspleyt and his good[e] spede,
And pat Fortune to encrease his name
Hap causid hym, with so noble a fame,
Out of Colchos with honour to repaire—
Al-be his chere was outerly contrarve
To his entent, pat euer he cam ageyn.

3709. hym not] nat hym A. 3719. is openly] openly is D 1.
3723. regne and lond] londe and regne D 1.
3725. wil] wolde A. 3732. 2nd his] of his D 2.

1 Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 26 d.
But for al that, with face hool and pleyn,
He welcomed hym, al ageynes herte,
Ful sore astonyed that he euer a-sterte
The aventure of Colchos perillous,
And is retourned so victorious.
But couertly his tresouz for to hyde,
Al delay he gan to sette a-syde,
And to Jason with chere ful benigne,
His heritage first he gan resigne,
Septre & crowne & kengdam at pe lest,
For to parforme pe somme of his beheste,
Liche as he was assured by his bonde.
And Jason toke al in-to his honde,
And gan his vncele in ful lowe maner
First to panke, with al his herte entere,
And after that ful knyȝtly gan hym preye
Goodly to here what that he wil seie
Of a mater that fret his herte sore,
From day to day encresyng euer more—
Besechyng hym to graunte hym audience
Touching a wrong and a violence
Don vn-to hym, when he non harm [ne] mente,
In Troy[e] lond to Colchos as he went:
"His [is] to seyn, pe kyng of Troy[e] tovn,
With-in pe boundis of his regioun,
When I and myne in gret aduersite,
With wynd and wedir fordriven in pe see,
Vs to refresche to londe dide arive,
Not in purpos with hym for to strive,
But for to reste vs after al oure wo
A litel while, and forthe anoon to go;
For we in sope no maner harm ne pouȝt:
But he vnkyngly of verray malys souȝt
Ageyn[e]s vs firste occasioun,
Byddynge in haste to voyde his regioun,
Not-withstondynge that we com in pes,

3754. wil wolde A.
3759. vn-to] to D 1.
3760. to] In to A. 3770. vnkyngly] vnkindly D 1.
3771. firste] first greet D 1.
Jason and Hercules

Liche as my brober knoweth, Hercules,
Vn-to no wy3t doyng no distresse.
Wherefore, we praye to 3oure hy3e noblesse,
To 3oure purpos for to condescende,
of whiche platly pis pe fynal ende:

want to ruin

the King of Troy, and

pat we be sette, in ful conclusioun,
Holy to werke to his distruccioun,
Liche owre avov, whan we pen[ne]s went—
3if so be 3e goodly list assent—
And al attonys, strongly and not spare,
Maugrey his * my3t to Troye for to fare,
So pat we may fynde in 3ow fauour

ask Peleus

for money

Vs to refresche with golde and with tresour,
And only eke, of 3our curtesye,

and men.

Vs strenthe also with 3our cheualrie."

King Peleus is willing,

And Pelleus, with-oute more abode,
Anoon as he pis mater vnderstode,
Assented is of herte and wil al-so,

and all his lords agree to go with Hercules and Jason.

In pis viage with hem for to goo.

Hercules first goes for help to Sparthos, an ile ruled by

Was Hercules, pe worthi conquerour,
And he in haste, his retenu to make,
Toward Sparthos hath pe weye take,
Whiche is an Ile to Grekys partiment,
Fully obeying to her commaundement.

Castor and Pollux,

In which Pollux and Castor eke also,
pe worpi kynges, pe my3ti breper two,
Wern, as I fynde, pat tyme gouernours,
And bare her crowne liche noble werryours;

the brothers of Helen.

3776. his] pis is D 1.
3782. assent] to assent D 1. 3784. his] her C.
3789. new * D 1. 3793. alle] also D 1.
3797. chefe solicytour] pe cheef solitour D 1.
3800. pe] his D 1.
BK. I] Castor, Pollux, and Telamon will help to invade Troy. 125

And as poetis liketh for to feye, 
þat Iubiter, for al his deite, 
Vp-on Dane bygat hem alle thre, 
þat in bewte alle other did excelle.
And for Eleyne, liche as bokys telle, 
Conseyved was in Tyndaris þe yle, 
Vn-to þe lond Ioinyng of Cecyle, 
þeper of somme I fynde * þat sche is 
After þe yle callid Tyndarys. 
Of hir birth me list no more endite,

Hercules gets Castor and Pollux to agree to help in the invasion of Troy.

But furthe I þinke of Hercules to write, 
þat hap besouȝt þis worði kynges tveyne, 
With myȝty hond to don her besy peyne, 
Only to graunte with him * for to wende 
To-Troye-ward, schortly þis þe ende. 
And to assenten þei sei not onys nay, 
With al þe power þei cache may, 
Ageyn what tyme þat hym list assigne. 
And Hercules, with chere ful benynghe, 
þanked hem of þat þei hym behyȝt; 
And forthe he went in al þe hast he myȝt 
To-ward Messene, þe strong[e] myȝti londe, 
With-Inne whiche þe noble kyng he fonde, 
þe knykȝly man, þe worþi Thelamoun, 
Lorde and prince of þat regioun, 
þat in armys was on þe * manlyest 
þat was alive, and egal with þe best. 
And whan he knewe þat Hercules was come, 
For Ioie he hath hym in his armys nome, 
An[d] resievèd in alle maner þing, 
Liche as it sat to a worþi kyng. 
And whan he wist sothly what he ment, 
With-oute more anoon he dide assent 
With hym to goon, Troyans for to greue; 
And Hercules goodly toke his leue, 

3808. Jupiter begat Helen and 
Castor and Pollux on Danae. 
3812. Conseyved was in Tyndaris þe yle, 
Vn-to þe lond Ioinyng of Cecyle, 
þeper of somme I fynde * þat sche is 
3816. Of hir birth me list no more endite, 

Hercules gets Castor and Pollux to agree to help in the invasion of Troy.

3820. With myȝty hond to don her besy peyne, 
Only to graunte with him * for to wende 
To-Troye-ward, schortly þis þe ende. 
And to assenten þei sei not onys nay, 
With al þe power þei cache may, 
Ageyn what tyme þat hym list assigne. 
And Hercules, with chere ful benynghe, 
þanked hem of þat þei hym behyȝt; 
And forthe he went in al þe hast he myȝt 
To-ward Messene, þe strong[e] myȝti londe, 
With-Inne whiche þe noble kyng he fonde, 
þe knykȝly man, þe worþi Thelamoun, 
Lorde and prince of þat regioun, 
þat in armys was on þe * manlyest 
þat was alive, and egal with þe best. 
And whan he knewe þat Hercules was come, 
For Ioie he hath hym in his armys nome, 
An[d] resievèd in alle maner þing, 
Liche as it sat to a worþi kyng. 
And whan he wist sothly what he ment, 
With-oute more anoon he dide assent 
With hym to goon, Troyans for to greue; 
And Hercules goodly toke his leue, 

3808. liketh] liken D 1. 
3815. of somme I fynde] I fynde of somme C. 
3817. endite] to endite D 1. 
3822. þis] þis is D 1. 
3823. sel] seide D 1. 
3833. þe] of þe C. 
3836. his] om. D 2. 
3837. in] him in D 1. 
3842. his] om. A.
And hym enhasteth to Thesalye ageyn,
To Pelleus, and telleth hym certeyn,
How he hath sped, besechyng hym also,
In al þe haste þat it may be do,
To send[e] lettris and hys lordes calle,
And tassemble his worþi knyȝtes alle,
Thoruȝ-oute his londe, bofe neþe and ferre,
Suche as he knewe þat wer experte in werre,
And hem also þat werne of countesy1 sage—
“For wit of hem þat be ronne in age,
Is more þan force with-oute experience,
But whan monhod is meynt with sapience,
Who considereth, it may double avayle;
And þay þat longe han vshed [to] trauayle,
Lyche as it is pleynly to suppose,
May help[e] moste oure Ioune to dispose;
For vn-to age experience and witte,
To southe force and hardines[se] sitte.
And whan þat bothe ben of on entent,*
Fulled acorded to werke by assent,*
With [a] quarel grounded vpon ryȝte,
Thoruȝ help of grace þat hath treble myȝte,
Hem dare nat drede, with spere nor with schelde
In knyȝtly wyse for to holde a felde;
For of knyȝtlyd þe fame nor* þe glorie,
Nor in armys conquest nor victorie,
Ben not assured vp-on multitude,
But on manhod, so grace list conclude.
Þer-foræ lat vs, for tavenge oure wrong,
First with riȝt make oure self[e] strong;
And oure force manly for to schewe,
Of knyȝtis chose piken out a fewe,
And devoide encombraunce of nombre;

3844. hym] him in D 1.
3860. To] And vn to D 1. 3861. entent] assent C.
3862. by assent] to oon entent C.
3867. nor] and C. 3875. devoide] to voide A.
And so we schaloure foos best encombe."  
And of al pat, pat Hercules hath seide,  
Kynge Pellens was rîȝt wel apaide,  
For hym þouȝt his conseil was rîȝt good.  
And Hercules, with-oute more abode,  
Is in gret haste with his meyne goon  
To a province þat callid is Philon,  
In whiche þer was a duke of noble fame,  
And as I fynde, Nestor was his name,  
Ful renomed and strong of chualrie;  
And he was eke ful nyȝe of allye  
To Hercules, and of þe same blood.  
And whan þat he pleynly vnderstood  
The purpos hool & cause of his commyng,  
He grauntid hym, with-oute more taryng,  
To goon hym silfe with him in this* viage,  
With alle þe worþi of his baronage,  
And to be redy aȝeyn a certen day.  
And Hercules, as fast as [euere] he may,  
Repayred [is] home to Thesalye,  
Wher gadred was holy þe nauye  
Of þe lordis, ful redy appara[ï]led,  
Wel enarmed and richelly vitailléed.  
And Pelleus hath takyn fyrste be þee,  
And euerly lorde, liche to his degree,  
I-schiped is and redi for to goon  
With Hercules and also with Iason,  
Her behestes manly to fulfille,  
Towardis Troye, þe cite for to spille.  
And after þat,* sothly as I fynde,  
þei nat abyde but vp-on þe wynde.

3880-86 are repeated after 3885 in D 1.  
3881. hym silfe with him] with hym hym silf D 1—this] his C.  
3883. aȝeyn] aȝeys D 1.  
3895. to] vn to D 1.  
3896. was] is A.  
3905. after þat] afterwarde C.  
3906. abyde] aboode D 1.
Howe Kynge Pelleus with þe myghtti puyssaunce of
Grece landyde at Symeonte afor þe Cite of Troye.  

When þat þe soote stormis of Aprille,
Vn-to þe rote ful lawe gan distille 3908
His lusty licour, with many holsom schour,
To reise þe vertu vp in-to þe flour;
And Phebus was ascendyng in his spere,
And on þe brest smote his bemys clere 3912
Of þe Ram, ful colerik at al,
Halvynge in ver þe equinnoccial;
When May kalendis entre in for-sothe,
And Zephirus, ful agreeable and smope,
þe tendre braunchis enspireþ & dope springe,
And euery busche is lusty blossumynge,
And from þe hil þe water is revolvíd
Of snowys white, þat Phebus hath dissoluyd,
And þe bawme vapoureth vp a-lofte 3920
In-to þe eyre of þe erbes
þe Rotis vertu, with colde of wynter hid,
Hath hool his myȝt and his force kyd,
Oute of þe erþe in erbe and euery tree
Schad in þe braunchis his humydite,
Areised only with þe sonnys hete,
And with þe moysture of þe reynes swete;
Whan siluer welles scheden oute her stremys 3924
In þe ryuers, gilt with þe sonne bemys,
And Flora had with newe grene ageyne
Hir lyuere schad vp-on euery playn,
And nyȝtyngales, þat al þe wode rong,
Ful amorously welcomed in hir song
þe lusty sesounz, fresche and desyrous,
Namly to hertis þat ben amerous,
And þe* see is calme and blaundisching
From trouble of wynde or wawy boyling,

3911. ascendyng|ascendid A.
3912. his] the A—bemys clere] om. A.
3937. þe] in þe C. 3938. or] & from D 1—wawyn] wawyn A

1 Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 27 d.
And from tempest is smope to eskape—
The same sesoun Grekys furth hem schape
Towardis Troye: erlys, dukys, kyngis,
Her schippis stoffid with al maner pingis,
pat to were my3t hem* moste avayle.
And ri3t anoon pei be-gan to saile,
When al was redy, with-oute more abode,
Eche schip by oper on pe water rood;
And when pe wynde at her lust gan blowe,
A Ioie it was to sen hem go by rowe,
Whiche made hem faste to hasten in her wyoe,
pat in schorte tyme pei com[e] be to Troye,
And in pe haune callid Symeonte.
Whan Phebus fer vnder her orizonte
I-westrid was, pat men ne my^t hym see,
Greks, eschapid alle pereils of pe see,
Caste her ankres and joust[e] for pe beste,
In her schippes pe same ny3te to reste.

The noble kynge Pelle in his Tente declarede pe fyne of his landyne, for pe sege to be layde.¹

And in pe morwe, whan pe larke song,
pe worpi Grekys, so manly & so strong,
Be-gan to lond, in al pe haste pei my3te,
On Troye grounde, and her tentis py3te
A-fore pe tōune, with gret diligence;
For pei ne founde no maner resistance.*
And al pis while pei sette good awaite
On euery syde, list per wer disceite,
Til on pe hour pat pe sonne bri^te
Had in pe morwe schad his rody li3te

King Peleus's Address to his Grecian army.

The Greeks gather at King Peleus's tent.

The Greeks are gathered at King Peleus's tent. He reminds them that their folk never began anything without winning it.

He reminds them that their folk never began anything without winning it.

Now they've come to destroy King Lamedon, and they are 1. so to put guard

Now they've come to destroy King Lamedon, and they are 1. so to put guard

that no Greek shall be harmed;

that no Greek shall be harmed;

Amyd þe felde, vpon every tent, At whiche tyme, alle of oon assent, þe Grekis wern assemblid euerychon, And by þe byddynge of þe kyng anon, Iason firste, and with hym Hercules, With many worpi being in þat pres, Ben to þe tent of Pelleus come. And whan þe lordis, bope alle & some, Wern to-gedre in þat place mette, And ech of hem in his degre was sette, þan Pelleus, whan al [was] huscht & stille, Be-gan rîst þus to declare his wille: "O noble & worpi, of hîse estate & lowe, Whos knyȝty fame þorun þe worlde Is knowe, Reported is as fer as schineth sonne, þat Grekis ʒit neuer* þing be-gonne þat þei ne had victori at þe ende : For with þe lauer, as fer as man may wende, þei haue be crowned of what * þei toke on honde—Suche is her hap, boþe on se and londe—Wherfore, þe lordis, moste worpi of renoun, þe can remembre of kyng Lamedoun, And of þe wrong þat he vp-on ʒow wurȝte, Whan harme to hym noon of ʒow ne thouȝte, Whiche mot be quytte, schortly þis þe ende, For we be come to stroye hym * and to schende ; Wherfor anon, in al þe haste we may, Late vs sette on with-oute more delay. But firste I rede þat we taken hede, To þinges þre, most helping in þis ned: First, be avis and gode discrecioun, For oure diffence and sauacioun, So prudently oure waredis for to make, þat non of ours be at meschefe take, þis ilke day, for lak of prouidence;

King Peleus & Hercules plan their Fight against Troy. 131

(Be secunde is, to do oure diligence
With aloure myst and hool entencioun,
For to labour to ful distrueccioun
Of ourefoon, for oure owne glorie;
And pe pridde, pat we may victorie
Reioische of hem, platly at pe laste.
And after pis, 3e may afore wel caste,
3iffe we of kny3thood, þorþ3 our hardines,
May venquische hem, we schal so hîe riches
Conqueue of hem to oure possessioun—
For it is knowe how þat Troye town,
Of al plente, as it schal be founde,
Of gold and tresour is passyngly habounde—
þat oure schippis, sothly as I wene,
For to rescuue schal nat mow sustene
þe habundauce þat is zonde with-Inne,
3if it so be þat we þe cite wynne,
As *God vs graunte, 3if it be his wille.”
And also faith as þe kyng was stille,
þe noble kny3te, þe strong[e] Hercules,
In þe presence of þat worþi pres,
Seide his counsell was heþly to commende,
For wis begynnyng is preyed be þe ende—
“But to effecte our purpos for to bryng,
My counsell is, in þe morwenyng,
To-forne or we discursed ben be day,
þat we vs arme in al haste we may,
And on þis felleþat we do oure payne
For to deuyde oure meyne in-to tweyne;
And of þe ton, schal kyng Thelamoun
Be gouernour, for his hîe renoun,
And of þe toþer, kyng Pelleus schal haue
þe gouernaunce, wysly hem to * saue;

2. to work for the ruin of their foes;
3. to win the victory,
and get riches,
for Troy has much gold and treasures.

Division of their force into two,
1. under K. Telamon and
2. under K. Peleus.

4014. tresour] siluer D 2, D 1.
4016. schal] ne shal A, D 2.
4018. it] þat D 2. 4019. As] And C.
4020. also] as D 1. 4021. kny3te] kyng D 2.
4023. his] þis D 2.
4026. in þe] in this A, in þis D 2, þis mery D 1.
4034. to] for to C.
Hercules's plan for lying in Ambush & seizing Troy. [BK. I

With the rest Hercules and Jason will
lie in ambush,

And I my silfe, & Jason here my brother,
Schal secrely go with alle þe toper
Under þe cite, or þe sonne schynes,
And in þe bruschail and þe pikke vynes
We schal vs hyde, & kepe vs per ful koye;
For Lamedoun, þat is kyd of Troye,
Anon as he may heren and espie
Of þe Grekis, with his cheualrye
Out of þe cite wele issenoute anoone
With 30w to fiȝte, & vvenge him on * his foon;
But whan he cometh to-our-schippis-ward,
Nestor þe duke schal in þe firste ward
Metyn with hym, and Castor schal also,
Whan he seth tyme, knyȝtly haue ado
To help[e] Nestor, 3if þat it be neede.
þe þridde warde Pelleus schal lede;
And whiles ȝe þus hym occupie,
Jason and I schal vsaste hye
To þe cite, vnwiste of hem echon,
I dout[e] nat we schal it wyzne anoone.
Doth be counseil, and it wil 30w availe;
And her my trouþe, ȝe ne may not fayle
For to conquere þe cite 3onde a-fore;
þis al and some—ȝe gete of me no more.”
And þei acorde with al her strenthe & myȝte
And armen hem in stele þat schon ful briȝte
Ageyn þe sonne amorwe whan he riseth,*
And worȝt fully as Hercules deuiseth.

All arm in the morning.

Howe Lamedon þe kenge of Troye, sodeynly wernede,
with his Chivalry gave the Grekys batayle, &
þere was sclayn.¹

And Lamedoun, whan he herd[e] telle
Of her comyng, hym lyst no lenger dwelle,
But out he went with many a noble knight,
Flourryng in southe & desirous to fyzt,
And alle þat myzt armes bere,
Or koude schete or durste handle a spere.

And whan þei were assemblid in þe felde,
Eueryche his armes depeynt vppon his scheld,
Brouded or bete vpon his cote armvre,
þan Lamedoun with al his besy cure
Set hem in ordre, & his wardes maketh,
And in þe felde furthe his weye he taketh
Towardis þe Grekis, as eny lyne riȝte,
Fully purposyng to abide and fyt.
He was nat war of hem þat were behynde,
He nat aduerteth nor castep in mynde
þe grete sleiȝte nor þe trechery,
þat hym was schape, he koude it nat espie;
But furþe he went with his wardis set.
And þe Grekis anoon with hym han met,
With herte bolde, astonyed nat at al—
Duke Nestor firste, sturdy as a wal,
In whos manhod was neuer founde lake,
Ful knyȝtly þan vppon hors[e] bake,
To hert his men & his knyȝtes eke,
Gan presen in with many worþi Greke,
With Lamedoun sturdely to mete.
At whiche tyme þei felt[e] ful vnswete,
And in þe frountel, ful many manly man
With scharpe speris first to-gidre ran;
And with swerdis, scharpe & kene grounde,
Was þilke day 3ouen many [a] wounde,
Wher * as þei mette, vp-on euery syde,
þorȝ plate & mayle her woundis bledde wyde.
And basennettis þei riuem to þe crowne;
þe noise of strokis in þe eyr gan sowne;
And of þe blood þat was schad of newe,


Castor slays many Trojans: Lamedon kills more Greeks.

The Greeks are helpt by Castor, who drives back the Trojans, till King Lamedon enters the field and slays many Greeks.

\( \text{pe grene soile chaunged hath his hewe:} \)

For it was died playnly in-to red,
Vp-on pe whiche ful many man lay ded,
And many worpi loste pe his lif.
And certeynly, in pis mortal strif,
\( \text{pe Grekis had discomfeted ben echon,} \)
Nad[de] Castor socored hem anoon;
\( \text{be} \) of Troye so manly han hem bore,
\( \text{bat} \) many kny\( \text{t} \) of Grekis were I-lore:
But whan Castor entre\( \text{p} \) in batail
With his kny\( \text{tes} \), so sore he dide assayl
\( \text{pe} \) wor\( \text{p} \) Troyans, \( \text{bat} \) with spere and scheld
Grekis ageyn recured han \( \text{pe} \) felde,
\( \text{bat} \) many oon ly\( \text{p} \) slay[e]n on \( \text{pe} \) grene,
Girt \( \text{poru} \) \( \text{pe} \) body with scharp speris kene,
\( \text{bat} * \) \( \text{pat} \) of Troye, in pis mortal stour,
Were driue a-bak, til \( \text{per} \) cam socour
To hem in hast of wor\( \text{p} \) Lamedoun,
Whiche entred [in] liche a wood lyoun,
And made weye vp-on euery syde.

And where as he made his swerde to glide,
\( \text{per} \) was but deth, so manly * he hym bare,
\( \text{bat} \) wel vnne\( \text{p} \)e was \( \text{per} \) [n]on \( \text{bat} \) dar
Abide his stroke; for, ridying vp and down,
He made weye aboute hym enviroun.

In \( \text{pe} \) rengis he hath his foonoute sou\( \text{t} \);
\( \text{bat} \) day in armys merveiles he h\( \text{ap} \) wrou\( \text{t} \),
\( \text{bat} \) by his manhod and his worpines
He Grekis hath brou\( \text{t} \) in swiche distres,
\( \text{bat} \) \( \text{pe} \) his swerde flieden as \( \text{pe} \) deth,
Merciles so many of hem he sleth.
Of whiche slau\( \text{t} \)ter \( \text{pe} \) Grekis wer confus,
Til Pelleus cam to her rescus,
Iros and wood, as he wer falle in rage,
He thoug he wolde pe grete pompe aswage
Of hem of Troye, and so he dide anoon;
For he vnhorseth of hem many oon,
And fellie slowe al pat stood hym aforne,
And many harnes he hath pat day to-torne,
And made scheldes for to rive a-soundre,
Pat to be-holde it was a verray wonder,
Til Lamedoun his peple sawe goo bake,
For Pelleus brouht hem so to wrake.
Wher-of in hert he felte * ful gret peyne,
Besechyng hem to repyre ageyne,
And kype her myȝt & lyche as men endure;
And so þe felde he made hem to recure,
Til duke Nestor knewe þat Lamedoun,
Amyd þe felde, was kyng of Troye town.
And rïst anoon, with-oute more abood,
A-geyn[e]s hym a ful gret pas he rood;
And whan þe kyng dide hym first espie,
Of hiȝ dispit, of ranco?r and envie,
In knyȝtly wyse gan to torne ageyn,
No þing agast, but of hiȝ disdeyn,
With Irous hert embollid al with pride,
His hors fersly gan takyn in þe syde,
Til þer ran out þe verray red[e] blood;
And to Nestor, liche as he were wood,
He rood anoon, and his spere brake;
But he ful knyȝtly kepte his hors[e] bak,
And ful deliuerly, hym ageyn to quyte,
With a spere, ful scharp[e] [whet] to byte,
þor[ú] schelde & breste ſaf hym swiche a wounde,
þat from his hors he felde him down to grovnde
Of whiche fal, þe kyng no þing a-ferde,
But ros hym vp & pulled out a swerde,

4132. Peleus succours the Greeks,
4136. and kills many Trojans,
4140. Lamedon rallies them.
4144. [leaf 23 b]
4148. Nestor rides at him,
4152.
4156.
4160.
4164. wounds Lamedon, and fells him to the ground.
4134. aswage] swage D 1.
4137. stood hym] hym stood D 2.
4139. 40 are transposed in D 2.
4163. schelde & breste] brest and sheld D 1.
4166. a] his D 1.
Cedar comes to help Lamedon, and unhorses Nestor.

So anger fret hym at his hert[e] rote,
\[at he vnhorsed fezo te muste on fote ;
\[Wher-of he was in parti ful confus,
Til oon Cedar cam to his reskus,
\[pat was made knyhte pe silfe same yer,
\[long, fresche, and lusty, and of noble chere,
Sitting pat tyme on a noble stede.
And when pat he gan to taken hede,
\[And sawe pe kyng on fote at meschef fizte,
Gan to prike, in al pe hast he myzte,
Toward Nestor, & with a spere hym hitte,
From his sadel pat he made hym flitte
Down to pe groynde a-fore kyng Lamedoun.

But he anon, liche a champioun,
Recured vp, and hym silfe diffendeth;
And many strok eche on other spendeth,
With scharp[e] swerdis, kene for to bite,
Eueryche at other gan to foyne & smyte,*
Til Lamedoun, with a despitous chere,
From his face raced his visere,
And by force, al at onys smet
A riche cercle from his basenet,
Of large perle goyng enviroun—
With creste and al, he fersly bette adovn:
\[pat whiles Nestor pus afor him stood,
\[His face was al depeynt with blood,
\[pat certeynly, pe sothe to conclude,
Had nat Grekis with gret multitude
Reskewed hym, he hadde of Lamedoun [leaf 23 c]
Be slaye as faste ; for he was bore doun
Vn-to pe erfe a-mong pe hors[e] feet.
But Castor pozte pat he nolde leet
To be his helpe, as he behelde a-feer;
And Irously he toke a myzty speer,
And to Cedar, pat I spak of late,
He gan to ride and priken in gret hate:

4168. to] at D 2. 4182. many] many a A, D 1.
4194. Had] Ne had D 1.
4202. ride and priken] prike & ride D 1.
But or he cam to hym, dout[e]les,  
A Troyan kny3t, callid Segnerides,  
Cosyn to Cedar, whan he hap pis seen,  
On a courser rood anoon be-tween;  
And with a spere he smete Castor so,  
\[pat with pe stroke he brake evene atwo.\]  
To whom Castor, with-oute more areste,  
Hath with a spere, amyddes of pe breste,  
Segnerides 3oue a mortal wounde,  
\[pat likly was neuer for to sounde.\]  
Wher-of Cedar cau3te swiche envie,  
\[pat he anoon, of malencolye\]  
And of dispit boilyng in his herte,  
Segnerides whan he sawe so smerte,  
\[Maugre who grucchep, amyddes of Je feld,\]  
Of verray my3t from Castor toke his scheld,  
\[And þorù; viser, of rancour & of rage,\]  
He wounded hym amyddes the* visage,  
And his hors from hym also he cau3te,  
And to his squier manfully it raúte:  
\[pat certeynly he stood in swiche disioynt,\]  
\[pis worþi Castor, pat he was in poynþ\]  
To haue ben take of hem of Troye tho;  
\[For he on fote with hem moste [haue] go,\]  
Nadde Pollux, with  
\[Mo þan seuene hundrid in stele armyd briþt,\]  
\[þe raper com Castor to reskewe;\]  
\[Whiche after hem so sore gan to sewe,\]  
\[þat maugre hem, Castor whan he fond,\]  
Of force he toke hym fre out of her hond,  
And to his hors restorid hym ageyn.  
\[And after [pat], pis Pollux in certeyn,\]  
\[Of verray angre and of fervent Ire,\]  
\[Agein Troyens with rancour set a-fire,\]  
\[þat al attonis he vpon hem set;\]
And in his mood, by fortune as he met  
A Trojan knight, called Eliatus,  
In armys strong, fresche, and desirous,  
Wonder semly and but tender of age,  
pe kynges sone, also, of Cartage,  
And nevewe eke vn-to Lamedoun,  
Whom Pollux hath, lyche a ferse lyoun,  
With-oute routhe, pite, or mercy,  
In pe rengis slawen cruelly—  
pat Lamedoun, when he gan take hede,  
Of inward dool felte his herte belede,  
Whan he hym sawe, euene vppon pe deth,  
Ful pitously zelden vp pe brethe,  
Vp-on pe playn, as he lay hym be-forn.  
For whiche anoon he made sowne an horn,  
At whiche þer cam, in* ful riche array,  
Seuene thousands knights, in al [pe] hast þei may,  
Vp-on his deth avenged* for to be.  
Whiche mercyles, of gret[e] cruelte,  
þe Grekis han here & þer I-grounded:  
Here lith on ded, þer a-noper wounded,  
So þat þei myȝt withi hem haue* no tak.  
So mortally þei made hem gon abak,  
þat al gan turne to her confusion;  
And finaly þat day* with Lamedoun  
þe trympe had & þe felde y-goon,  
Saue þat, allas, oute of þe tourne anoon  
Vn-to þe kyng þer cam a messager,  
þat hath hym tolde with a ful pitouse chere,  
How þe Grekis han þe cite take.  
þan for to se þe wo he* dide make,  
It wolde haue made a pitus hert as blyue  
Of verray dool asondre for to rive,
The Trojans are beaten in front and rear.

So sore he gan with-in hym silfe to morne.

He wiste nat what party he myst turne;  
But in a were* he abydyngge longe,  
Aforne hym sawe þe mystþy Grekis stronge,  
And in þe cyte anoþer host behynde:

Almost for wo he went out of his mynde;  
And sodeny, bacyward as he behydde  
Toward þe cithe, he sawe com in þe felde  
First Hercules and with hym Iason,  
þat by her sleþt wonen han þe toun.

And in al hast, þis cruþel Hercules,  
þe mystþy geaun[t of force per[e]les,  
Liche a lyoun, wood and dispitous,  
Or a tiger in rage furious,

Gan of newe hem of Troye assaile,  
And with [his] swerde perce plate and mail,  
Whiche of labour wer ful mate and feynt,  
And of long fiȝt with werynes atteyn,

And he cam in,* lusty, fresche, and grene,  
þat þei his force myst[e] nat sustene;  
For as he rod among hem here & ȝonder,  
In cruþel wyse he s[e]uered hem asonder,  
And put hem holy in þis hie meschaunce,  
Oute of rewle and of gowernaunce;

So þat þe kyng, oppresst al with dool,  
Of his warded destitute and sool,  
At meschef lefte, and al infortunat,  
And of comfort fully disconsolat—  
Þis Hercules, with a dispitous look,  
With scharp[e] spors his stede felly toke,

And cruþely rod to* Lamedoun,  
And to þe erthe fersly bare hym doun,  
And vp-on hym, in al þe haste he myȝte,  
Downe of his hors sodeinly alyȝte,*  
And myȝtel y rent of his basenet,
Hercules kills K. Lamedon, and many Trojans.

The Greeks slay nearly all the rest, take all the treasure in Troy, and kill the old folk and the babies.

King Lamedon is slain. Troy is plundered.

And with a swerde, scharp[e] grounde & whet,
Smot of his hede, þer was noon oþer grace,
And caste it furthe in þe silue place
Among þe hors, by cruel violence,
With-oute pite or any reuerence.
And in a rage raste his hors ageyn,
And lyche a lyoun rengyng on þe playn
Bar downe & slowe what cam in his weye;
And many Troyan þat day made he deye,
þat liche to schepe wer* forskatered wyde,
Al destitute of gouernour or guyde,
Ne can no* rede, schortly to conclude;
For þe Grekis with double multitude
Gan hem enchace to þe deth ful blyve,
þat wel vnneþe þer left noon alyue.
þe feld þei han, and ben þat day victours;
And with tryvmphe, liche as conquerours,
To þe cite þei take her weye after,
And rende down boþe sparre & rafter;
And al þe tresour & riches of þe tovn,
þei toke anoon to* her pocessiou, 4320
Who euere grucche or be lef or lothe,
What þei founde, pleynly with hem gothe.
In þe temples þei dide gret offence,
To þe goddis doyng no reuerence;
For al þei spoyle, with-oute drede or fere,
And vn-to schip euery þing þei bere;
And merciles on croked, olde, and lame,
Her swerde þei made cruelly atame;
And children soukyng at her* moder brest,
þei mordre & sle with-oute more arest; 4336

---

4324. rende]rente D 1—sparre] sper D 1. 4326. to] in to C.
4327. grucche or] grucchini who D 2.
4328. þei[ the A—pleynly] platly D 1—gothe] it gothe A.
4334. swerde] swerdes D 1—atame] to atame A, to tame D 2.
4335. her] þe C.
The sad Fate of the Trojan Maidens.

And song[e] maydenes, wepyng in distresse,
Ful gentil born, and of gret fayrnesse,
With hem þei ladde, & may hem nat excuse,
Hir fresche bewte falsly to mysvse.
þei waste & brene and consumen al;
And with-oute þei brake a-dovn þe wal.  

The Trojan girls are carried off by the Greeks.

And Exione, þe kynges douȝter dere,
Þat was to hym passyngly entere
By his lyve—I mene Lamedoun—
Meke and benyng of condicioun,
Hercules hath anoon hir take,
Þat for drede pitously gan quake,
And hir deliuered vn-to Thelamoun,
For he entrede first in-to þe touz.
And he his ȝifte reseyued hath at gre,
Be-cause sche was surmouthynge of bewte,
And tretid hir after as he wolde,
Nat lyche as he a kynges douȝter schulde.
For syth he gat hir þat day be victorie,
For his worschip and his owne glorie,
Havyng rewarde to hir hîȝe degre,
He schulde rather of kyngly honeste,
And of kyngyhood, hane weddid hir þerfore,
Syth þat sche was of blood so gentil bore,
Þan of fals lust, ageyn al godlyhede,
Vsed hir bewte and hir womanhede
Dishonestly, and in synful wyse—
Of royal blood nat liche þe hîȝe emprise,
Nor þe doctrine of naturis riȝt,
Nor liche þe norture of [a] gentil knyȝt:
Considered first hir [birþe] and hir kynrede,
Hir grene ȝouþe, and hir maydenhed,
So gode, so fayre, so womanly þer-to.
A kynges douȝter of birth sche was also;
To hane wedded hir, it had[de] be no schame.
Now, Thelamoun, in soth þou wer to blame;

4340 K. Lamedoun's daughter, Esione,
4344 is handed by Hercules to Telamon,
4348 who treats her as a concubine,
4352 and doesn't wed her,
For Thoruz þe errour of þi gouernance, 
þer kyndled was, of ful hyȝe vengaunce, 
So hoot a sparke after of envye, 
þat Thoruz þe worlde þe fyr gyn multiplie, 
Whiche was nat liȝt* to quenchyn of his hete. 
For hatred olde to brenne can nat lete 
With new[e] flawme, who so taketh hede; 
3if it nat smoke, it is þe more [to] drede, 
As in þis* story her after schal be knowe. 
And whan þis touȝ was brenȝ & brouȝt[e] lowe, 
Boþe tour & wal with þe soil made pleyn, 
And no þing stood, alas, þat may be seyn, 
So ouþerly þe Grekis hem oppresse, 
Makyng al waste liche a wyldernesse— 
For good & tresour & riches infinyt, 
With many Iowel, ful pleysynge of delyt, 
To her schippis out of þe touȝ þei lede, 
And in schort tyme homward þei hem spede, 
With tresour stuffid, & habouȝance of good. 
And whan þei seye þat þe wedir stood, 
þe wynde also, at her lust þei hadde, 
þei gan to sailee, & with þem hom þei ladde 
Exyona and many a maiden, 
þat out of Troye in-to Grece goo. 
And seyling forþe, with-in a lytel space, 
þei ben eskapid [fro] þe se by grace, 
And vn-to lond aryued merily. 
At whos commyng þe Grekis ouþerly 
So Ioyful ben of her good[e] spede; 
And specialy, in Guydo as I rede, 
Her schippes wern with golde & tresour lade; 
Wher-of in herte þei weye wonder glade. 
And for þei hadde out so wel þem born, 
To conquere Troye, and so fewe lorne
Of her meine, pei panke her goddes alle,
And of pe grace pat to hem is falle.
For with pe tresour pat pei han hom brouȝt,
Ful many pore was made vp of nouȝt;
Þoruz-out pe lond þere was swiche abundance,
So moche good and so gret sufficaunce,
þat no wiȝt had among[es] hem no nede.
And many day þis blisful lyfe þei lede,
From 3er to 3er by refulcioun;
And for her manhood & her hîȝe renown,
Her honour ran rounde þe worlde aboute,
þat hem toffende every londe hath doute,
For her knyȝðod, & for þei wer so wyse.
And til þe story liste ageyn deuyse,
In þis mater ferþer to procede,
With þe fauour of ȝour goodlyhed,
I wil me reste for a litel space;
And þan vp-born with support of þour grace,
Forþe a-complische, as I vndertook.
And here an ende of þe first[文书] book
I make now, with quakyng hond * for drede,
Only for fer of ȝow þat schal it rede,
Liste ȝe, allas, of hasty moceyoun,
Ne wil not haue no compassioun,
Pyte nor roupe vp-on my rud[e]nesse;
Lowly beseching to ȝour gentilnes,
Of mercy only, bope neȝe and ferre,
Where ȝe fynde þat I fayle or erre,
For to correcte, or þe ferþer flitte,
For to þour grace I holy al commyte.

[Explicit liber Primus
INcipit liber Secundus.]

4418. every] om. D 2, eche D 1—hath] had D 1.
4424. your] his D 2.  4426. þe] þis D 2.
4427. now with quakyng hond] with quakyng hond now C.

1 The above rubric stands in A. D 2 has, “Explicit liber primus” and D 1 “Explicit: liber: Primvs:” in red, below line 4436. There is no rubric in C. Furthermore, in C, the 203 lines following 4436 were apparently included by the scribe in Book I., for, beyond an illuminated initial, there is no break between the last line of Book I. and the first line of Book II.
BOOK II.

The envious ordre of Fortunas moving,
In worldly ping, fals and flekeryng,
Ne will not suffre vs in his present lyf
To lyue in reste with-oute werre or striffe; [leaf 24d]
For sche is blinde, fikel, and vnstable,
And of her cours, fals & ful mutable.

Who sit higest, sche can doune hym enclynye
When he leest wene bring hym to ruyne,
With awaites pat gladly ben sodeyne,
And with hir face pat partid is on twyne
Schewen most hool, when sche is leste to triste;
Pat wel wer hym pat hir deceytes wiste,
And hir engynes & hir trappis knewe,
Pat euery day in hir courte be newe.
Of whiche, in soth, I wel afferme dar,
No mortal man may in his lyf be war:
For sche vn-evene peisyng in balauence,
With contrefet and feyned contenaunce,
With lokyng pleyu & chere of flaterye,
Vnwarly can blere a munnys eye,
And hym be-gyle—pis pe verray soth—
With a face blandissching and smope,
Whan sche hath hym from hige degre brouȝt lowe,
Ful falsly smyle & make hym pe mowe.
And zit som while, most varriant of hewe,
Sche vn-to somme pretendeth to be trewe;
For sche whilom to somme is faunourable,
And to somme fals and deceyvable.
Sche can reise * on, & bryng another doun,

21. pis] this is D 1.  24. Ful] And D 1—pe] to A.
29. reise] reisen C.
Fortune gives some men renown.

To somme sche stealeth renown and victorie,
And doth hem flour in honour & glorie;
And somme sche can apeire with fals fame,
And gilt[e]lles put a man in blame.
To somme sche is goodly and benyngne;
And of disdeyn sche can also maligne
Ageyn anope[r], & make hym loute lowe;
And from her sees sche can kynges crowne,
And hem avale, for al her hire toures.
And sche can plonge wor[n] emperoures
From þe hille of hire prosperite
In-to þe vale of aduersite;
þe riche emporische, of rancour & disdeyn,
And þe pore sche can enhaunce ageyn,
þis fals[e] goddes * with hir eyen blynde,
Set on afrom, a-nope[r] goth be-hynde;
And doth on re[n]e, and another halte;
And on sche can in rychesse * hire exalte,
And anoþer plonge in pouerte,
In whom no man may haue no sikerte.
To somme sugre and hony sche distilleth;
And of somme sche þe botel filleth
With bitter galle, myrre, and aloes.
And þis lady, wilful recheles;
As sche þat is froward and peruers,
Hath in hir * celer drinkes ful diuers;
For sche to somme, of fraude and of fallas,
Mynystreth pyment, bawme, & ypocras:
And sodeynly, whan þe sote is past,
Sch[e] of custom can þeuen hem a tast,
For to conclude falsely in þe fyn,
Of bitter eysel and of egre wyn,
And corosyues pat fret and perce depe,
And narkotykes pat cause men to slepe.
bus sche to hem, pat hir tonne aproche,
After soote,* pe bitter can * abroche—
In her regne, pis quene of variaunce,
Whos lyve fyneth alway with meschaunce.
Who truste hir, sche wil hym ouercaste,
And hym deseye pleynly at pe laste,
Of what estat euer pat he be,
pis double lady of mutabilite.
Sethe here example of kyng Lamedourc,
Whom sche hap brou^t to confusiour,
For litel cause, and for a ping of nouz^t;
Hir cruelte he hape to dere a-bou^t.
Wherfore, I rede, euer man take hede
To gynne a quarel where as is no nede:
For litel fire vnnder asches reke
So may be kyndled pat it wil oute breke
In-to swyche flawme, men may it nat apese;
Who best can suffre most schal haue his ese.
berfor, 3e kynges and lordis euerynchon,
Make 3ow a merour of pis Lamedoun,
And bep wel war to do no violence
Vn-to straungers, whan pei do noon offence,
Whan pei com fer in-to 3oure region^v:
Ne suffre hem nat, by noon oppressioun,
In 3oure boundis for to haue no wrong;
For in 3oure owne, pouze pat 3e be strong,
And myzty eke among 3oure legys alle,
A-noper day, paraunter may be-falle,
pat whan pat 3e ful litel penke on hit,
Of sodeyn cas pat 3e * may be quyte
And I-thanked in a-noper place,
Of aventure 3if 3e happe passe.
berfore, whan 3e may eny swyche espie,

64. [pat] can D 1—aproche] abroche D 1.
75. and] or D 1—a] om. D 1.
76. a-bou^t] bought A, bou^t D 1.
78. gynne] begynne D 1.
81. apese] aceese D 1. 83. 3e] pe D 1, D 2.
94. 3e] it C, D 1. 96. happe] hap there D 1.
The Duty of Kindness to Strangers.

Doth hem good chere of your curtesye,
And prudently consydereth in your wit,
pat to a lorde of gentilines hit sit,
To euer straunger goodly hym to haue:
per is no ping may more his honour saue,
pan to refresche hem frely & disport.
pan may pei after good of hym reporte;
Be whos contrarie hap moche wo be wrouȝt
A-fore pis tyme, 3if it be wel souȝt:
Be first[e] Troye ytterly destroyd,
And pe peple in sorwe & wo acloied,
Lad in-to exil, fer from her cite,
Lyvyng in praldom and captiuite;
And Exyone, as se haue herde me telle,
Lad in-to Grece with Thelamoun to dwelle.
For whom [per was], as Guydo can 3ow teche,
After take * so gret vengauue & wreche
On ouþer parte, pat in verray trouthe
For to here it is to moche routhe,
As in pis boke 3e may after rede,
Ceryously 3if 3e liste take hede.
For gladly ay pe reuolucioun
Of fatal ping, by disposicioun,
Is so envious, and alwey meynt with wo,
pat in pis world, wher-so pat we go,
We trewly may aduerten in oure pouȝt,
pat for pe valu of a ping of nouȝt,
Mortal causes and werris first by-gonne;
Strif and debate, here vnder pe sonne,
Wer meved first of smal occasiouz,
pat caused after gret confusion;
pat no man can pe harmys half endite.
For, for a cause dere y-nowȝe a myte,
Eche is redy to distroien other;
A man for litel wil strive with his broþer;
Blood is vnkynde, which gretly is to drede.

103. &] and to D 1.
111. haue herde] hard D 2.
114. take] was take C.
116. moche] my D 2.
130] one For A, D 1.
Troy, new and old, was ruined. I'll tell how.

Allas! Whi nyl pei* taken better hede?
For olde Troye & afterward pe newe,
Porsoe smal enchosoun, who pe troupe knewe,
Wer finally brought to distruccioun,
As olde bokes maken mencionn;
And many worpi and many noble kny3t
Slayn in pe feld by dures of pat fi3t—
Kynes, princes at pe* sege ded,
Whan Antropos to-brak hir lyves thred,
Pat for to telle pe meschef and pe wo,
I want[e] connynge, and I fele also
My penne quake & tremble in my sond,
And I fear Prince Henry's criticism;
But he is merciful,
To tell these woes, I lack skill;
and I I'll relate the story of New Troy,
and I'II relate the story of New Troy,
Old Troy and new were both ruined,
and many worthies slain.
To tell these woes, I lack skill;
and I fear Prince Henry's criticism;
but he is merciful,
and I'll relate the story of New Troy,
after Guido's Latin.

134. nyl] nyllen D 1—pei] pe C.
141. pe] pat C.
142. to-brak] brak D 1.
143. smal] sond A.
150. but yif] yif but A.
151. to hauue] to him take D 1.
153. to] to om. D 2.
156. royal] his Roial A.
I am so dulle, certeyn, pat I ne can
Folwen Guydo, pat clerke, pat coryous man,
Whiche in latyn hath be rethorik
Set so his wordis, pat I can nat be lyke.
To sewe* his stile in my translacioun,*
Word by word, lyche pe construcciouw,
After pe maner of gramariens,
Nor lyke pe stile of rethoricyens,
I toke nat on me pis story to translate;
For me to forther Clyo com to late,
pat in swyche craft hath gret experience;
I leue pe wordis and folwe pe sentence.
And troupe of metre I sette also a-syde,
For of pat arte I hadde as po no guyde
Me to reducyn, when I went a-wrong;
I toke non hede nouper of schort nor long,
But to pe troupe, and lefte coryouste
Hope of makyng and of metre be,
Nat purposyng to moche for to varie,
Nor for to be dyuerse nor contrarie
Vn-to Guydo, as by discordauwce;
But me conforme fully in substantce,
Only in menyng, to conclude al on;
Al-be pat I ne can pe wey[e] goon
To swe pe floures of his eloquence;
Nor of peyntyng I haue noon excellence
With sondry hewes noble, fresche, and gay;
So riche colours biggen I ne may;
I mote procede with sable and with blake.
And [in] enewyng wher 3e fynde a lak,
I axe mercy or I fro 3ow twynne;
And with 3our fauour I wil a-non * begynne, [leaf 25 d] 200
And in al haste my style furthe directe;
And where I erre, I praye 3ow to correcte.

173. sewe] schewe C—translacioun] transmutaciouw C.
180. 1st pe] these D 1.
183. a-wrong] wronge D 1.
192. Al-be] Al be it D 1—ne can] can not D 1.
198. a] om. D 1. 200. I wil a-non] a non I wil C.
Of Priamus, pe sonne of Lamedoun which, at pe
destroycyoun of Troye, was at the obsydey of A
Castel. And howe mony sonnes and doughters
that Priamus had.¹

When Lamedon was slain
by Hercules,

the same tyme whan pat Troye touz
Destroyed was, and kyng Lamedoun
Was also slayn, poru3 pe crueltie
Of Hercules, vnder his* cyte,
He hadde a sone, pe story tellep vs,
Whiche was his eyr, I-called Priamus,
Wonder manly, discreet, and ful prudent,
Whiche pat tyme from Troye was absent,*
Whan his fader loste pus his lyf;
For he pat tyme with Eccuba his wyfe,
And with his sonys, aboute a castel lay,
And alle his kny3tes, to gete it 3if he may,
pat hath on hem my3tely werreyed :
For pei his fader han* falsely disobeyed,
And vn-to hym be rebel wonder long ;
Al-be Priam, with sawtis huge and strong,
Hem hadde assayled ofte & many sythe ;
His strengfe on hem liche a kny3t to kythe,
To gete in armys worship and honour,
And hem to dancze liche a conquerour,
He caste hym fully or pat he departe.
For day by* day his lyf he gan iuparte,
At her wallis for to preve his my3t,
With many baroum and many worpi kny3t ;
For he 3it had his 3ong[e] lusty blood,
And was of age flouryng in kny3thod,
And at assautis & swiche maner strife,

203. The miniature to Book II. is inserted above this line in C
and D 2—pat] om. D 2.
205. also slayn] slayn also D 1. 206. his] the C.
209. 10 are transposed in D 2.
219. 3if] & D 1—he] they A.
223. hym] hem D 2. 224. by] to C.
227. 3onge lusty] lusty 3ong D 2.

¹ Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 31 c.
Of Priam's sons, the hero Hector, & the handsome Paris.

On with pe first [for] to aunte re his lyf.
To hert his men, hym list nat be behynde
For drede of deth, sothly as I fynde,
A-fore pe castel hize and pikke wallyd.
And be his wyfe pat Eccuba was callyd, 232
bis Priam had, ful worpi of degre,
Fyve sonys and zong[e] douhtres thre, 236
Of whiche pe eldest Hector callid was.
Whiche also fer as Phebus in compas
A natural day goth his cercle aboute,
So fer of hym, with-outen any doute,
Reported was pe renoun and pe name,
be worpines, and pe noble fame.
For liche as bokis of hym specefye,
He was pe Rote and stok of cheualrie,
And of knyȝthod verray souereyn flour,
be sowrs and welle of worship & honour;
And of manhod, I dar it wel expresse,
Example and merour; & of hize prowesse,
Gynyng & grounde; & with al pis I-fere,
Wonder benigne & lawly of his chere,
Discret also, prudent and vertuous.
Of whom pe dedis & actis merveillous 244
Remembred ben of so long a-goon;
For he allone excelled euerychon,
In olde auctours rede & pe may fynde,
Of his knyȝthod how zit pe make mynde. 248
be nexte brober callid was Paris,
To whom Nature 3af at hir deuyse
Of schap & forme, bewte, and somlynes,
pat to remembre his excellent fairnes,
In his tyme, with-outen any drede,
He passed alle pat I can of rede;
And he was eke a ful manly knyzte;
But most he vsed, whan he schulde fizt, 256
In his hond for to bere * a bowe:

248. &] om. A. 249. al pis] pis al C.
256. be] pe D 1. 265. bere] beren C.
Of Priam's sons, Deiphobus, Helenus, Troilus.

Paris was a fine archer. For swiche an archer no man koude knowe,
For to seken* bothe fer and nere, 268
pat of schetyng my3t[e] ben his pere,
As it was founde, whan he had ado;
And Alisaundre he callyd was also.

Deiphobus was Priam's 3rd son,
Deiphobus was Priam's 3rd son, 272
A worji kny3t and a chiualrous,
And had in armys a ful gret renoun,
And was a man of h3e discreciouw,
And wyse of counseil, my auctour tellep bus.

Helenus, his 4th, was renownd in liberal arts.
and Helenus, his 4th, 276
Sadde and discreet, and of h3e prudence,
And was also, a man of greet science,
And renomed, per-with in special,
In alle pe artis called liberal,
For he in hem was expert ari3t. [leaf 29 b]

Troilus was the 5th son,
Troilus was the 5th son, 280
A manly man fouwen in bataille,
And desyrous his fomen for tassaille;
Oon pe best in his tyme founde;
And called was Hector pe seconnde
For his manhood, poru-out Troye bok;
Whiche in pe werre ful ofte vp-on hym tok
Of his kny3thod many h3e emprise,
As pe story here after schal deuyse.

And in his bok liche as wrt Virgile,
pe poet olde, by ful souereyn stile,
How pat pe kynge Priam had also
By Eccuba other sonys two;
And by record of pis Virgilius,
pe ton was called Pollyodorus,
Whom Priamus, in his grene* 3outhe,
Whan pe comynge was of Grekis kouthe 300

---

272. also a man] a man also A. 290. Whiche] With Inne A.
276. also a man] a man also A. 290. Whiche] With Inne A.
280. also a man] a man also A. 290. Whiche] With Inne A.
284. also a man] a man also A. 290. Whiche] With Inne A.
288. also a man] a man also A. 290. Whiche] With Inne A.
291. his] om. D 1. 291, 92 are transposed in D 1.
299. grene] tender C.
To-Troye-ward, in alle haste anoon,
With gold, tresour, and many riche stoon,
Sent hym forth besyde vn-to a kyng,
Of ful gret trust, to haue hym in kepyng
Til tyme he seye what conclusioun
þer schulde falle, after of þe town,
And eke what fyn þe werre wolde take,
þat vp-on hem þe Grekis slide make.
But þilke kyng for fals[e] couetyse
Of þis tresour, þat þe han herde deuyse,
Whan þat he sawe Fortunys variaunce
Toward Priam, & his vnhappy chaunce,
Like a tiraunt and murderere* also,
þe childes throte made kutte a-two.
And after þat, he ful cruelly
Made his men to burye hym priuely,
þat no man myȝt his tresoun vnderstonde,
Be-syde a see depe vnder þe stronde.
þe toþer sone, also as I rede
In Virgile, was callyd Ganymede,
Whom Iubiter in a forest hent
Vp-on a day as he on huntyng went,
And bare hym vp aboue þe sterres clere,
And maked hym in heuene his botelere,
Eternaly with Iuno for to wone,
In stede of Hebes, hir owne dere sone.
þe first[e] douther of kyng Priamus
Hiȝte Creusa, as seith Virgilius
In his Eneydos, sothly as it was;
And sche was weddid vn-to Eneas,
As seith þis story; and eke þis ilke Enee
Was wonderful in his natuuite:
Of whom þe fader, I fynde doute[elles],
Was in his tyme callid Anchyses,
þat hym begat on Venus þe goddes;

313. murderere] a murderere C.  318. þe] a C.
324. maked] made A, D 1.
325. Iuno] Iune A, hym D 2, hym D 1.
327. of] þat, with of written above it, neither crossed out.
Eneas was the most beautiful of men. Virgil told his story in the Eneid.

For after hir he hadde such fairnes,
pat neutre wyht* ne kowde 3et yse
A man pat was more passyng of* bewte,
Of whom pis story, touchyng his werching,
Schal 30w declare many wonder ping.
For it is he to whom so greet a loos
Virgil 3af in his Eneydos;
For he pat boke in worship of Enee
Compiled hath, liche as 3e may se,
Of his kny3thod & many strong batal
Be hym achevid or he wan Ytalle,
After ful long pat pe royal toun
Of Troye was brouxt to confusioun.
And his conquest, 3if 3e list take hede,
In pis poete 3e may be ordre rede,
And pe armys wrouxt in al his age,
And his commyng also to Cartage
Fro Troye-ward, in a litel while—
Al pis 3e may beholde[n] in Virgile.
A-nother dou3ter also, it is fou3de,
Kyng Priam had, of birthe pe secunde,
Callid Cassandra, of ful gret sadnes,
And was in manner a diuyneresse,
And in eche art had experience,
Of pingis future fully prescience
To telle a-forn what [pat] schal betyde;
Of whom pe fame sprang in costys wyde;
Whiche kepte hir chaste in virginite,
And ay in prayer * and in honeste
Sche ladde hir lyf, and in deuocioun,
After pe ritis and religiouz *
Of paganysme vsed in 3o dawes,
pe obseruauwcys kepynge of her lawes.
3ongest of al; and euer a maide clene

348. confusiona] conclusyoun A.
355. it] as it A, D 1.
363. kepte] kepeth D 1. 364. prayer] prayers C, A.
365. and] ay D 1. 366. religiouz] pe religiouz C.
Sche kepte hir sylf, and honest in hir lawe,
In-to þe hour þat Pirrus hap hir slawe:
Of schap, of forme was nueuer be Nature
Wrouȝt nor schape a fairer creature.
Eke as I fynde, þis noble kyng also
Haddeth pitty sonys, þe boke seith, & no moo,
Harly in armys and noble fouzde at al,
þat callyd wern his sonys natural.
And þei wern alle, I excepte noon,
Worþi knyȝtes and manly men echn;
And her names who so list to knowe,
He schal fynde hem* write vp-on a rowe
After þis story, everyche after other,
Begynynge first at the eldest brother.

Howe tydengys kame to kynge Priamus howe his Cite
was distroyede, and his Fadire sclyyn.¹

And whiles Priam at þe sege laye
To-fore þe castel, to gete it þif he may,
And þer aboute hap many way[e] souȝt,
þe wofil tydungys ben vn-to hym brouȝt,
How þe Grékis han take Troye toun,
And slawe his fader, worþi Lamedoun;
And how þe cite, of olde fundacioun,
Ful pitously was turned vp so douȝ;
þe worþi lordys and gentil-men echn
Take and slawe, and I-left nat on
Of hem alyve, porûge Grékis crueltie,
After þe ruyne, alasc, of her cyte;
And Exyonu, his owne suster dere,
Lad in-to exile with hir eyne clerè.
Wher-of þe kyng in hert is stonyed so,
For verray sorwe he nyste what to do,
His sodeyn wo gan hym so constreyne.

384. Begynynge] Begynne D 1, Be gynne A.
387. many] many a D 1. 398. in-to] to A.
399. Wher-of] Wherfore A.

¹ Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 32 c.
Priam weeps, He sobbeth, wepeth,* pat of mortal peyne
He pouz he gan hym siff distille,
Of hize distres, for he myzt haue no reste.
And in[to] teris he gan hym siff distille,
That for to dye was fyually his wille;
And Fortune, pat can so falsly varie,
With dreri hert he be-gan to warie,
That sche to hym was so deseuyable,
So inly cruel and * vnmerciable,
So dispitous, and so sterne of face,
So vengable and deuyode of grace:
For of envye, with a rage thouz,
Sche haf his worste of malis on hyt wonz,
And felly schewed what sche myzt[e] do;
That in his world was neuer wizt so wo,
As I suppose, of no maner age,
To rekne al his harmes and damage.
For whiche anon, in al pat euer he may,
First he chaungep all his riche array,
Trist and hevy, with dedly face pale,*
So astoned with his mortal tale,
That his desyre was to haue ben ded;
With countenauzce enclyned and his hed,
His lyf he ladde, & clad hym al in blak.
And sodeynly he pe sege brak,
And wolde as po no lenger per abyde;
But with his folke anon he gan to ride,
That pytously gan with hym* to morne,
And toward Troye attonys pei returne.
And whan pat he haf pe cite founde,
Pleyn with pe soil & evene with pe grounde,
Be hize wallys, whilom pik and longe,
I-bete douz, pat wer made so strong,
And his towres and paleys principal,
That was in byldyng* so excellent royall,

156 Priam laments the Fall of Troy, & goes back to its site. [BK. II

404. wepeth} and wepeth C, D 1, slepeth D 2.
405. a-sondre] in sundre D 1. 410. and] and so C.
412. and]and so D 1. 418. harmes] armes D 2.
429. gan with hym] with hym gan C. 432. 2nd pe] om. A.
435. byldyng] biggyng C.
So famous riche, and of gret noblesse,
He fynt al turned in-to wildernesse:
His peple slayn, his suster lad a-way—
For verray wo he nyst[e] what to say,
For þe constreynt of his aduersite,
And for his harmys þat nyl recured be.
For in þat tyme he was fully sure,
Vp-on no syde þer was no recure;
Wherfore he can not but sobbe & wepe,
And from his brest, with siges souȝt ful depe,
Broken oute, with a ded visage.
And þus, allas, in þis furios rage,
Ful pitously al his hoste and he
With-oute respite contwine dayes thre.
Til at þe last þe myrke skyes blake
Gan of her wo in party for to slake,
And þe tempest somdel gan with-drawe,
And of her wepyng blazendsche gan þe waw;
As whan þe flood of wo is ouerpassed,
þe ebbe of Ioye folwen most in haste.
To sorwen euæ, it wolde her hertis schende;
And at a terme euery wo mote ende:
For þouȝ for frendis men ay wepe & weyle,
After her deth þer may no recure vaile.
Wherfore þe kyng, after al [t]his care,
Hath souȝt a weye þe cite to repare;
And cast hym fully, ȝif it wolde be,
To make vertu of necessite;
And manfully, after al his tene,
Whan þat þe eyr gan to wexe clene
Of þe mystys of his cloudy sorwe,
And somdel adawe gan þe morwe,
Of heuynes after þe dirke nyȝt,
Chased aweye with a sonne bryȝt
Of new[e] Ioye: for ay þe fyn of wo
Mote be* gladnes whan þat sorwe is go—

460. After] But aftir D 1. 462. to] to to D 2.
463. cast] þouȝte D 1. 472. be] by C.
Priam sends for Workmen to build a new Troy. [BK. II

And so Priam after a certeyn space,  
When his sorwe gan lite & lite pace,  
And of wysdam in al his pitous smerte  
Gan prudently to plukkyn vp his herte,  
And of his eyne pe wawes gon[ne] clere,  
A-noon he wrouzt, riʒt * as ʒe schal here.

158  

Howe Kynge Priamus, aftire his sorowe was asswagede,  
Edefyede nowe Troye, and it set in ʒe same place  
where ʒe olde stode, so large & so wyde that  
tofore ne siche was nevere none it lyke.¹

The sorwe aswaged, & ʒe syʒes olde,  
By longe processe,  liche as I ʒow tolde,  
ʒis worpi kyng, callyd Priamys,  
Is in his herte nowe so desyrous,  
Vp-on ʒe pleyn, ʒat was so waste & wylde,  
So strong a touʒ of newe for to bilde,  
At his devyse a cite edefye,  
ʒat schal thassautys outerly defye  
Of alle enmyes, and his mortal foon,  
With riche tourys & wallys of hard stoon.  
And al aboute ʒe contres enviroun,  
He made seke in euery regioun  
For swiche werkemen as were corious,  
Of wyt inventyf, of castyng merveilous;  
Or* swych de coude crafte of gemetrye,  
Or wer soytyle in her fantasye;  
And for eueryche pat was good devysour,  
Mason, hewer, or crafty quareour;  
For euery wriʒt and passyng carpenter,  
ʒat may be founde, owper fer or nere;  
For swych de koude graue, grepe, or kerue,  
Or swych de weren able for to serue  
With lym or stoon, for to reise a wal,

475. his] this A, om. D 1. 478. riʒt] lyche C.  
481. callyd] I called D 2, y called D 1.  
501. reise] areise D 1.

¹ Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 33 a.
With bataillyng and crestis marcial;
Or swiche as had konuyng in her hed,
Alabastre, owper white or redde,
Or marbil graye for to pulsche it ployn,
To make it smope of veynes & of greyn.
He sent also for euery ymagour,
Bope in entaille, & euery purtreyour
Pat coude drawe, or with colour peynt
With hewes fresche, pat pe werke nat feynt;
And swiche as coude with countenaunces glade
Make an ymage pat wil neuere fade:
To counterfet in metal, tre, or soon
He sotil werke of Pigmaleoun,
Or of Appollo, he whiche as bokis telle,
In ymagerye alle oper dide excelle;
For by his crafty werkyng corious,
He towmbe he made of kyng Daryus,
Whiche Alysamandre dide on heyzt[e] reise,
Only for men schuld his fame preise,
In his conquest by Perce whan he went.
And pus Priam for euery maister sent,
For eche keruer & passynge Ioeignour,
To make knottis with many corious flour,
To sette on crestis with-Inne and with-oute
Vp-on he wal he cite rounde aboute;
Or who pat wer excellyng in practik
Of* any art callyd mekanyk,
Or hadde a name flouryng or famus,
Was after sent to come to Priamus.
For he purposeth, pis noble worpi kyng,
To make a cite most royal in byldyng,
Brod, large, & wyde, & lest it were assailed,
For werre proudly about[en] enbatailled.
And first he grounde he made to be souzt,
Ful depe and lowe, pat it faille nouzt
To make sure he fundacioun;

508. purtreyour] portratoure D 1.
525. crestis with-Inne] brestes wip many D 2.
In þe place where þe olde town
Was first ybílt, he þe wallis sette;
And he of lond many myle out mette,
Aboute in compas, for to make it large,
As þe mysters [pat] toke on hem þe charge
Devysed han þe settynge and þe syyt,
For holsom eyr to be more of detlyt.
And whan þe soille, defouled * with ruyne
Of walles old, was made pleyne as lyne,
þe werkmen gan pis cite for to founde,
Ful myȝtely with stonys square & rounde,
þat in þis world was to it noon lyche
Of werkmanyschipp, nor of bildynge riche,
Nor of craffe of corous masounry.
I can no termys to speke of gemytreye,
Wherfore as now I muste hem sette a-syde;
For dout[es] I radde neuer Euclide,
þat þe maister and þe foundour was
Of alle þat werkyn by squire or compas,
Or kepe her mesour by leuel or by lyne;
I am to rude clerly to diffyne
Or to discrive þis werk in * euery parte,
For lakyng of termys longyng to þat arte.
But* I dar wel of troupe affermyyn here,
In al þis world ne was þer neuer pere
Vn-to þis cite, and write it for a sope,
As in his* boke my mayster Guydo doth.
And þat it myȝt in prosperite,
In hyȝe honour and felicite,
From al assaut perpetually contyne,
It reysed was in worschip of Neptune,
And namyd Troye, as it was to-forn,*
Lycye þe firste þat was þoruȝ Grekis lorn.
þe lenthe was, schortly to conclude,
Thre day[es] Tourne, lyche þe latitude,
þat neuer I herd make menciousn

539. he] & D 1.  543. defouled] defoulet C.
545. defouled] defoulet C.
546. walles] wal D 2.  þe walles D 1.  552. 2nd þe] om. A.
559. in] on C.  561. But] For C.
562. pere] his pere A.  564. his] his C.
568. reysed was] was Reysed A.  569. to-forn] a forn C.
Of swiche another of fundacioun,
So huge in compas nor of swiche larges,
Nor to counte so passyng of fayrnes,
So edyfied or lusty to pe syt.
And, as I rede, pe walles wern on hi3te
Two hundrid cubites, al of marbil gray,
Maskowed with-oute for sautis and assay ;
And it to make more plesaunt of delyt,
A-mong pe marbil was alabaster white
Maynt in pe walles, rounde pe touw aboute,
To make it schewe with-Inne and with-oute
So fresche, so riche, and so delitable,
pat it alone was incomperable
Of alle cites pat any mortal man
Sawe euer 3it, sithe pe world began.
And at the corner of euery wal was set
A crowne of golde with riche stony ys fret,
pat schone ful brift ageyn pe somne schene ;
And euery tour bretexted was so clene
Of chose stoon, pat wer nat fer a-sondre,
pat to beholde it was a verray wonder.
per-to pis cite compassed enviroun,
Hadde sexe gatis to entre in-to pe touw :
pe first of al &strengest eke with al,
Largest also and most principal,
Of my3ty bildynge allone peer[e]les,
Was by pe kyng callyd Dardanydes ;
And in story, lyche as it is fownde,
Tymbria was named pe seconnde ;
And pe pridde callyd Helyas ;
pe fourte gate hi3t also Cethas ;
pe fyfte Troiâna ; pe syxte Anthonydes,
Strong and my3ty bope in werre & pes,
With square toures set on euery syde.
At whos corners, of verray pompe & pride,
pe werkmen han, with sterne & fel visages,
Of riche entaille, set vp gret ymages,
Great guns are set in every tower.

Wrouȝt out of ston, þat neuer ar like to fayle,
Ful coriously enarmed for batayle.
And þorȝ þe wal, her fomen for to lette,
At euery tour* wer grete gunnyys sette,
For assaut and sodeyn aventurys;
And on* tourettis wer reysed vp figurys
Of wylde bestis, as beris and lyouns,
Of tigers, bores, of serpents and dragouns
And hertis eke, with her brode homes,
Olyfaunteys and large vnicornes,
Buglis, bolys, and many grete grifoun,
Forged of brasse, of copur and latouw,
þat cruelly by sygnes of her facys
Vp-on her foon made fel manacys.

Barbicans

And port-ecolys are made.

Barbykans and bolewerkys huge,
A-fore þe toun made for hiȝe refuge,
ȝiffe nede were, erly and eke late;
A[nd] portecolys stronge at euery gate,
þat hem þar nat noon assailyng charge;
And þe lowkis þikke, brode, and large,
Of þe gatys al of ȝoten bras.
And with-Inne þe myȝty schittyng was
Of strong yrne barres square and rounde,
And gret barre[r]ys picched in þe grounде,
With huge cheynes forged for diffence,
Whiche nolde breke for no violence,
þat hard it was þorȝ þem for to wyyne.
And euery hous, þat was bilt with-Inne,
Euery paleys* & euery mancioun,
Of marbil werne þorȝ[-out] al þe toun,
Of crafty bildyng & werkyng most roial.
And þe heȝt was of euery wal
Sixty cubites from þe grounde acountid;
And þer was non þat oþer hap surmountid
In þe cite, but of on heȝt alyche,
In verry sope, bope of pore and riche,
pat it was harde of hiue estat or lowe
Hous or palys asounder for to knowe,
So egaly of tymbre and of stoon
Her housis wern reysed euerychon.

And if I schulde rehersen by and by
pe korve knottes by crafte of masoury,
pe fresche enbowyng, with vergis rizt as linys,
And pe vowsyng ful of babewynes,*
pe riche koynyng,* pe lusty tablementis,
Vynnettis reynyngge in pe casementis—
bour pe termys in englisch wolde ryme,
To rekne hem alle I haue as now no tyme,
Ne no langage pyked for pe nonys,
pe sotil Ioyynyng to tellen of pe stonyngs,
Nor how pe putten in stede of morter,
In pe Ioynturys copur gilt ful clere,
To make hem Ioyne by leuel & by lyne,
Among pe marbil freschely for to schyne
Agein pe sozne, whan his schene lyzt
Smote in pe gold, pat was bornyd bri^t,
To make pe werke gletere on euery syde.

And of pe* toun pe streis large & wyde
Wer by crafe so prudently prouided,
And by werkemen sette so and deuided,
pat holsom eyr amyddis my^t enspire
Erly on* morwe to hem pat it desyre ;
And zephirus, pat is so comfortable
For to norysche pinges vegetable,
In tyme of zere, poru3-oute euery strete,
With sugred flavour, so lusty & so swete,
Most plesantly in pe eyr gan smyte,
pe Cyte^eyns only to deiltye ;
And with his brethe hem to recomfort,
Whan pei list walke hem siluen to dispersh.

And poru3 pe toun, by crafy purviaunce,

654. vowsaying housyng A—babewynes] bakewynes C, A, bake
vynys D 1.
655. koynyng] kaxenyng C, kopurnyngge D 2, copurnynge D 1.
668. pe] C. 672. ou] on pe C.
By gret avys and discret ordynaunce,
By compas cast, & squared out by squires,
Of pulsched marbil vp-on strong pilleris,
Deuised wern, long[e], large, and wyde,

In pe frountel of euer streitis syde,
Fresche alures with lusty hize pynacles,
And moustryng outward riche tabernacles,
Vowted a-bone like reclinatories,
that called werne deambulators,
Men to walke to-gydre tweine & tweyne,
To kepe hem drie whan it dide reyne,
Or hem to saue from tempest, wynde, or ponder,
3if pat hem list schrowde hem silue per-vnder.

All houses are coverd with lead,
And many gargoyl & many hidous hed
With spoutis poruȝ, & pipes as pe ouȝt,
From pe ston-werke to pe canel rauȝt,
Voyding filpes low-in-to pe grounde,
poruȝ gratis percid of yren percid rounde ;
pe streitis paude bope in lengpe & brede,
In cheker wyse with stony white & rede.

Each trade
In any lond deuise or rekene can,
Kyng Priamus, of hize discrecioun,
Ordeyned hath to dwellyn in pe touȝ,
And in streitis, seneryd her and zonder,
Eueryche from ojer to be sette a-sonder,
pat pei myȝt, for more comodite,
Eche be hym* silfe werke at liberte :

Howe the goldesmythes, and athisre, every crafft ware
dispoyse in strete by strete by hem selff.1

Gold-smythes first, & riche Iowellers,
And by hem silf crafty browdereris,
Wevers also of wolne & of lynye,
Of cloth of gold, damaske, and satyn,

683. or] & D 1.  700. 1st percid] parchid D 1.
709. for] for the A.  710. hym] hem C.

1 Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 34 a.
Of welvett, cendel, & double samyt eke, And every clothe that men list to seke; Smypes also, that koude forge wele Swerdis, pollex, and speris scharp of stele, Darts, daggeris, for to mayne & wounde, And quarel hedis scharp and square [y-]grounde. ßer wer also crafty armoureris, [leaf 28 c] Bow[y]ers, and fast[e] by flecheris, And swyche as koude make schaftes pleyn, And other eke pat dide her besy peyn For ße werre to make [also] trappruris, Bete baners and royal cote armvris, And by devise, standerdis & penowns, And for ße felde fresche & gay gytoouns. 728 And every crafte pat may rekned be, To telle shortlly, was in ßis cite. 730

Howe by grete crafft ther was a Ryvere called Zanctus conveyede thorough ße Cyte. 1

And þoruß ßis touß, so riche & excellent, In þe myddes a large riuer went, Cansynge to hem ful gret commodite; þe whiche on tweyne hap partid þe cite, Of cours ful swyft, with fresche stremyes clere, And hit[e] Xanctus, as Guydo dop vs lere. 736 And as I rede, þat vp-on þis* flood, On eche-asyde many mylle stood, Whan nedë was her grayn & corn to grindë, Hem to sustene, in story as I fynde. 740 ßis riuer eke, of fysche ful plenteuous, Devided was by werkmen corious
So craftely, þoruß castyng soureyne,

716. every] euerich A.
725. to make also] also to make D 1.
736. Xanctus] Xanitus A. 737. pis] þat C.
738. many] many a D 2, D 1.

1 Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 34 b.
The Supply of Water to New Troy. Its Citizens. [BK. II

The water from the river Xanthus is taken by pipes thru New Troy, to wash the streets, and carry off all filth, so that no pestilence may breed there. (The Tiber was treated like this in Rome.)

Pat in his course pe stremys att eyne 744
For to areche, as Guydo doth coniecte, By archis strong his cours to reflecte 748
Poru3 condut pipis, large & wyde with-al, By certeyn meatis artificial, 748
Pat it made a ful purgacioun
Of al ordure & fylpes in pe town,
Waschyn g pe streysys as pei stod a rowe,
And pe goteris in pe erpe lowe,
Pat in pe cite was no filpe sene;
For the canal skoured was so clene,
And deuyed in so secre wyse,
Pat no man myt espien nor deuyse
By what engyn pe filpes, fer nor ner,
Wern born a-wey by cours of pe ryuer—
So courtly euer gyng was cured.
Wher-by pe town was utterly assured
From engenderyng of al corrupciouw,
From wikked eryr & from infecciourc,
Pat causyn ofte by her violence
Mortalite and gret pestilence.
And by example of pis flode pe r was
Made Tibe at Rome, and wrou^t by Eneas,
pe which also departeth Rome on two,
Myn auctor seith, I not wher it be so.

Howe kynge Pryam made Citezens of foreyns, And [gaf] everich of hem certeyne grounde to belde vpon.1

For inhabitants K. Priam gets folks
And to enhabite pis royal chef cite,
Kyng Priam hap aboute in pe contre [leaf 28 a]
Made for to serche, with al his hool entent,
And in provinces pat werne adjacent,
In borwys, townys, and in smale villages,
I-gadred out of al maner ages,
And of thropis folkys ful diners,
And swiche as wern vacaunt & dispers,

746. D 1 om. r in for. 758. pe] pat D 2.
1 Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 34 c.
BK. II] The Inhabitants, & manly Sports & Games in New Troy. 167

Aboute Troye in any * regioun,
He made these strangers citizens of New Troy.
He maked hath to entre in-to pe toun
Gret multitude, what of song & olde,
It to enhabite, as pe han herde me tolde.
And hem peat worm afore to hym foreyns,
He hath in Troye maked cit[e]3eysns,
Ful discretly, liche as it is founde.
And whan pei gan with peple [to] abounde,
Kyng Priamus, of hize affeccioun,
After pe bildyg of his my3ty toun,
Hap in his hert cau3t a fantasye
His newe cite for to magnyfye.
And it to put pe more in remembraunce,
He cast fully to do some obseruauce*
To my3ty Mars, sterne & ferse of hewe ;
And specialy with certeyn plei[e]s newe,
On horse and fote, in many sondry wyse,
To 3eue his men in kny3thod excersyse,
Evryche to putten oper at assaye
In iustis, bordis, and also in tornay,
To preve her force whan pei happe mete.
be whiche pleies wer fondid first in Crete ;
And in pat lond, of hize & lowe estat,
In Martys honour pei wer dedicate.
And in palestre, at wakys on pe ny3t,
Wern [o]per pleies men tassay her my3t,
Only on fote with many sotil poynyt ;
And some of hem wer nakyd & anoynt ;
To wyynne a prys* pei dide her ful entent.
And pei was founde, by clerkys ful prudent,
Of pe ches pe pleye most glorious,
Whiche is so sotil and so meruelous,
bat it wer harde pe mater to discuryse ;
For pou3e a man stodied al his lyve,
He schal ay fynde dyvers fantasyes
Of wardys makyng, & newe iuparties,*

785. new 3 D 1. 790. obseruauence] obseruauces C.
798. pe] om. D 1. 801. palestre] paleste A.
805. a prys] aprys C. 808. 1st so] om. A.
812. iuparties] imparties C.
But Guido and Jacques de Vitry differ about the origin of chess.

De Vitry says it came from Chaidea to Greece.

Of Dice and other play in New Troy. Of Comedies.

Of Dice and other play in New Troy. Of Comedies.

But Iacobus de Vitriaco is contrarie of oppyniou:

For, like as he makyth mencioun,
And affermeth fully in his avys,
How Philometer, a philysofre wys,
Vn-to a kyng, to stynte his cruelte,
Fond first pis pleie & made it in Calde;
And in-to Greece from pense it was sent.
Also in Troye, by gret avysement,
Pe pleye was first founde of dees & tables,
And of castyng pe chaunces deceyvables,
Pat han be cause ofte of gret debat:
For 3if pat on be nowe fortunat
To wynne a while be favou of his chance,
Or he be war, with* sodeyn variaunce,
Vnhappely he is putte abak,
And anoþer, pat stood vp-on pe wrak,
And of losse was plounged* in distresse,
Pei reysed han vn-to hyþe ryches;
Gladnes of on is to another rage—
Adevaunte, hasard, and passage;
3if on haue Ioye, anoþer suffereþ wo,
Liche as pe bonys reyne to and fro;
An huandrid sythie in a day pei varie,
Now blaundisschyng, & now pei be contrarie;
No man with hem assured is in Ioye.
And first also, I rede, pat in Troye
Wer song & rad lusty fresche comedies,
And oper dites, pat called be tragedies.
And to declare, shorthly in sentence,
Of boþe two pe final difference:
A comedie hath in his gynnyng,
At prime face, a maner compleynynge,

825. first [founde] founde first A. 830. with] be C.
833. plounged] plounged C.
836. Adevaunte] Ademauit A.
And afterward endeth in gladness;
And it pe dedis only doth expres
Of swiche as ben in pouert plouged lowe;
But tragodie, who so list to knowe,
It begynneth in prosperite,
And endeth euer in aduersite;
And it also doth pe conquest trete
Of riche kynges and of lordys grete,
Of my3ty men and olde conquerou[ri]s,
Which by fraude of Fortunys schowris
Ben ouercast & whelmed from her glorie.

Of a Theatyre stondynge in pe princypale paleys of
Troye, declarenge the falle of Pryncys & othere.1

And whilom pus was halwed pe memorie
Of tragedies, as bokis make mynde,
When pei wer rad or songyn, as I fynde,
In pe theatre per was a smal auter
Amyddes set, pat was half circuler,
Whiche in-to pe Est of custom was directe;
Vp-on pe whiche a pulpet was erecte,
And per-in stod an aw[n]cien poete,
For to reherse by rethorikes swete
pe noble dedis, pat wer historial,
Of kynges, princes for a memorial,
And of pes olde, worpi Emperours,
pe grete empris eke of conquerours,
And how pei gat in Martis hige honour
pe laurer grene for fyn of her labour,
pe palme of kny^thod disservid by [old] date,
Or Parchas made hem passyn in-to fate.
And after pat, with chere and face pale,
With stile enclyned gan to turne his tale,
And for to synge, after al her loss,
Ful mortally pe stroke of Antropos,
And telle also, for al her worpihede,

1 Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 35 a (misplaced after line 868).
How Plays were sung and acted in Troy of old. [BK. II

and how thru false Fortune they ended their lives in sorrow, 

How pitously þei made her mortal ende
þoruz fals Fortune, þat al þe world wil schende,

And howe þei fyn of al her worpines
Endid in sorwe and [in] hize tristesse,*

By compassyng of fraude or* fals tresoun,
By sodeyn mordre or vengance of poysoun,

Or conspiringe of fretyng fals envye,
How vnwarly [þat] þei dide dye;
And how her renoun and her hize fame
Was of hatrede sodeynly made fame;

And how her honour drowe vn-to decline;
And þe meschef of her vnhappy fyne;
And how Fortune was to hem vnswete—
Al þis was tolde and rad of þe poete.

And whil þat he in þe pulpit stood,
With dedly face al devoise of blood,
Singinge his dites, with muses al to-rent,
Amydde þe theatre schrowdid in a tent,
þer cam out men gastful of her cheris,
Disfigurid her facis with viseris,
Pleying by signes in þe peoples siȝt,
þat þe poete songon hath on hiȝt;
So þat þer was no maner discordauce
Atwen his dites and her contenauce:
For lik as he aloft[e] dide expresse
Words of Ioye or* of heuynes,
Meving & cher, byneþe of hem pleying,
From point to point was alwey answering—
Now trist, now glad, now hevy, & [now] liȝt,
And face chaunged with a sodeyn siȝt,
So craftily þei koude hem transfigure,
Conformying hem to þe chaunte[e]pure,
Now to syngge & sodeinly to wepe,
So wel þei koude her observanzes kepe;
And þis was doon in April & in May,

894. of] & D 2. 908. or] and C. 911. &] om. D 1.
917. was] om. A.
Whan blosmys new, boþe on busche & hay,*
And flouris fresche gyane for to springe;
And þe briddis in þe wode sygne
With lust supprised of þe somer sonne,
Whan þe[se] pleies in Troye wer begonne,
And in theatre halowed and y-holde.
And þus þe ryyt [of] tragedies olde,
Priamus þe worþi kyng began.
Of þis mater no more telle I can.

Howe kenge Priam, aftire his Cite was parformede,
ordeynede his paleys princypal, callyd Ylyøwn.¹

But I wil furthe of þis story wryte,
And on my maner boistusly endyte,
How Priamus was passyng dilligent,
Riþt desyrous, and inwardly fervent,
þif he myȝt, among his werkes* alle,
To bilde a paleys and a riche halle,
Whiche schuld[e] ben his chose chef dongon,
His royal se and souereyn mansioun.
And whan he gan to þis werke aproche,
He made it bilde hiȝe vp-on a roche,
It for tassure in his fundacioun,
And callyd it þe noble Ylyøvn.
þe siȝt of whiche, iustly circuler,
By compas cast, rounde as any spere—
And who þat wold þe content of þe grounde
Trewly acounten of þis place rounde,
In þe theatre first he moste* entre,
Takyng þe lyne þat kereþ þoruz þe centre,
By gemetrie, as longeth to þat art,
And trebliþd it, with þe sevenþe part,
He fynde myȝt, by experience,
þe mesour hool of þe circumference,

¹ Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 35 b.
Priam's Palace is to be of marble, with high towers, and walls carved and painted,

What lond also, pleynly eke with al,* Contened was with-Inne þe strong[e] wal*—
þe creste of whiche, wher it lowest was, Hadde in hiȝt ful sixe hundred pas,
Bild of marbil, ful royal & ful strong, And many other riche stoon a-mong;
Whos touris wern reysed* vp so hïȝe, þat þei raȝt almost to * þe skye;
þe werk of whiche no man myȝt amende.
And who þat list by grecis vp ascende, He myȝtfe seen in his inspeccioun
To þe boundis of many regioun
And provincys þat stode rund[e]* aboute.
And þe wallys, with-Inne and with-oute, Endelong with knottis graue clene,
Depeynt with azour, gold, jinopre, & grene,
þat verraily, whan þe sonȝe schon,
Vp-on þe gold meynut among þe stoon,
þei ȝaf a lîȝt, with-outen any were,
As Phebus dop in his mydday spere—
The werk of wyndowe, and [eche] fenestral,
Wrouȝt of berel and of clere cristal.
And anyddys of þis Ylyoun,
So fresche, so riche of fundacioun,
Whiche clerkys ȝit in her bokis preyse,
Kyng Pryam made an halle for to reys, Excellyng alle in bewte & in strenþhe
þe latitude acordyng with þe lengthe.
And of marbil outeward was þe wal;
And þe tymbre, most nobil in special,
Was halfe of cedre, as I reherse can,
And þe remenant of þe riche eban,
Whiche most is able, as I dar specefy, With stoon to Ioyne by craft of carpentrie;
For þei of tymbre haue þe soureynte.

949, 950. pleynly eke with al transposed with with-Inne þe stronge wal C.
951. many other] many a nobir D 1. 955. reysed] reysen C.
952. raȝt] raȝte D 1—to] vn to C. 959. in his] by cler D 2.
964. eche] of iche A, eke D 1. 972. 2nd so] and A.
And for to telle of pis Eban tre,  
Liche in bokys sothly as I fynde,  
It cometh out of Ethiope and Ynde,  
Blak as is get; and it wil wexe anoon,  
When it is korve, harde as any stoon,  
And euermore last[en] and endure,  
And nat corrupte with water nor moysture.  
And of [t]his halle, fer per to difFyne,  
With stonys square by leuel and by lyne  
It pavid was, with gret diligentce  
Of masownry and passyng excellence.  
And al aboue, reysed was a se,  
Ful coriously of stonys and perre,  
bat callid was, as chefe and principal,  
of pe regne pe sete moste royal.  
To fore whiche was set by gret delyty  
A borde of Eban and of yvor whyt,  
So egaly Ioyned and so clene,  
bat in pe werk per was no rifte sene;  
And sessions wer made on euerly syde,  
Only pe statis by ordre to deuyde.  
Eke in pe halle, as it was couenable,  
On eche party was a dormant * table  
of evor eke, and pis eban tre;  
And euyn ageyn pe kynges royal see,  
In pe party bat was per-to contrarie,  
I-reised was by many crafty stayre,  
Hiȝe in pe halle, in pe tother syt,  
Riȝt as * lyne in pe opposyt,*  
Of pured metal and of stonys clere  
In brede & lengthe, a ful rich auter.  
On whiche per stood, of figure & visage  
Of masse gold, a wonderful ymage  
To ben honoured in pat hige sete,
The Golden Statue of Jupiter in King Priam's Hall. [BK. II

Only in honour of Iubiter þe grete.
And þe statue, for al his huge wetgte,
Fiftene cubites comple was of heigfte,
A crowne of gold hitþe vp-on his hed,
With* heunkenly saphirs & many rube red
Fret envoiroun, with other stonys of Ynde;
And among wer medled, as I fynde,
Whyte perlis massyf, large, & rounde;
And for most chefe al dirkenes to confounde,
Was a charbocle, kyng of stonys alle,
To recounfort & gladyn al þe halle,
And it tenlumyn in þe blake nyȝt
With þe freschenhes of his rody lijt.
þe valu was þer-of in-estimable,
And þe riches pleynly incomperable;
For þis ymage, by diuisiouw,
Was of schap and* proporcioun
From hed to foot so maisterly entayled,
þat, in a point, þe werkeman hap nat failed
It to parforme by crafty excellence.*
Whom Priamus, with drede and reuerence,
Honoured hath aboue þe goddys alle,
In al meschef to hym to clepe & calle;
For in hym was his hool affeccioun,
His souereyn trust and deuocioun,
His hope also, and his affyaunce,
His heile, his Ioye, and his assurauce;
And þis welfare and prosperite
He hath commytted to his deite,
Wenyng in hert wonder sekerly,
To be assured from al meschef þer-by,
And diffended in eche aduersite,
And hold his regne in hige Felicite,
And in honour continually to schyne,
Whil Iubiter, porþ his power diynye,
Hym and his hath in proteccioun—

1026. for] om. D 1. 1034. and] and of C.
1037. excellence] excellency C.
1044. heile] helthe A, helþe D 2, D 1. 1052. his] the A.
Priam lives quietly in New Troy till Malice infects him. 175

bis was his trust and ful oppinioun.
And þus þis werke finally achieved,
Wher-of Priam, with Ioye ful releuen,
þat he his cite and noble Ylyoun
Hath fully brouȝt vn-to perfeccioun,
Liche his entent, whan þat he began.
And þus Priam, þis kyng, þis worpi man,
Ful many day in [Þ]his newe Troye,
With his liges lad his lyf in Ioye,
Wher I hym leue in his royal sete
Souereynly regnynge in quiete,
Procedyng forpe, þif þe liste to here,
Vn-to þe effect anoon of my materre.

Howe kynge Priamus, aftire that he had parfytylye
parformede and ymade his Cyte, by þe serpente Of
Envye was stirede and Inwardly mevede to by-
gyne A newe weren vpone the Grekes.1

O hatful harm, whiche most is for to drede!
Kyrolled so long, o spark of old hatred,
Rote of debate, grouzale of envie and Ire,
With* new[e] flawme hertis for to fyre!
O grayn of malys, causer of al offence!
O rancour rustid of inpacience,
Whiche hast of new made festrid soris smerte!
Whan þou art onys rakid in a herte,
Whiche for diadyn of mercy maist nat lete
A man no while to lyuen in quiete,
But delvist vp by malis many-fold
Debatis new, þat biried wern of olde,
And falsely quiest strives to restore—
þenvious serpent þat was slaw of 3ore,
Whiche fellly hath, þis addre envyous,
Out of his rest awakyd Priamus,
And with his venym, so persyng & so ille,

1054. his] the A. 1055. þus] om. A.
1061. many] many a A.
1067. most is] is most D 2—for] om. D 1.
1 Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 36 a.
Priam summons his Men to fight the Greeks.

Malice stirs: Priam to take vengeance on the Greeks.

Made him* wery to lyuen in tranquille,
And mevid hym, of his iniquite,
Vp-on Greeks avenged for to be.
For wher-as he in pes held his reigne,
With his legis in Ioye souereigne,
With-oute* any or any perturbaunce,
His serpent hath with new[e] remembraunce,
With-out avis, or discreet arest,
So hoot a flawme kyndeled in his brest
Of old envie with fresche rancour meynt,
Bat likly is never to be queynte.
For Priam now in his entencioun
Cast & compaseth, revolvyng vp & doun,
How strong he was of riches & meyne,
How noble & myjty was also his cite,
And abundaunte, schortly to conclude,
Bope of plente and of multitude,
Of men of armys and of chevalrye.
Whiche sterid hym to han a fantasye,
Alas þe while, to his vnhappy chaunce,
Þat to be ded he take wil vengaunce
Vp-on hisfoon; þe fire of hot envie
So brent hym inward by mallencolye,
Stondyng in purpos, þat no man chaunge may,
Of his damages avenged be som day,*
And of Inuries þat þei on hym han wrouȝt.
And whan þat he had a tyme souȝt
To his purpos moste conuenient,
A-noon he hath for alle his lordis sent,
And his knyȝtes callyd euerychon
To com in hast, excused was nat on,
Namly, of hem pat wern of hige degre.
And þei obeying, with alle humilite,
His biddynge holly, & made no delaye,
To com echon ageyn a certeyn day;

1099. abundaunte] habondance D 1.
1108. day] weye C.
1114. in hast is repeated and underscored in C.
And his sones wern also* present,
Ector except, *pat was *pat tyme absent
In pe strong and my3ty regionz
Of Panonye,* whiche in subieccioun
Kyng Priam helde, þorug his worþines;
And to amende þinges and redres,
Ector was goon in-to þis Panonye,
Certeyn causys for to iustefye,
He wouldn't punish folk
when he could reform abuses.
In J)e strong and my^ty regions
Of Panonye, whiche in subieccioun
Kyng Priam helde, f^r^u^r^h^r^i^s^ w^o^r^f^i^n^e; 1132
To setten hem in quiete and in rest.
For he was ay so iust and so prudent,
So wel avised and so pacient,
And so demenyd in his gouernauwce,
He wouldn't punish folk
when he could reform abuses.
In his resoun he þou3t[e] for þe best,
To amende þinges and redres;
Ector was goon in-to þis Panonye,
Certeyn causys for to iustefye,
He wouldn't punish folk
when he could reform abuses.

Howe kynge Priamus in opyne declarethe þe harmes
done to his progenye & hym by the Grekes.1

"O worþi lordis, þat ben [now] here present,
Feithful and trew of hert & of entent,
Is nat vnknowe to your discreciouw
 þe grete damagis and oppressioun
Whiche þat Grekiþ han vp-on vs wrou3t,
With-oute cause, for a þing of nou3t,

1119. also] per also C. 1122. Panonye] Pananye C.
1138. ry3t] any þing C. 1141. As] And as C.
1147. Is] It is D 1. 1149. þat] þe D 1.

1 Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 36 b

TROY BOOK.
Priam says they must remember this other day, as who seith but late,
that, as I trowe, so new is 3it pe date,
that it is freshe remembrid in your mynde,
Vn-to your blood zif that 3e be kynde.
For I suppose, no forgetilnes
May put a-way pe mortal hevines
Of harmys olde, whiche ay renewe ageyn
In my memorie, I seie 3ow in certeyn;
And as I trow, pleyly in your pouzt,
that euere is grene, and ne dieth nouzt,
How pei haue slayn oure progenytours
that whilom wern so noble werreours,
Oure cite brent and brouzt vn-to ruyne,
And robbid it, falsely by ravyne,
And turned al in-to wyldernes,
And in-to Grece caried oure riches,
My fader slayn, that hi3[e] Lamedoun,
With-out[e] cause or occasionz,
And rauxt from hym his gold & his tresour,
Whiche me semeth is a foul* errour.
We my3t of r3t amendis wel chalenge,*
And desyren vs iustly to revenge
A-for[e] goddis of so hixe offence,
Only of resouz and of conscience.
And passyng alle her mortal cruelte,
that is o ping most inly greveth me,
that pei vngodly, ageyn[e]s gentilnes,
No rewarde havyng to pe worzpines,
To pe birth, nor pe royal blood
Of hir that is so fayr and eke so gode—
I mene my suster, callyd Exyoura—
Whom pei, allass, to her confusiousz,
Disuse and kepe nat lik hir degre,
From day to day in dishoneste;
Wher-boruz hir honour & hir name is lorn,
Considryng nat of what stook sche was born.
For þei ar blynde for to taken hede,
Or to aduerte þe rote of hir kynred,
Of surquidye þei be so indurat.
And sith þat sche, of* so hire estat,
I-tretid is, liche as þe may se,
I suppose other, þat ben of lowe degre,
Gouerned ben ful dishonestly;
For þe may þinke and deme trew[e]ly
How wyvis, maidenes, in þat companye,
With oþer eke þat ben of þour alye,
I-haunted ben and vsed at her lust;
On þe Grekis I haue no better trust,
For þei ne spare nouther blood nor age.
And þus þei lyue in torment & seruage,
With-out routhe, mercy, or pite,
þe whiche toucheþ you as wel as me;
And as me semeth, of equite and riȝt,
þe ouȝt echon with al þour ful[e] myȝt,
Of þe wronges with whiche þe ben offendid,
To seke a weye it myȝt[e] ben amendid:
And þat we werke, alle be on assent,
And procede, liche to oure entent,
On her malis and cursed cruelte,
Alle attonys avengid for to be;
And þat we be in hert[e], wille, and pouȝt [leaf 31 a]
Of on acorde, and ne varie nouȝt,
For þan our force is doublid & pouste.
For riȝt and resoun & good equite
Require vengaunce on hym þat døþ þe wrong,
þouȝt it so be* þat it abyde longe.
I trust also on goddis riȝtwiseþes,
þat þei schal help oure harmes to redres,
And fauour us in oure Innocence,
To chastise hem þat wrouȝt[e] þis offence.
Also þe knowe howe þat oure cite
Is strong and myȝty,* & of grete surte,
Priam advises asking the Greeks for Redress.  

No city is so strong as Troy.

Trojans have brave knights, much store, and many friends.

Now is the time for vengeance.

Delay is dangerous.

But they must not be too hasty.

They'd better ask the Greeks to give em redress before resorting to force.

With touris hiz and walles for þe werre,  
þat also fer as schyneþ sonne or sterre,  
þer is noon lyk, for to rekne al,  
þat may in force ben þer-to perigal.  
3e knowe also, as it schal be founde,  
With cheualrie how þat we abounde,  
Expert in armys and of olde assaied,  
þat for drede neuer wer dismayed;
And we haue plente also of vitaille,  
Of frendschip eke, þat ne wol not faile  
With al her myst to don to vs socour.  
Wherfore I rede, with-oute more soiour,  
To sette vp-on, sithen we be able,  
And tyme is now, me semeth, couenable;  
For manhod bit make no delaye
Priam suggests sending Antenor to demand Hesione. 181

Pan oure quarel, devoide of wilfullenes, 1260
I-roted is vp-on sikernes.

And 3if þat we of her gret offence
Axe amendis first in pacience,
God and Fortune, I hope, wilne assent,
In þe ende we schal vs nat repente;
And it is bet by pes to han redresse,
Pan gynne a werre with-out avisesesse.
Here-fore, lat vs our woful aventure
Paciently suffren and endure,

And in our port be but humable & pleyn,
Vp-on answer what þat þei wil seyn.
For þou3 so be, in myn entencioun,
I meved am by iust occasioun
To procede of ire to vengance,
I wil al put out of remembrance,
And lete slyde be forgetilnes
Þe wrongis don, & voide al hevines
To-ward Grekis, and of hem axe no more,
But þat þei wil Exyona restore
To vs ageyn, whiche is to me most derre,
Only to stint al debat and werre.
For þe surpluse of our mortal Ewre
We schal dissymvle, & prudently endure
Our harmys olde for þe in pacience,

3if þe acoede [vn-]to my sentence:
Seȝthe her-vp-on, as þe ben avised;
For 3if þis sond be of hem despised,*
And þat hem list to resoun nat obeye,
Pan we may iustly seke anoder weye
To han redres, for now þer is no more,

Saue I purpose to sendyn Anthenor,
Whiche is a man* discrete and avisee,
And specialy in mater of trete,
For he is bothe wyse and eloquent,
As þe wel knowe, & passyngly prudent."

1276. voide] a voide A.
1286. despised] refused C. 1291. a man] aman C.
Howe kynge Priam, by the advyce of his lorde, sente
Anthenore into Grece for restituycoun of Exioun.¹

And whan pe kyng had told his tale anon
To his counseyl pei consent euerychon,
\[1296\]
Pat* Anthenor pis Ioure vndirtake.
And he in hast gan hym redy make,
With-oute abode, and nolde nat denye
To take on hym pis embassetrye,
\[1300\]
Wel avysed in his discresiouyn,
Toke or he went informacioun
From poynt to poynt of pis gret[e] charge;
For he hym cast to stondyn at his large,
With-oute error, as he pat koude his gode;
For he pe effect ful pleynly vndirstode;
For euery jing he prented in his pouȝt
Or pat he went, and forgat riȝt nouȝt;
For of a word he cast hym nat to faile. \[leaf 31 c\]
To schip he goth and began to sayle,
And in schort tyme, he & his companye,
Arived ben vp in Thesalye,
\[1312\]
At a cite callyd Mynusyus,
Wher by fortune was kyng Pelleus
be same tyme; & Anthenor anoon
goest to him,
Vn-to pe kyng pe riȝt[e] weye is goon.
\[1316\]
Of whom he was, as Guydo hap conseived,
At prime face benignely receyved);
But whan he knew pe cause of his * commayng,
He bad in hast, with-oute mor tariyng,
To Anthenor, with a fel visage,
Schortly to seyn pe effecte of his message.
Antenor is
T
his Troyan knyȝt, astonyed neuer-adel,
But ful demvr and avised wel,
\[1324\]
Nat to hasty nor rakel for to seyn,
But abidyenge with loke and face pleyn,
To Pelleus, with a manly chere,
Seide in effect riȝt þus as ȝe schal here: 1328 Antenor says King Priam
“Þe worþi kynge, calld Priamus,
So wyse, so noble, so manly, and famus,*
And of knyȝtþod passyng excellent,
Hath first to þou in goodly wyse sent,
Out of Troye, his royal chefte cite,
His ful entent & message her by me,
As I schal seyn to þou in wordis pleyn,
If it so be þat ðe nat disdeyne
Paciently to seyen audience.
Remembrýng first in ȝour aduertence
Of þe harmys nat ful longe a-go,
And þe wrongis þat ȝe wronged also,
Ful cruelly, with other eke of þoures,
In Troye lond on his progenitours,
What Inuries and distruccicoun,
Causeles, with-oute occasyoun,
ȝe schewed haue of verray cruelte,
And merciles distroyed his cite,
Slayn his fader, named Lamedoun,
And his cite brent and bete douz,
And nouþer left paleis, hous, nor tour,
And lad a-wey his riches and tresour,
And nouþer spared, as I reherse can,
In ȝour slauȝter womman, child, nor man,
þer myȝt[e] non from ȝour swerd astert.
And þat o þing þat most he háþ* at hert,
þat his suster, called Exyouz,
Is hold and kepte of kynge Thelamoun,
Dishonestly, ageyn al genterye,
To gret dishonour & gret velynge
Of her kynred, liche as ȝe may se,
Tretid nor cheresschid lyk to hir degre!
Wherfor, sith* ȝe be so wyse a knyȝt,
ȝe ouȝte aduerte and to haue a synȝt
To swyche þinges, of iust affeccioun,

1330. manly and] worþī D 1—famus] so famus C.
1354. most he háþ] he háþ most C.
Antenor demands Hesione. K. Peleus orders him off. [BK. II]

And considre in your discreccion,
Of gentilnes and of equite,
How swiche wrongis must amendid be.

So K. Priam, who deserves praise,

asking only this little matter,
that you Greeks restore him his sister Hesione.

And conside in your discrecioun,
Of gentilnes and of equite,
How swiche wrongis must amendid be.

K. Peleus angrily

threatens and despies Priam,

and orders Antenor to go at once.

1374. knȝytly] kyngly D 1.  1382. of] and C.
1383. so] of D 2.  1384. his] is D 1.
1385. new T D I—hym pleynty] pleynty hym C.
1396. schulde voide] voide shulde D 1.
And he anoon went out of his synt;
And in al hast, he and his meyne,
With-oute aboord, taken han þe se,
And gan to sailen oute of Thessalye,
And in her wye so fast[æ] þei hem hyȝe,
þat in schort* tyme þei arived be
Vp at Salempne, a myȝty strong cite,
Wher be fortune in þis royal toun,
þis Antenor fond kyng Thelamoun,
And to his palys he hap þe wey[e] nome.  [leaf 32 a]
And first, I fynde, whan þat* he was come,
He was accepte[d] vn-to his presence,
Benyng[æ]ly with-oute[n] al offence ;
For Exion was present in þat tyde,
Of auenture stondyng by his syde.
And at reuerence of hir womanhede,
Of Antenor he toke þe better hede,
Al-be of custom þat kyng Thelamoun
Had hiz[e] dispit and indignacioiun
Of euery Troyan þat he coude espie ;
For specialy to hem he had envie,
Of* rancour only, þoruz þe bitter rage,
Whiche in his hert myȝt[e] neuer asswage.
But for al þat, he in paciencie
To Anthenor hap seuen audience ;
þe whiche anoon, in ful sobre wyse
His tale gan, as I schal deyse :  1424
"Sir," quod he, "with support of þour grace,
So þe me graunt opportune space,
For to declare þe cause of my commyng,
I wil reherse with-out more taryng
My mater hool, brefly in sentence,
To make it kouþe to þour magnificence,
Signefying, with-out[e] displesaunce,
þat Priamuz, whiche* hap þe] gouernaunce  1432  says King Priam of Troy
Of* Troye toun, hath vn-to 30w sent

1403. schort] schrot C.
1431, 32 are transposed in A.  1432. whiche] whiche þat C.
1433. Of] To C.
186  Antenor begs King Telamon to restore Hesione.  [BK. II

Of feipful menyng and of clene entent,
Besechyng first to 30ur goodlyhed,
Alle other wronges forgetyn & eke ded,
bat 3e only, of 30ur hiz[e] nobles,
Of equite, and of gentilnes,
3e wil restore Exyona ageyn,
Whiche pat 3e hold, to speke in wordis plyen,
In verray soth, nouzt like to hir estat.
Wherfore, he preyth to stynten al debat,
And euery harms to put out of memorie,
Of kyngly honour for 30ur owne glorie,
To send hir hom and make deliueraunce
Goodly of hir with-outen variaunce,
Whom 3e han holde * so many long[e] daies.
Ne tarieth nat, ne setteh no delayes,
Ne lete in 3ow be founde now no slowpe ;
For sothfastly it is to gret a routhe *
To recorde how 3e haue hir vsed,
It may of trouth nat goodly ben excused.
But we schal lete liȝtly ouerslyde,
So pat 3e bening[e]ly prouide
To sende hir hom, lik as I haue seyd.
Loo, her þe charge pat was on me leide,
With-oute more abydyng in certeyn,
What godly answer 3e wil send ageyn."

Thelamoun herkned had his tale,
Of hasty Ire he gan to wexe pale—
þe fyry colre hath hym made so wode,
þat from his face avalid was þe blood,
Whiche in his hert gan to frete & bite—
With lok askoyn, & tornyd vp þe white,
Of hiz[e] disdeyn, with face dispituous,
With pale smylyng & lauztre furious,
Gan rakyn oute þe felle mortal fire
Of fretyng hate, þat brent in his desire,
And schortly made, in conclusion,

1444. kyn gly] kyghtly A.
1447. holde] holden C.  1450. a routhe] arouthe C.
1456. was on me] on me was D 1.
1462. face] om. D 1—was] is D 2; D 1.
To Anthenor pis obiecchioun,
And seide, "frend, what-euer pat pou be,
I wondre gretly, & mervail is to me,
What auenture or sodeyn newe ping
Vnprudently meveth now pi kyng
Vn-to me to make swiche a sonde ;

K. Telamon wonders why

1472

Priam has sent to him.

1476

Antenor was a fool to come on his errand.

1478. or so A. 1478. 1st To] om. A.

Telamon and
the Greeks
were at Troy.


They won it,
and slew
K. Lamedon;

1484

K. Lamedon;

1488

and as Tel-

1492 They won it,

mon was the

1496 and as Tel-

1st to enter

1496. Dide entre first] First dide entren D 1.

Troy,

1500 they gave

1504. wel] wel syker A

him Hesione.

1503. be] om. A. 1504. wel] wel syker A

Of hir pat is to me most entere,

Exiona, whom pou cley mest here.

But be wel siker, pin askyng is in veyn ;

For trust[e] wel, & be rïst wel certeyn,

1503. wel] wel syker A

1504
For þer schal first be made ful gret affray
Or I hir leue duryng al my lyve,
Who euer gruce þer or þer ageyn[es] striue
It wer nat sittynge me to leue hir so,
For whom I had whilom so* gret ado
Or I hir gat with spendyng of my blood;
And who Þat be wroþ þer-wiþ or wood,
I wil hir kepe, as it schal be founde;
For whom I had so many mortal wounde
At Troye toun, or Þat I hir wan.
And in good feith, as serforspe as I can,
Sche schal nat liȝtly from myn hondis passe;
For sche allone stant so in my grace
For hir bewte and hir seymlyhed,
For hir bounte and hir goodlyhed,
Þat ȝif I schal my resoun schortly fyne,
Sche is in sothe þe moste femy[ny]ne
Þat euer I sawe, and with-outen drede,
Of port, of konwyng, & of womanhede,
Sche hap alone, in verray existence,
þe sonereynte and þe excellencye;
Þat Priamus, for ouȝt Þat þou canst seyn,
Whil Þat I lyue get her not ageyn,
But he hir bye with many dedly wounde,
With scharp[e] swerdys and square speris groynye.
For þer schal first be reysed soche a strif,
Þat it schal cost many a man his* lif,
Or [þat] sche ageyn restored be;
Take þis for soþ, þou gest no more of me.
Whan hym list he may wel be-gynne;
But I suppose he schal but litel wynne,
Noon oþer wyse but as I þe tolede.
And wost [þou] what a gret fool I þe holde,
The to putte so* fer in iupartye,
To execute þis* embassatrye,
þe manly Grekis so boldly to offende;

1510. so] ful C. 1524. 2nd of] and A, D 2.
1532. a] om. A—man his] manmys C, man is A.
1539. so] to C. 1540. þis] þis in C.
Be war þer-for, þat he no more þe sende,  
Vp-on þi lyf, for rancour nor for pride. 1544 Telamon bids Antenor go,  
Now go þi weye; for þiþ þat þou abyde  
Any lenger, sothly, in my siȝt;  
þou wost þe pris of þat I haue þe hiȝt;  
þou skapest nat, who þat be lef or lothe." 1548 under pain of death.  
Þanne Anthenor anoon to schip[pe] goth,  
And to saille hym list nat to delaye,  
Toward an yle þat callyd is Achaye;  
And whan þat he taken hath þe lond,  
At his ryuail* of auenture he fonde  
þe worþi kynges, Pollux and Castor;  
And riȝt anoon þis Troyan Anthenor  
With-oute abood to þe court is fare,  
Vnto* hem his message to declare;  
And to-gydre whan þei were present,  
Ryȝt þus he seide, as in sentament :  
"þe nobil kyng of Troye þe cite  
Hath vn-to þou sent his wille by me,  
Besechyng þou in ful lowe maner  
þat þe list vn-to his prayer  
Of equite for to condescende,  
And goodly helpyn a certeyn wrong to amende,  
Touchyng his suster, callid Exyon,  
þat he may haue restituciouȝ  
Of hir ageyn, by ȝour discrete avyse.  
For sith þe ben so manly and so wyse,  
It likly is, in his oppinioun,  
þat by ȝour good[כ] mediacioun,  
Sche liȝtly may ageyn restored be,  
For to cherische pes and vnite.  
Wherfor he prayþ with al his hert enter,  
In goodly wyse to doon ȝour deuer,  
þat hold[כ] ben so knygȝly and so sage,  
And he wil pleyynly al þe surplusage  
Of wrongis olde puttyn in suspense ;  
1542. no more þe] the no more A.  
1548. goth] he goth A, D 2.  
1552. ryuail] aryuail C.  
1556. Vnto] To C.  
1558. he] þey D 2.  
1559. new þ D 1.
For he desyreth, of kyngly hys prudence,
To stint[e] werre & to norishe pes;
For he is noughter rakle nor rekles,
But avise*, in his werkis alle,
To cast aforne what [pat] schal [be]-falle,
And pinges future aduertyng from a-ferre,
And seth what perel pat per is in werre,
Wil hym conforme* vn-to pes & rest;
For he consuyeuth pat it is pe best,
Euery man vnite to* sewe,
And prudentely also to escheue
Of debatis ecche occasioun.
Lo, here pe fyn of his entencioun,
Whiche I commyte to your Iugement.”
And Castor þan, of ire impacient,
For hastynes ne mys[t[e] nat abide,
His cruel hert so swolle was with pride,
Brak out anon with a dispitous face,
And seide : “frende, I knowe of no trespas
Þat Grekis dide euer vn-to þi kyng;
To axe amendis, it is a wonder þing,
Of vs þat neuer dide hym noon offence,
Saue þat we made a maner* recompense
Of a wrong wrouȝt by Lamedoun,
Þe whiche first souȝt occasioun
Ageyn[es] Grekis, in vngoodly wyse;
Þat caused vs vp-on hym to ryse,
Al attonys, and manly on hym sette,
Of due riȝt for to quyteoure dette.
Liche his decert we han hym [pleinly] serued,
And no þing wrouȝt, but as he hap disseruuyd.
To axe amendis he gynæp now to late,
For we couet more his mortal hate,
His outer malis, and his enmyte,
Þan ouþer pes, acord, or vnite;

1581. avise] avised C. 1585. conforme] conforme C.
1586. is] is for D 1. 1587. to] for C.
1609. he gynæp] begynneth D 1.
As in effect her-after he schal fele, 
If it hap[pe] pat he with vs dele; 
he bargan schal ful dere ben about; 
And we his frenschip, soply, set at nouȝt.
Castor cares nothing for Priam,

And ouer-more, I speke now to þe,
It likly is, as semeth vn-to me,
þat Priamus þe louyd but a lîte,

Nat þe valu, I suppose, of a myte,

When he þe sent vp-on þis message;
And þou of foly dedist gret outrage,
Till then he was a fool to come on embassy,

To take on þe so hîȝe a perilous þing,
Vn-to Grekis to bryng[ë] swiche tydyng,
Wher-þoruȝ pi lif is putte in iu parte.

And in the wynde gan to seyle anoong
Wheer his blood from eche extremyte

Out of my sîȝt, list þat þou repente.”

And Anthenor furthe to schippe went,
So Antenor sails to Pylos,

And with þe wynde gan to seyle anoong
Toward an yle callid Pillyon;

And in al hast, whan he dide ariue,
He schope hym forþe to þe court as blyue,
Wheer duk Nestor, in al maner þing,
His housholde held, royal as a kyng.

But duk Nestor, with face no þing red,
But of hewe as any asche deed,

Fret with col[ë]re so inwardly was he,
þat his blood from eche extremyte
Withdrawen is, douȝ vn-to his hert,

Whiche for Ire so sore made hym smert,

whan he gan quake in every Ioint & veyne,

whiȝt he was a fool to come on embassy,
Nestor is full of Wrath against Antenor and Priam. [BK. II]

Nestor is
\[leaf 33 b\]

1652 Nestor is full of Wrath against Antenor and Priam.

Furious with Antenor,

1656 Furious with Antenor, wonders at his insolence in repeating Priam's blame of the Greeks,

1660 And demanding redress for the injuries they did Lamedon.

1664 But for his honour's sake,

1680 he'd have Antenor chipt into little bits,

1650. hond] hondes D 2.
1655. furious] & furyous D 2, and furious D 1.
1667. on] of A. 1676. nat] it nat C.
1680. hastily] hastily as D 1—iustyse] iustece C.
In dispite of Priamus þi kyng,
To techen ðer to bringe* more tydyng,
Presumptuously, or any talis newe,
To any lord, but þei þe bet hym knewe. 1688
þis schulde be for þi presumcioun
þi last[e] mede and final guerdoun,
With-out mercy, lik as I haue behiȝt.
And in al hast, be* go out of my siȝt! 1692
For outerly it dop to gret offence
Vn-to myn ey to haue þe in presence,
For þoru disdeyn it causeth myn vnrest.”
þan Anthenor þoȝt[e] for þe best,
It was not holso[m] longer to abide,
But cast wysly, for rancour or for pride,
þat it was best for to bern hym feyre,
And to his schippe he gan anoon repeyre,
And in al hast by possibilite, [leaf 33 c]
With-oute abood he taken hap þe see,
And gan to seyle & homward fast[e] drawe.
But sodeynly boileen gan þe wawe,
þe see to ryse, and þe clowdes blake
For tappere, and þe wynde a-wake;
Wonder gastful also was þe heuene
With dredful fire of * þe briȝt[e] leuene;
þe þonder smot, þe tempest gan to dryue,
þat þe mast gan a-sonder riue.
Now aloft, nowe in poynt to drowne,
þe fel[le] wedir gan so on hem frowne,* 1712
þat þei awaite not but vp-on deth,
Euene at þe point of zeldyng vp þe breth,
For þei ne sawe noon oþer remedye.
And euer-among, þei gan clepe and crye
To her goddes, and avowes make,
And devoutly for to vnertake,
Eche of hem, liche as he was* of age,
3if þei eskape, to gon on pilgrymage, 1720

Lyche þe ritys of her* paynym wyse,
To þe goddis to doon her sacrificse,
So as þei werne of substaunce & of myȝt.

The storm suddenly stops;
And sodeynly þe wedir, dirke as myȝt,
With new[en] lyȝt by grace gan adawe;
þe se wexe calme, & smoþe gan þe wawe,
So þat of hap, among hem euerychon,
For al þe tempest, persschid was not on;
But to-fore Troye, with-Inne a litel space,
þei ben aryved euerychon by grace,
Eskapid safe from euery Iupartye,
Boþe Antenor and al his companye.

they land at Troy,
And to þe temple he toke þe riȝte* waye,
And in his prayer þer ful long* he lay,
With many another also for his sake,
þankeynge her goddis, þat made hem so eskape
Euery perel and tempest of þe see.
And aftir þis, vn-to þe kyng goth he,
þat with his lordis aboute hym ful royal,
In his palys and dongouw principal
Sat and abod, ful solemnely,
Tewe report of þis embas[sa]trye;
And þis knyȝt, of al þat hath hym falle,*
Hath tolde þe kyng to-fore his lordis alle.

Then Antenor reports the result of his embassy to Priam.

Howe Kynge Priamus, aftire that Athenore had declarede to-fore hym and his lordes the contraryous answere of the Grekes, lete set his parlament, to wit what was to be done.¹

He tells Priam

This Antenor hap first made menciou[n,
To-fore þe kyng by iust relacioun,
Of his expleyt, by ordre by and by,
And in what wyse & how vncer特斯ly,
He was receyued of kyng Pelleus,
Of þe thretis and wordis disputous,

¹ Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 39 c.
Antenor reports to Priam, who sees he must fight.

At that he suffered of kyng Thelamoun,
Beying as fers as a wood lyoun;
And afterward, he gan also compleyne
Of his dispit of his brethe twayne,
Of his rebuke and his grete drede,
And at Nestor howe he dide spede,
At with his lif he myst vnnepes skape:
Al pis he told, & gan an ende make
Of his Iourne and eke of his repaire.
And pan Priam was fully in despayre,
Outre by sorte or [by] aventure,
Eure ageyn his suster to recure;
For he conseueth in his aduertence,
By clere report of expert evidence,
At ay pe more he was to hem benigne,
Pe more vngoodly ageyn hym pei malygne;
And wher he most him scheweth debonaire,
Ber he fynt hem ageynward most contraire,
So frowardly euer pei hem quyte,
Schewyng by signes pat pei sette lyte
By his frendschip, for auzt he coude aduerte.
Wherof* he was pure sory in his hert,
Pat he constreyned, [riʒt] of verry nede,
Compelled was iustly to procede
To han redres only by rigour;
For profe of pe myʒt haue no favour
To be admytted, be title of riʒtwisnes,
Porʒ hıʒ dispit of hasty wilfulnes;
For euery mene of mesour was in veyn,
Sauę only weree engendred by disdeyn,
Be-gonne & caused al of old hatrede.
Whiche gan anon swiche a brond to brede
Of new envie in pe kynges breste,
At Priamus, with-oute more areste,
Priam makes up his mind to fight the Greeks. [BK. II]

Is so inly with Ire and rancour fret,
And with disdeyn so sore grounde & whet,
\( \text{pat when so be, pat he lese or wynne,} \)
Vp-on Grekis he wil a werre* be-gyne,
\( \text{1788} \)
And Iupart, manly as a kny3t,
His lyf, his deth, by-cause he had[de] ri3t.
And cast hym first a naue for to sende
In-to Grece his fomen for toffende;
\( \text{1792} \)
And liche a kny3t his force for to hante,
In kny3tly wyse he cast hym for to daunte
\( \text{pe} \) pompe of Grekis and \( \text{pe} \) sturdines,
And finaly her pride to oppres.
\( \text{1796} \)
But seye, Priam, what infelicite,
What new[e] trouble, what hap, what destyne,
Or from a-boue what hateful influence
Descendid is, by vnwar violence,
To meue the, pou canst not lyue in pes!
What sodeyn sort, what fortune graceles,
What chaunce vnhappy, with-oute avisenes,
What wilful lust, what fonzyd hardynes,
Han putte \( \pi \) soule out of tranquillite,
To make \( \pi \) wery of \( \pi \) prosperite!
Whi hast pou sauour* in bitter more \( \pi \) an swete,
\( \text{1804} \)
\( \text{pat canst nat lyue in pes nor in quyete?} \)
\( \text{1808} \)
\( \text{pou art travailed with wilful mocions,} \)
Overmaystred with \( \pi \) passiouns,
For lak of resoun and of h33 prudence,
Dirked & blind from al prudence,
\( \text{1812} \)
And ful bareyn to cast a-forne and see
\( \pi \) harmys foloyng of \( \pi \) aduersite!
\( \text{1816} \)
\( \text{pou wer to slow, wisely to consyldre;} \)
For want of si3t made \( \pi \) [to] slydre,
\( \text{1815. to} \) so A.

\( \text{1787. wher} \) [whet] D 1.
\( \text{1788. Grekis} \) [pe grekes] D 1—he wil a werre] a werre he wil C—
be-gynne] gynne A, D 2. \( \text{1791. naue} \) meene A.
\( \text{1792. toffende] to defende D 1.} \)
\( \text{1794. kny3tly] knyngly C—hym] hem D 1.} \)
\( \text{1797. new } \) D 1.
\( \text{1798. what hap] or what D 1—3rd what} \) om. D 1.
\( \text{1807. sauour] more sauour C.} \)
\( \text{1812. blind] blinded D 1.} \)
To voyde resoun of wilful hastynes!
Wher was þi guyde, wher was þi maistres,
Discrecioun, so prudent and so sad,
Avisely þat schulde þe haue lad
From þe tracis of sensualite;
þouȝt it ful selde in mannyys power be,
By suffraunce hym siluen to restreyne,
Whan sodeyn Ire doth his hert[e] streyne.
þou schust a-forn bet ha cast þi chaunce,
Wrouȝt by counseil & nat put in balaunce
þi sikernes—allas! whi distow so?
And haue symuled somdel of þi wo,
And cast þi chaunce wel a-fore þe prime,
To haue forgotten wrongis of old tyme,
And þouȝt a-forn in þin aduertence,
þat ofte falleth in experience,
þat whyles men do most besynes
Vengably her wrongis to redres,
With double harme, or þat þei ar ware,
þei falle ageyn in a new[e] snare;
And damages þat wer forȝete clene,
By fals report of rumour fresche & grene
Renewed ben, þoruȝ þe swifte fame,
þat fleth so fer to hindre a lordis name;
Namly, whan þei to a purpos wende
Only of hed, and se nat to þe ende:
For of pride and of sodeyn hete,
þei voide hem silf out of al quiete,
Aduerting* nat to wirke avisely,
Nor þe prouerbe þat techeth commounly,
"He þat stant sure, enhast hym not to move";
For þif he do, it schal hym after greue;
And he þat walkyth surly* on þe pleyn,
þif he stumble, his wit is but in veyn;
But if* so be, he list of his foly
Be negligent to putte hym wilfully

1820 Priam! where was your discretion?
1824 You should
1828 You should
1832 have forgotten old wrongs, and thought
1836 that redress often ends in double harm.
1840 You should have minded the proverb, "let him who stands, be in no haste to move."
1848 You should have minded the proverb, "let him who stands, be in no haste to move."

1851. surly] only C 1852. but in veyn] ful bareyn D 2.
1853. if] it C.
In adventure, and of hym silf ne reche, 
Teschewen perel, I hold he be a wreche. 1856

Priam! you were too reckless.
For sothly, Priam, you were to rek[el]es,
For to comyte pi quiete and pi pes,
So dreadfully, duryng by no date,
To cruel Fortune or to fikel fate; 1860

You should not have trusted Fortune,
Whos maner is, of costom comounly,
pat whan a man trusteth most souereynly
On pis goddesse, blind & ful vnstable,
pan sche to hym is most deceyueable, 1864

Hym to abate from his royal * stalle,
And sodeynly to make hym down to falle,
And with a trip, prowe hym on pe bake,
Who pat geynstruyeth schal hae litel tak. 1868

who delights to trip a man up.
Sche is so sleiȝty with hir gynnny snare,
pat sche can make a man from his welfare,
With hir panter, pat is with fraude englued,
Whan he lest weneth for to be remewed. 1872

She is full of sleights.
\textit{perfor}, no man haue noon affyance
In Fortune, nor in hir variaunce;
Ne late no wiȝt hir ese more Ipart—
List pat pe pleye wil afterward departe—
To turne his chaunce ouper to wel or wo:
For selde in oon sche doth pe gamen go, 1876

Let no man put faith in her.
As ye may se be example of Priamus,
pat of foly is so desyrous
To wirke of hede & folwe his oone wille,
To trouble, alas, pe calm of his tranquille—
As in [t]his boke here-after schal be founde—
Hym and his cite platly to confounde, 1880

For Priam
and his city are to be ruin'd,
\textit{and} utterly to his confusioun;
pat afterward, by long successioum,
It schal be rad in story and in fable,
And remembrid, with dites deleytable, 1884

as you'll see in this Book.
To do plesaunce to hem pat schal it here:
pat be example pei may be war & lere,
Of hasty lust or of volunte,
To gyne a þing which in* noun-sur[e]te
Dependeth ay, as strif, were, and debate;
For in swiche pley vnwarly comeþ check-mate;
And harme y-done to late is to amende,
Whos fyn is ofte other þan þei wende—
In þis story as 3e schal after seen.
And late Priam alwey 3our merour ben,
Hasty errour be tymes to correcte.
For I anoon my poyn[te] wil directe,
After þe maner of his tracis rude,
Of þis story þe remnaunte to conclude.

Howe Kenge Priam, in opyne parlament toforne his lordes, schewede the answers that Anthenor brought.¹

T
his worþi kyng, euer of * o sentence,
Ay more & more fired with feruence,
Hath his breues and his letters sent
For his lordis to holde a parlament,
And hem commaundid, in al [þe] hast þei may,
To com anon at her assigned day
From euery ward and party of þe toun,
For to assemble in noble Ìyounz,
Chef of his regne; & whan þei were echon
With hym present, þis noble kyng anon,
To-forn hem alle, as schortly as he can,
His wille declareþ, & þus he be-gan:
"Sirs," quod he, "be-cause þe ben wyse,
It nedeth not long proces to deuyse,
For to reheare of 3our comye g cause;
But for to telle, schortly in a clause
What I mene, and make no delay,
3e wote * how I, now þis oper day,
Sent in-to * Grece, by conseil of 3ow alle,

¹ Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 40 b (‘Anthenor’ corrected from ‘he’).
Priam relates his Grievances against the Greeks. [BK. II

"Antenor to Greece to recover Hesione.

A knyst of myn þat Anthenor men calle,
To haue recured Exyona ageyn.
Whos message was [nat] but in veyn;
For of Grekis ful vncurteisly
He was resseyued, and.dispitously
þrat & rebuked, in poyn to haue ben ded:
Vnnepe he myst eskapyn with his hed,
þei put on hym swiche offence & blame,
þat reboundeþ to oure alder schamé.
And day be day it mot encresen more,
But we ordeyn sum remedie þer-fore;

The Greeks rebuked him.

For þer as we al mesour han hem offerid,
þei haue to vs werre & strat [I-]profred,
Of heyʒ dispit, of rancour, & of hete,
And of malis cruelly vs threte.
And, wher-as we wold[e] pes purchace,
For wrongis don, þei felly * vs manace;
And for þe harmys þat þei han vs wrouʒt,
þei nat purpos, pleylyn in her þouʒt,
Other redres nor amendis make,
But outerly with werre vs to awake,
Whos Ioye is fully encre of our greuauunce.
So wold[e] God, þei wer with repentaunce
Contrit in hert to stynten al meschef,
þat lykly is to fallyn, & þe* gref
On outher part, þat it myʒt ouer-slide;
But þei, allas, with rancour & with pride
Ar swolle of newe to þreytyn more & more.
But God diffende, haluendel þe sore
By infortune euere scholde falle
As þei purpose on eny of vs alle.
But syth þei han schapin þus for vs,
We mote resisten her wille malicious,
þoruʒ myʒt of God, of necessite,
In oure defence—it wil noon oþer * be;
And best I holde vn-to oure entent

We offerd em moderate terms,

And they threaten us,

and refuse to redress the harm they did us.

1924
1928
1932
1936
1940
1944
1948
1952
1956

1927. þrat &} om. D 1—in] and in D 1.
1956. noon oþer] no better C.
To wirche and don, alle by on assent,
So weoure purpos sonest schal acheue.
Wher is discorde, þer may no querel preue;
For on þat part wher hertis be nat oon,
Victorie may in no wyse goon;
Chef of conquest is pes and vnite,
Riȝt as discorde is of aduersite;
On hedd of hertis makeþ rewmys sure,
Diuisioun causeth discovafeture.
Wherfore, I rede, of o wille and hert
Lete vs set on to do þe Grekis smerte;
For sothfastly, þif þe list to se,
I dar afferm þat we strenger be
þan þe Grekis vp-on euery part,
And han of armys parfitly þe art,
And ben accounted of knyȝthod crop & rote,
And plente han of men on hors & fote,
Arrayed wel, eueryche in his degre;
And þer-witþ-al, so strong is oure syte,
For to with-stond our fomen euerychon—
3ow counselying to ordeyn anon,
First tassemble holy oure navye,
And stuf hem strongly with oure chevalrie,
And in-to Grece hastily hem sende,
þe proude Grekis manly to offende;
And of iust cause & be title of riȝt,
Hem werreyn with al oure ful[le] myȝt,
Her townes brenne, & her feldes waste—
With herte vnfeyned also vs enhast
To quiten hem as þei undesered haue.
For be my red, we schal noon of hem saue,
But cruelly take on hem vengaunce.
Ne hath no fer, ne lat be no grevance,
þouȝ þei a-forn by fortune wer victours,
To sleen oure auncestris and progenitours;
For he þat was of vnhap first put doun,
Remounte⁠ ofte to ful hAppe renoun,
By þe chaunge and þe variance
Of werre & strif, þat euer is in balance.
For he þat is þis day assurid wel,
To-morwe he is caste douz of þe whe[li];
þe victor ofte putte in auenture,
And venquysched by discomfeture
Of hym þat he hadde aforne victorie.
Now vp, now doun, in armys stant þe glorie;
In Martys chaunce no man hym assure,
But as it cometh lat hym take his vre;
For gery Mars, by his influence,
Can þeue a man whilom excellence
To wynne a pris, liche a conquerour,
And sodeynly, as a somer flour,
He can his honour maken for to fade.
For, whan þat he his * aspectis glade
Fro a man listeth for to writhê,
His renoun old goth a-weye as blyve;
After a flowe, an ebbe* folweth ay;
As men disserue, preise hem for a day.
For þou3 Phebus þis day merie schyne,
To-morwe he may his bemys douz decline
þoruz þe piknes of þe mystis trouble;
Riʒt so of Mars* arne þe chances double—
Now vp, now doun, now lowe, now oloft[e—
As Fortune, whiche þat chaungeþ ofte,
List on hir whele make a man ascende,
And vnwarly douz ageyn descendē,
Stoumdemel his honour to avaunce,
And with a swyʒe prow hym to meschaunce;
Now with favour sette hym vp ful hîʒe,
Efte avale hym, with twynklyng of an eye.
Hir pley vnstable turneʒ as a bal,
While on goth vp, an-other hath a fal;

2024. swyʒe] swenge D 2.
The Trojan Lords agree to invade Greece.

Sche reiseth on, & doth anoþer loute,
For euery man, whan it cometh aboute,
Mote take his turne, as hir pleye requereþ.
Who is expert and hir fraudes lereth,
Schal with hir sugre finde galle meynt,
And hir hony ay with bitter spreyn—
In pes and werre, in honour & in fame,
In dignetes, in resouw, and in schame,
At hir likynge, as hir list to graunte;
þerfor no man his hap to moche avaunte.
For þouþ Grekis whilom wern a-lofte,
It may her-after hem hap ful vnsofte.
Wherfore, echon schewe þoure worpynes,
þat so ar named of strenþe & hardynes,
And to Fortune pleinly þow committe,
And late no fere þoure manly hertis flitte,
But stondeth hool & beth in menyng pleyn,
And here-vp-on, lat se what þe wil seyn."
And attonys her voys þei gonne reise,
And his sentence hiþly for to preyse,
And of on hert, manly gon expresse,
þei wil dispande goodys & riches,
And her bodies put in iupardye—
þer was nat on þat wolde it þo denye.
And of þis graunt he þanketh * hem echon,
And þaf hem leue wher hem list to gon;
For he dissolved hath his parlement.
And euery man on his weye is went,
And repeered to his mansiouw,
The kynge allone lefte in Ylyoun,
Sool by hym silf inwardly mvseyng,
How his purþos he myþt aboute bryng;
For he in soth on no þing ellys þouþt,
And þer-vppon euene þus he woreþt.

2040. ful] falle D 2.
2049. gon] gan A, D 2, D 1.
2051. iupardye] iupartye D 2, D 1.
Howe Kynge Priamus callede his sonnes to his presence, and in secrete wyse lamentabyly opynyd and declarede his intollerabile sorowes, askenge per avyce in avengeinge his cause.  

Priam sends  

Kyng Priamæ, makyng þus his mone,  
As I ȝou told, in a chambre alone,  
Many weyes castyng vp and doun,  
For to performe his conclusiouz,  
And to fulfille þe fyn of his entent;  
He first of alle prudently hath sent  
For his sonys to com to hym in hast,  
As wel for hem þat wer borne in bast,  
As þe toþer, for þassemble y-fere  
For a purpos, liche as þe schal here,  
To haue a counsel for nedful puruyance,  
Ageyn[e]s Grekis to maken ordynauce,  
First by hem * sylf allone priuely.  
And whan þei were in ordre by & by,  
Eueryche of hem sette in his due see,  
Liche as þei werne of age & of degre,  
And Hector first, flour of cheualrie,  
Repeired hom oute of Panonye,  
Moste acceptable in euery wyþtes grace,  
Nexst his fader taken hath his place;  
And whan Priam his leiser dide espie,  
With syþes sore, castyng vp his eye,  
To hem echon sittying enviroun,  
Gan to declare his hertis mociouz.  

Priam weeps,  
But first, or he myȝt his wil expowne,  
In-to teris he gan hym silf[e] drowne;  
His hertly wo was so outragous,  
þat for wepyng & sobbyng furious,  
Vnnejpe he myȝt with any word out-breke,  
Nor vn-to hem, for distresse, speke,  
Nor openly his inward menyng schewe,  
Til at þe laste he in wordis fewe

1 Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 41 a.
Gan to abreyde, in al his pitous fare,
Euene þus his menyng to declare:
"My dere sonys, so lovynge & so kynde,
As I suppose, þat þe haue in mynde,
And remembre discretly, and aduerte,
And enprente ful freschely in 3our hert,
How þe Grekis, ageyn al riȝt and lawe,
With cruel swerde mordrid han & slawe
Our worþi auncestris, of ful híȝe renoun,
And distroyed, brente, & bete doun
þe first[e] Troye, with his wallis olde;
And how vnɡodly also þat þei holde
Myn oune suster, callid Exyouw,
To ful gret schame and confusioun,
And híȝe repreſ to 3our worþines,
þat, me semeth, of verray kyndenes,
And of nature 3e ouȝt to ben agreued,
And inwardly in hert[e] sore ameved,
To suffren hir, in hyndring of hir name,
So to be tretid, for 3our alder schame.
Allas! why nyl 3e do 3our besynes,
þis híȝe dispit knyȝtly to redresse,
3ow for to avenge vp-on her cruelte,
Recure to fynde of her iniquite,
Sith þat 3e be so myȝty and so strong!
Certis, me semeth, 3e byden al to long,
Fro daye to day þat 3e so diſferre,
In knyȝtly wyse to gynne on hem a werre,
3our force & myȝt manly to assaye.
I am pure sory þat 3e list delaye
3ow to conferme vn-to my desyre—
þat in her hate brenne as hoot as * fyr—
Vp-on hem, lyche as 3e may se,
Of frotynɡ Irœ avenged for to be,
Liche her desert to quiten hem her mede.*
And 3e, alas, take list non hede,
Whil 3our renown doth so freshely schyne,
Vn-to my lust 3our hertis to encline;
Consyderynge, liche as it is kouthe,
How I haue fro 3our grene 3outhe

I-fostred 3ow \& brouzt 3ou forth echon,
Fro pilke day \pat 3e koude goon,
As tenderly as I koude or myzte.
To whiche ping, in 3our inward sît,
3e schulde aduerte alweye new \& new,
And of nature on my soores* rewè,
To remedien myn aduersite,
Whiche touchep 3ou al so* wel as me,
Sith [pat] 3e wot how sore it doth me greue,
3e schulde[e] schap myn harmsys to releue."

And sodeynly, as he \bus gan morne,
Toward Hector he gan his face torne,
And seid, "Hector, my trust \& al my Ioye,
Myn eyr also, likly to regne in Troye
After my day, and be my successour,
And named art \pe verray souereyn flour
Of worpines, and of manhod welle,
And alle \pj brethre in kny3thod dost excelle,
And in armys, liche a conquerour,
Callid \pe stok of worship and honour,
I hertly praye, \pou3 \pou* sitte stille,
Be willy now my purpos to fulfille,
To execute \pat I desyre so;
For fynally, in \pe and in no mo
Is ful my feith to bryng[e] \pis aboute.
Now take on \pe, \& be no ping in doute,
To be chef prince \& also gouernour
Of \pis purpos, and outerly socour;
In-to \pj hond \pis Iourne I committe,
Hooly of hert, so \pat pou ne flitte,
\pe to conferme, by good avisement,
To parforme vp pe fyn of myn entent.
For of resoun, best to pe it sitte,
Whiche art so prudent & so ful of witte,
Strong & delayuer, flouryng eke in 3outhe,
Of whom pe fame þorúþ pe worlde is kouth,
3ong of 3eiris, old of discrecioun,
Ewrous to love, passyng of renoun,
Vn-to whos wille þi breþre schal obeie,
And stond with þe, bopþ to lyne & deye!
Now condescende tacomplische my request,
And what þou felist, answere at the best."
And whan þe kyng hap schewed his sentence,
Demvre of chere, humble of renerence,
þis worþi Hector, example of gent[e]rie,
With softe speche, as techeþ curtesye,
His answere 3af, with sobre countenans,
þeffect of whiche was þis in substants:

"My owne lord, and my fader dere,
Benignely 3if 3e list [to] here,
After þe force and þe grete myþt,
And þe somme of naturis ríȝt,
Whiche euery þing by kynde doth constreyne
In þe boundis of hir large cheyne,
It fittyng is, as sche doth enspire,
And acordyng þat euery man desyre
Of wrongis don to han amendement,
And to hir law ríȝt conuenient;
Namly to swiche þat with nobilite
Kynd hath endewed, & set in hîȝe degree;
For to swiche, gret repref is and schame,
Whan any wrong be do vn-to her name;
For eche trespas mote consydered be,
Iustly mesurid after þe qualite

"You are so famous;
your brethren will obey you.
Do what I ask you."
Hector answers his father gently:
Of hym pat is offendid, and also,
After pe persone by whom pe wrong is do;
Be it in werre, in contek, or debate:
For gretter gref is to hizé estate
To suffre an harme, of cas or aventure,
Or any wrong vnjustly to endure,
Or Iniuries compassed of malys,
Is more offence, by discreet avys,
To hem pat ben famous in manhod,
Renomed, & born of gentyl blood,
Pan to swiche on pat holde is but a wreche.
Wherfore, we most [gretly] charge and reche,
Only of kny3thod oure worschip for to eke,
Of wrongis don amendis for to seke,
Oure staat consydered & oure hizé noblesse,
And in what plyn te we stonde of worpines,
When pat bestis, of resoun rude and blinde,
Desire pe same by instynt* of kynde.
And for my part, trustep in certeyn,
3e haue no sone pat wolde halfe so feyn
Vp-on Grekis avenged ben as I:
For here my trouth, I seye 3ow feithfully,
For Ire of hem I brenne as dop pe glede;
I thirst her blood more pan other mede;
For riįt as I eldest am of age
Among 3our sonys, so am I most with rage
I-fret with-Inne, iustly of kny3thood,
With my riįt hond to schede pe Grekys blod,
As pei schal fynd, paraunter or pei wene,
Whan tyme cometh, pe sope schal be sene.
But first I rede, wysely in 3our mynde
To cast afoyn and leue nat be-hynde,
Or 3e be-gynne, discretly to aduerte
And prudently consyderen in 3our herte
Al, only nat pe gynnyng but pe ende,
Hector warns Priam that War may end disastrously.

And þe myddes, what weie þei wil wende,
And to what fyn Fortune wil hem lede—

2238. by] by my D 1. 2240. by ordre] bordre D 2.
2243. þis] þis is D 1. 2246. causeth] caused C.

2236. Where will Fortune lead you?

"Where will Fortune lead you?"

If þe þus don, amys þe may nat spede.
For þat counsell, in myn oppinioun,
Is worpi litel, by discrecioun,
To haue a pris, þat cast nat by and by
þe course of þinges by ordre ceryously,
What weye þei trace to wo or to delite;
For þou þa gynnyng haue his appetite,
3et in þe ende, pleynly þis no fable,
þer may þing folwe, whiche is nat commendable.
For what is worþe a gynnyng fortunat,
þat causeth* after strif and gret debat?
Wherfor, in soþe, principles are to drede,
But men wel knowe what fyn schal succeed;
For a gynnyng with grace is wel fortunyd,
Whan ende and myddes aliche ben contunyd.
But whan þat it in wele ne may contene,
It is wel bet by-tymes to abstene
þan put in doute þat stant in surete;
For who-so doth hath ofte aduersite.
But humblely to þour estat royal,
Of hert I praye, lat nat offende at al,
þat I am bolde to seie my mocion;
For in good feith, of noon entencioun,
I no þing menþe 3ow to don offence;
But only þis, þat 3our magnificence
Procede nat of hede wilfully,
Ne þat no spirit 3ou meue folyly
To gynne þing þat after wil 3ou schende,
For lak* þat þe se nat to þe ende,
Nor taken hede in þoure aduertence,
To consydere by good prouidence,
How Grekis han in her subieccioun
Europ & Aufrick, with many* regioun,
Ful large & wyde, of knyþthod most famus,
Hector advises that they shall not fight the Greeks. [BK. II]

"The Greeks are valorous:
And of riches wonder plenteous,
Ri3t renomed also of worpines.
With your support pat I dar wel expresse,
2272

it's dangerous to disturb em.
Ful perlous is dispese hem or disturbe;
For 3if pat we oure quete now pertourbe,
Whiche stant in pes, gretly is to drede;
For pou3 al Asye help vs in* our nede,
3if it be lokid on every part ari3t,
pei be nat egal vn-to Grekis my3t;
And pou3 also myn aunte Exioun
2276

We're not equal to em.
Ageyn al ri3t be holde of Thelamoun,
It is nat good for hir redempioun,
To putte vs alle to destruccioun.
I rede nat to bien hir half so dere;
For many of vs, in hap pat sitten here,
2280
And oper mo, my3ten for hir sake
Deth vnderfonge, & an ende make;
Whiche were no wisdam, liche as semep me.
And it may happen also how pat sche
2284

Hesione is not worth our lives.
She might soon die after we'd won her.
In schort tyme hir fatal cours schal fyne,
Whan Antropos pe prede a-two schal twyne.
What had we wonne panne & sche wer go,
But enmyte, pou3t, sorow,* & wo,
Slauster of oure men, deth & confusioun!
2288

We'd better put up with our loss,
And not risk war."

And of riches wonder plenteous,
Ri3t renomed also of worpines.
With your support pat I dar wel expresse,
2272

Ful perlous is dispese hem or disturbe;
For 3if pat we oure quete now pertourbe,
Whiche stant in pes, gretly is to drede;
For pou3 al Asye help vs in* our nede,
3if it be lokid on every part ari3t,
pei be nat egal vn-to Grekis my3t;
And pou3 also myn aunte Exioun
2276

Ageyn al ri3t be holde of Thelamoun,
It is nat good for hir redempioun,
To putte vs alle to destruccioun.
I rede nat to bien hir half so dere;
For many of vs, in hap pat sitten here,
2280
And oper mo, my3ten for hir sake
Deth vnderfonge, & an ende make;
Whiche were no wisdam, liche as semep me.
And it may happen also how pat sche
2284

In schort tyme hir fatal cours schal fyne,
[leaf 36 a]
What had we wonne panne & sche wer go,
But enmyte, pou3t, sorow,* & wo,
Slauster of oure men, deth & confusioun!
2288

Werherefore I rede, by dissymulacion,
With-oute more pat we oure wo endure—
And nat to putte oure sifl in auenture—
2292
pis hold* I best—& wirkyn as pe wyse.
But dout[elles], for no cowardyse
I seie nat pis in 3oure hize presence,
2296
But for cause I hold it no prudence,
To Fortune, ful of doubilnes—
Sith we be sure—to putte oure sikernes :
pis al & som, jeepflect of al my wille."
2300
And with pat worde Hector held hym stille.
2304

2276. in] at C. 2283. bien] bye D 1, beyen A, D 2.
Artire that Ector had shewed his entente, Paris
dclaryde his dreme of pe golden Appyle.¹

And whan Hector, by ful hiȝe prudence,
  Concluded hap pe fyn of his sentence,
Ful demurly he kepte his lippis clos.
And þer-wiþ-þæl Parys vp a-roos,
And gan his tale þus a-fore þe kyng:
  "My lord," quod he, "so it be lykyng
To þoure hîȝes for to taken hede,
As me semeth, we schuld litel drede
In knyȝtyly wyse for to vnþartake
Vp-on Grekis a werre for to make,
Al attynys her pride to confounde;
Sith þat we passyngly habounde
Of chiualrie, here with-Inne our toun,
And haue plente and poccession
Of eche þ þat may to werre a-veile,
Stuf in our sîlf and ryal appareile
Of * al þat longeth to assautis marcial,
And with al þis, more in special,
Help & socour of many regioun,
With vs to werke to her destruccioun,
þe pompe & pride manly to abate,
And of Grekis þe malis for to mate;
For al þat þei of hert[e] ben so stoute,
Me semeth shorthly þat we dar nat doute,
Nor on no part for to be dismaied.
Wherfor I rede, lat nat be delaied
Our schipples first redy for to make,
And I my sîlf wil fully vnþartake,
So it to þou be lykyng and plesance,
Of þis emprise hooly þe gouernaunce,
And þow assuren & putte in centeryn
Exyona to recure aȝeyn.

And in what forme þat it schal be wrouȝt,
I haue a weye founden in my þouȝt,

¹ Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 42 b.
212 Paris's plan to get & exchange a Greek Lady for his Aunt. [BK. II

My plan is to carry off a noble Greek lady to Troy, and exchange her for Hesione.

The Gods have shown me how to do it.

And I'll tell you all about it.

Pat likly is here-after to be don,
Whiche vn-to 3ow I wil declare anoon:
First, I haue cast, with strong & my3ty hond
For to rauysche som lady of pat lond,
Of heys3e estat, and make no taryng,
And my3ttyly in-to Troye hir bring,
Maugre her my3t, for pis conclusioyn,
Pat 3e may haue restitucion
Be eschance of hir pat 3e desyre so.
And here-vp-on schal be no long a-do,
I 3ou behete, for al pe Grekis strong.
And for pat I schal 3ow nat prolonge,
I wil 30w seyn, excluyng euer3y dout,
How pis avis schal be brou3t aboute:
First, how pat I schal pis purpos fyn,
Pe goddis han poru3 her power devyne
Schewed to me be reuelacion
For per-vppon I had a visioun
But late agoon, as I ley and slepe,
Vn-to whiche* 3if 3e taken kepe,
3e may not faile nor be in no dispeire
To han recur of hir pat is so faire,
For whom 3e haue now so moche care.
And pe maner hol I wil declare
Of pis drem to 3our magnificence,
3if it so be 3e 3eue* wil credence
To my tale, for I schal not dwelle
Ceriously in ordre for to telle
Pe trou[p]e pleyn, & no fable feyn,
To 3ow pat ben my lord most souereyn.

Howe the god Marcurye brought with hym the thre ladys, Iuno, Venus, and Pallas, to-for Paris lyenge in the wod aslepe; and of the thre gyfftis that they promysed hym for pe apple.1

2347. of] for D 2. D 1. 2348. no] nat A.
2358. whiche] pe whiche C—3if] and D 1. 2361. 3e] I D 1.
2367. pleyn] pleynly D 1. 2368. my] om. A.

1 Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 42 c.
First, if pat ye remembryn in yowr mynde,
jis oþer day, whan I was last in Ynde,
By yowr avis & commaundement,
For a mater whiche in yowr entent
Was specialy had in cher[ite]te,
As it is koupe atwixe you and me,
Of whiche I toke [vp-]on me ye charge
In ye boundis of ye lond ful large,
Ye same tyme yowr desyre to spede——
Whan pat Tytan, with his bemys rede,
From Gemmyny drof his chare of gold
Toward ye Crabbe for to take his holde,
Whiche named is ye paleys of Dyane,
Ye bente mone pat wexe can & wane;
Whanne halwed is ye sonnyes stacioun,
Nîse ye mydes of ye monep of Ivn—
At whiche sesoun, erly on a morwe,
Whan pat Phebus, to voide nyȝtes sorwe,
DOTH Pirrous hys wayn ageyn vp drawe,
And Aurora estward doth a-dawe,
And with ye water of hir teris rounde
Ye siluer dewe causeth to abouve
Vp-on herbis and on floures soote,
For kyndely norissyng hope of crop & rote,
Vp* I roos [out] of my bedde anoon,
Ful desyrous on huntyng for to goon,
Priked in hert with lusty fresche plesance
To do to Loue some due observauce,
And Lucyna þat day to magnifie,
Which callid is lady of venarye,
And duely oure rytis to observer,
Cithera and hir[e] for to serue,
I and my feris, oure hertis to releue,
Cast vs fully til it drowe to eve,
In ye forest to pley vs and disport,
And pleasautly vs to recomport,

"When I was in India

2370. was last] laste was D 1.
It was on a Friday.

We killed many deer.

I got separated from my folks.

As it longed to loue of lustines.
For pilke day to Venus pe goddes
I-sacrid was, by ful gret excellence,
With gret honour & due reverence

Doon vn-to hir, hope of on and alle;
And on a Fryday pis auenture is falle,
When we gan hast vs to pe wodis grene
In hope pat day som gam[e] for to sene,
With gret labour rydyng to and fro,
Til we hadde ful many buk & do
By strengpe slaw, as we my^t hem fynde,
pe hert I-chasid with houdis & pe hynde
poruʒ pe downys & pe dalys lowe,
Til briʒ[e] Phebus of his daies bowe
Amyd pe arke was of meridyen,
Whan his bemy[s] ful hote wern & schene,
And we most besy wern vp-on pe chas,
pe me byfil a wonder diuers cas.
For of fortune it happened sodeynly,
Whil I was seuer[y][d] fro my company,
Sool be my silf among pe holtis hore,
To fynde game desyrous, euermore,
Or I was war, poruʒ ſikke & [poruʒ] pinne,
A ful gret hert I sawe a-fore me renne,
Down by pe launde and pe walys grene,
pat I in soth myʒ[e] nat sustene,
He was so swyft, for to niʒe hym ner,
Al-be pat I priked my course[r]
Niʒe to ſe dep, poruʒ many sondri schaw,
Out of my siʒt so fer he gan with-drawe,
For al pat euer [pat] I sewen myʒt,
pat I anoon lost of hym pe siʒte
In a wode pat Ida bare pe name.
And I so feynt gan we xen of pat game,
And myn hors on whiche I dide ryde,
Fomyng ful whit [vp-]on euery syde,
And his flankis al with blood disteyned,
In my pursue so sore he was constreyned  
With my sporis, scharp and dyed rede,  
After þe hert so priked I my stede,  
Now vp, now doun, with a ful besy þouȝt;  
But my labour availed me rìȝt nouȝt,  
Til at þe last, among þe bowes glade,  
Of auenture I* cauȝt a plesaunt slade,  
Ful smoȝe & pleyyn, & lusty for to sene,  
And soft as velwet was þe ȝonge* grene—

* "When I got to a pleasant dell,
I dis-mounted,
and lay down by a stream,
I dis-mounted,
and lay down by a stream,

Wher fro myn hors I [a]liȝt as faste,
And on a bowe I his reyne cast,
So feynt & maȝt of werynes I was,
þat I me laide doun vp-on þe gras,
Vp-on a brink, schortly for to telle,
Be-syde a riuer and a cristal welle.
And þe water, as I reherse can,
Like quik-siluer in his stremys ran,
Of whiche þe grauel & þe briȝt[e] stoon
As any gold ageyn þe sonne schon.
Wher rìȝt anon, for verryne werynes,
A sodeyn slep gan me so oppresse,
þat fro tyme þat I first was born,
I neuer was a-slepe[d] so to-torn;
And as I ley I hadde a wonder sweuene:
For me-þouȝt hize doun fro heuene,
þe wynged god, wonderful of cher,
Mercuryus, to me dide appere,
Of whom I was somdel first* a-ferde;
For he was girt with his crokyd swerde,
And with hym brouȝt, also in his honde,
His slepy zerde, pleyauȝt as a wonde,
With a serpent goyn g envirouȝ.
And at his fete, also lowe a-doun,
Me sempte also þat þer stood a cok,
"Mercury had his musical pipes in his mouth, and looked as Fulgentius describes him.

Singyng his houris trewe as any clok.
And to pe mouthe of pis god Mercurie,
Wer pipes sette, pat songe wonder merye;
Of whiche pe soote sugred armonye
Made in myn eris swiche a melodye,
\(\text{is}\) pat me sempte \(\text{bo}\) in myn avis,
I was ravisched * in-to paradyss.
And \(\text{pis}\) pis god, diuers of liknes,
More wonderful \(\text{pan}\) I can expresse,
Scherweyd hym sylf in his apparence,
Liche as he is discrined in Fulgence,
In \(\text{pe}\) book of his methologies,
Wher be rehearsed many poysyes
And many liknes, liche as \(\text{ze}\) may se.
And for to take \(\text{pe}\) moralite:
His longe zerde, ri\(\text{t}\) as is a lyne,
Whiche on no syde wrongly may decline,
Signefieth \(\text{pe}\) prudent gouernauce
Of discret folke, \(\text{pat}\) \(\text{por}\); her puruiaunce
Cast a perel or \(\text{pat}\) it be-falle;
And his pipes, loude as any schalle,
\(\text{pat}\) \(\text{poru}\); musik ben entvned trewe,
Betokene\(\text{p}\) eke, with many lusty hewe,
\(\text{pe}\) sugred dites, by grete excellence,
Of rethorik and of eloquence,
Of whiche \(\text{pis}\) god is souereyn & patroun;
And of \(\text{pis}\) cok \(\text{pe}\) soote lusty sovn,
\(\text{pat}\) iustly kepe\(\text{p}\) \(\text{pe}\) houris of \(\text{pe}\) ni\(\text{t}\),
Is outery pavise inward si\(\text{t}\)
Of swiche as voide by waker dilligence
Oute of her court, sloufe & necligence;
And his swerd, whichc crok\(\text{e}\) so ageyn,
\(\text{pat}\) is nat forged* nor [y-]made in weyn,
Is to reuoke to \(\text{pe}\) ri\(\text{t}[e]\) weye
Swiche as wrongly fro troupe do forveye;
BK. II] Paris’s Speech and Dream. The 3 Goddesses. 217

And pe serpent, whiche pat I of tolde,
Whiche wrinkled is, as 3e may beholde,
Vp-on pe 3erde and aboute goth,
Signesieth pat falsheude wod & wroth
Lith in a-weyt by many sleiȝty weye,
With his gynnes troupe to werreye.
And pis god, of eloquence kyng,
Brouȝt with hym, eke in his commynge,
Cithera, whom louer[e]s serue,
Iuno, and Pallas, pat callid is Minerue.
And pis* Venus, her legis to delite,
Aboute his hed hadde dowes white,
With loke benigne and eyen deboneyre,
Ay flikeryng with snowy wynys fayre,
For to declare, sothly* in sentence,
By pe dowes verray Innocence
Of hem in loue pat but troupe mene,
And pat her grounde schulde honest be & clene,
I-tokenyd is, clerely be witnes,
With-out soillyng or any vnclennes;
And pe fresshnesse* of pe roses rede,
Cat in somer so lustyly do sprede,
And in wynter of her colour fade,
Signyfieth pe hertyl patoutis glade
Of zonge folkis pat ben amerous,
Feruent in hope, & inly desyrous,
Whan loue gynneþ in her hertis flour,
Til longe proces makeþ hem to lour
With pe wynter of vnweldy age,
Pat lust is pallid & dullid with pe rage
Of febilnes whan somer is a-goon,
As folkys knowe, I trowe mo þan on;
And perfor Venus fleteth in a se,
To schewe pe trouble and aduersite
Pat is in Loue, and his stormy lawe,

2517. kyng] a kyng D 1.
2525. sothly] shortly C, sootly A.
2543. in a] on the D 2.
Whiche is beset with many sturdy wawe,
Now calm, now Rowe, who-so take hede,
And hope assailed ay with * sodeyn drede.  2548

And next Venus, Pallas I be-helde,
With hir spere and hir cristal schelde,
And a raynbowe rounde aboute hir hed,
Dat of colour was grene, blew, and red;  2552
And a-forn hir, as I can discryue,
Sche growyng had a grene fresche olyue;
And þer-vpon, with his * browes fowle,
In þe brawnychis I sawe sitte an owle.  2556

And first þe scheld of Pallas, þe goddes,
Signified, as I can expresse,
In vertu force, by manly hige diffence 2560
Ageyns vices to maken resistance;
And hir spere, scharp & kene grounde,
By iust rygour was forged to confoure
Hem þat be false, and to putte a-bake;
And for þat mercy schal medle with þe wrak,
Þe schaft, in soth, schaue was ful pleyn;
List merciles þat riȝt ne wrouȝt in veyn;
And after werre to make a ful reles, 2564
þer was þe olyve þat betokneth pes;
þe owle also, so odous at al,
þat songis singeth at festis funeral,
Declareth pleynly, þe fyn of euery glorie,
Is only deth, who hath it in memorie; 2572

And þe raynbow grene, red, and pers,
Signifieth þe changis ful divers
Dat ofte falle in werre and bataille,
Now to wynne and sodeynly to faile,
Now stable as blew, chaunging * now as grene,
For Pallas play is alwey meynt with tene.
And alderlast, as I haue in mynde, 2576

Whiche of hir nymphes, Iuno cam be-hynde,
Whiche of custom, as Fulgens[e] tellis,
Abide in flodis and in depe wellis. And pis Iuno, as poetis seyn, [leaf 33 a] dwell in floods. Juno is a virgin. 
A mayden is, and of frute bareyn; 2584 Her sacred bird is the Peacock.
And pe pecok to pis fresche quene I-sacrid is, with his feperis schene, Splayed a-brod as a large sail, Water be-
With Argus eyen empented in his tail. 2588 tokens
pe water rennyng in riuer and in flood, labour.
Is pe labour pat men hane for good, After the
pe gret[e] trouble and pe besynes flow of the
pat day & nyzt pei suffre for ryches; tide must
pat who pat euer in pis flodis rowe, 2592
Lat hym be war, for ay after pe flowe, Fortune will
Of nature, ript as it is dewe, pull out rich
Folwyng pe mone pe[r] mote an ebbe sewe; folks’
pe most[e] drede is ay vpon pe fulle, feathers.
List Fortune pe fresche feperis pulle
Of riche folke pat schyne in gold so schene, fortune
Sith sche of chaungyng lady is and quene. 2600

And Argus eyen, pat ar sette be-hynde, After the
In nygard hertis be oft[e] sythes blynde, flow of the
Whiche nat aduerte of goodis to pe ende, tide must
pat liche an ebbe sodeynly wil wende, 2596 come the ebb.
Whyche pei no ping consydren in her siti; 2604
Fortune will
For as pe faire lusty fetheris briȝt pull out rich
Of a pecok vnwarly falle a-vey, folks’
Riȝt so riches, shortly at a day, feathers.
Wyln her maister sodeynly forsafe, 2608 Their riches
Seyn a-dieu, and her leue take. will forsake.
And as Iuno bareyn is of frute, 2612 As Juno is
Riȝt so nakid, bare, and destitute childless, so
Ar pe gredy hertis couetous, are greedy
Whiche to gadre ben so desyrous, hearts desti-
pat in no ping can hauie sufficiance, 2616 tute.
be fret of drede hem putte in swiche meschaunce, Ymagenyng pat pe world wil faille;
2603. riches] Rychesses D 2, richesses D 1.
And in her fere ageyn pé wynd péi saille,
Til [al] attonys péi mote go per-fro.
Namly of hem pat so pynche & spare :
For pis no drede, as clerkis can declare,
Be frute of good is to spende large;
And who is manful, set but litel charge
To parte frely his tresour in comovne,
Whan he discretly seth tyme oportune.
He hath no Ioye to put his good in mwe ;
For an * hert pat fredam list to sewe,
Of gentilnes takep noon hed per-to.
And in pis wyse, Pallas and Iuno,
With fresche Venus, ben a-doun descended,
Liche a I haue schortly comprehended,
Vnder pé guying of Mercurivs,
Which vn-to me gan his tale pus:

Howe Parys yaf pé golden appele to Venus, and howe
sche promysed hym to rekyvere Heleyne.1

'S Paris, Juno, Minerva and Venus
were at a feast with Jupiter.

‘Parys,’ quod he, ‘lifte vp pin eye and se!
Loo, pis goddesses here in noumbré thre,
Whiche fro heuene with her eyen clere
So diuersly vn-to the appere,
Wern at a fest, as I pe tellyn schal,
With alle pé goddis aboue celestial,
Dat Iubiter held at his owne borde.
Was non absent only sane Discord ;
And for dispit sche was not per present,
To be avenged sche sette al hir entent,
And in hir wittes many weyes souȝt,
Til at pé last, euene pus sche wrouȝt,
Of poetis liche as it is tolde :
Sche toke an appil rounde of purid gold,
With greke lettris grauen vp & doun,
Whiche seide pus, in conclusion,
With-oute strife that it were 3ove anon
To the fairest of hem euerychon.
And of Discord pis lady & goddes,
As sche that is of debat maistres,
Hath pis appil, passyng of delit,
Broust to pis fest, of malis and despit,
And cast it doune among hem at he bord
With deynious chere, spekyng not a word;
But on hir weye fast[e] gan hir hize.
And sodeynly so prive gret envie
In-to he court pis appil hath in broust,
So gret a werre & swiche a kontek wroust
In he hertis of pis ilke thre,
That after long may not staunched be;
Among hem sile so he gan disdeyn
Whiche in bewte was most souereyn,
And whiche of hem hap best title of riyt
For to conquere pis bornyd appil briyt.
And first he gan pus for bewte striue,
That of * rancour her hertis almost ryue.
To wit of riyt who schuld it first possede—
Loo, that envye regneth in womanhede,
That on is fayrer than another holde;
For eche woman of hir kynde wolde
Haue on som part pris a-boue another,
In eche estat, in soth it is noon other.
And eche of hem, in her owne avis,
Hath Ioye in bewte for to han a pris;
For non so foule doth in a myrow prye,
That sche is feir in hir owne eye.
But liche a fool he hym sile doth quite,
That awmber 3elwe chese[p] for he white.
A gowndy eye is deceyued sone,
That any colour chese[p] by he mone;
For som colour is with fir made fyn,
And som encresid with spicus & with wyn,
With oynementis* & confeccions;

And on nyght, by false illusion,

Somme appere wonder fresche and faire,
pat loke dirke a day-liȝt in pe eyre.

Per is no pref but erly by pe morwe,
Of swiche as nede no bewte [for] to borwe,
But as Nature hath hir silf disposed.

Perfore fastynge, or boystis ben vnclosyd,
Make pi choyse, liche as bit Ovide,
Whan euer drogge & pot is set a-syde,
List pat pou be, after his sentence,
Deceyvil liȝtly by fals apparence,
For now-a-dayes swiche craft is ful rife.
And in pis wyse pus be-gan pe stryf
Be-twixe Iuno, Venus, and Pallas,
pat be descendid for pis sodeyn caa,
By on assent, towching her bewte,
pe dom per-of comitted vn-to pe.

I speke to pe, pat callid art Parys,
And holdyn art riȝt prudent & riȝt wys,
Be avysed how pi dom schal fyne;
For pei ne may to nor fro* declyne,
But obeie, alle, by oon assent,
With-oute strif to pi Iugement.

But herk[e], frist, or pat pou procede,
Of eche of hem what schal be pi mede,
Considere arȝt, & take good hede pe-ri-to:

3if pou pe appil graunte vn-to Iuno,
Sche schal pe ȝef plente of riches,
Hiȝe renoun, of fame eke worpines,
With habundauwce of gold & of tresour,
And do pe reise to so hiȝe honour,
pat pou allone alle oper schalt excelle,
For pi guerdoun, liche as I pe telle.

If you grant the Apple to Juno, you'll get wealth, renown

If to Minerva,
And ȝif to Pallas, goddesse of prudence,

222 Paris's Vision. He is to give an Apple to 1 of 3 Goddesses. [BK. II

"* Some women, made up with confeccions, look well at night.

Therefore it is best to make one's choice before breakfast, as Ovid bids,—before the drug-boxes are open.

Paris, be well advised in your judgment.

If you grant the Apple to Juno, you'll get wealth, renown

and honour.

If to Minerva,
The Rewards that he will get.

For the sentence, he shall have assurance of wise and sapience,
To discern by the skill of reason;
Also fer as Phebus cast his list,
Nor in this world, sith that it began,
Of just report a manlier man,
And zif to Venus, of true and chaste intent,
Of that list to grant, in conclusion,
Of that apple to have possession,
That first goddess, that so high above,
That fairest lady that is or was to-fore,
Or in this world ever she shall be borne;
And in Greece then shall his knyghtly wynne.
Now be avisid or that pou be-gynne,
Justly to deme, and for no thing spare.
And I anon gan loken vp and stare,*
Gretly astoned what me was best to do,
Til at last I spake Mercury to,
And seide, certeyn, that I ne wolde there
3euen no dom, but pei naked were,
So that I my3t have ful[ly] libertie
Everyche of hem avisely to se,
And consyderen euery circumstauence
Who fairest wer vn-to my plesauence,
And goodliest, to speke of womonhede,
And after that to my doom procede.
And pei anon, as 3e haue herde me seie,
In al hast to don her besy cure

2727. 2nd and] and of A, D 1. 2731. pis] pe D 1.
Hem to dispoill of cloping & vesture,
Liche as þe statut of my dom hem bonde:
In a poyn,[t] þei nolde it not withstonde,
þat I myȝt haue ful inspeccion
Of forme & schap & eche proporcioun,
For to discerne, as I can remembre,
Avisely by ordre everie membre,
And þanne at erst to iugen* after riȝt.
But whanne þat I of eche had a siȝt,
I ȝaf to Venus þe appil riȝt anon,
Be-cause sche was fairest of echon,
And most excellying, sothly, of* bewte,
Most womanly & goodly on to se,
As I dempte pleylyn in my siȝt.
For þe strenys of hir eyen briȝt,
Liche glade and egal euene of liȝt
Wern to þat sterre þat schew[th] toward nyȝt,
Whiche callid is Esperus so schene,
Venus hir silf, þe fresche lusty quene.
þe whiche anon, þis heuenly Empersetse,
After my doom, of herly hye gladnesse,
þat of þe appil sche hooly hap þe glorie,
And wonyn hit iustly by victorie,
Reiroyched hir more þan I can telle,
þat sche hir feris in bewte dide excelle.
And sche in hast, of trewe affecciouw,
Concluded hap, fully for my guerdoun,
Ful demurly, lowe and nat a-lofte,
To Mercurye with sobre wordis softe,
Devoide boþe of doubilnes & slouthe,
Liche hir behest holde wil hir truth.
And sodeynly, with-out[e] more Iniurye,
þei disapered, and þe god Mercurie
Striȝt to heuene þe riȝt[e] weye toke;
And I anon out of my slepe awoke.

2760. nolde] wolde D 1.
2763. discern[e] discrive D 1, descerne D 2.
2765. iugen] iugen C.
2769. excell[lyng] excellent D 2, D 1—of] in C.
2770. good[ly] good D 1—on to] vnto A.
2771. dempte] deme A. 2791. þe] and the A.
Wher-of, my lord, whom I most loue & drede,
3if 3e aduerte and wysly taken hede,
pat pis behest, affermyd in certeyn,
Was vn-to me assured nat in veyn
Of goodly Venus, liche as I haue tolde.
Wherfore, I rede 3e ben of hert[e] bolde,
Me for to sende with strong & myȝty hond,
With-oute abood,* in-to Grekis lond,
After pe forme pat I haue 3ow seyde.
And, I hope, 3e schal be wel apayde,
Whan I haue sped, as Venus hap be-hiȝt,
And hom retourned with my lady briȝt:
So schal 3e best, me list nat speke in veyn,
Beschaunge of hir 3our suster wyne ageyn,
Whom Thelamoun with-holden hap so 3ore.
Lo, pis is al ; I can seye 3ou no more
Towching theffect hooly of myn avis."
And after pat, stille sat Parys,
As he pat hap fully hym silf* aquyt.
But seye, Priam, allas! where was pi witte,
Of necligence for to take kepe,
pɨ trust to sette on dremys or on slepe!
Ful pinne was pi discrecioun,
To take a grounde of fals illusion,
For to procede liche pi fantasye
Vp-on a sweuene meyn with flaterye!
Allas! resoun was no ping pi guyde!
For Pallas was wrongly sette a-syde,
Nat receyued with dew reuercence;
And Iuno eke, with al hir sapience,
For al hir good & lokyng debonayre,
With hir* tresour & hir hestis faire,
Refusid was, allas, of wilfulnes.
And sche pat is of loue pe* goddes,
And eke also of Wlcanus pe wyf,

2796
"So you'd better send me to Greece;
and when I get back with my bright lady,
you can change her for Hesione."
2800
2804
2808
2812 O Priam, where were your wits
to trust in a dream?
2816
2820 Reason was not your guide.
2824 Minerva and Juno were disregarded.

TROY BOOK.
In whos seruise is euere werre and strif,  
Preferrid was pe appil to possede,  
Ageyn [al] ri3t, for Paris toke noon hede  
Saue vn-to lust, & sette a-syde troupe.  
Wher-þoruþ, allass,—& þat was ful gret routhe—  
þe myþty, riche, And þe noble toun  
Of Troye was brouþt to confusioun:
Only for he knyþthod hath forsake,  
Prudence and gold, & in his choyse y-take  
Only a wooman, and holden hym þer-to,  
As þis* story ceryously schal telle.  
But I in dremys wil no lenger dwelle,  
But write furth how þat Dephebus,  
þe pridde soone of kyng Priamus,
His tale gan in opyn audience,  
And to þe kyng, schortly in sentence,  
As he þat list a troupe nat to spare,  
Euene þus his conceyt to declare:
"My lord," quod he, "þif þat euery wiþt  
Aduerten schuld & castyn in his siþt  
Of future ping þe pereil & þe doute,  
And cerchyn it with-Innen & with-oute,  
From poynyt to poynyt, alwey in his resoun  
To cast[e] doutes & turnen vp-so-doun,  
þanne no wyþt schulde to no purpos wende  
In any mater for to make an ende,  
Or dar presvme by manhod in his pouþt.  
Who cast perilles acheveþ litel or nouþt:  
For þif þe plowman alwey cast a-forne,  
How many graynes in his feld of corne  
Schal be devourid of foulis raunynous,  
þat he doth sowe in feldys plenteuous,  
þanne schulde he neuer, in vale nor in pleyn,  
For cowardyse þrowe abrod his greyne.  
Lat al swyche drede now be leyde a-syde:

226 Paris the cause of Troy's fall. Deiphobus says 'Act at once.' [BK. II

mischief-breeding wife followed.
Paris set Pleasure before Truth,
wherby noble Troy fell.
Deiphobus, Priam's third son, then spoke:
he'd never bring it to an end.
Set fear aside.

2828. werre] woo D 1. 2829. possede] procede A.
2856. cast] casteþ D 2, casteth D 1. 2861. vale] valey A.
2862. cowardysel] cowardshippe A.
Deiphobus advises the Trojans to send Paris to Greece.

I holde foly lengere to abyde,
But hit Parys, my brother, make him strong,
With his schippis for to venge our wrong
Vp-on Grekis, with al his payne & my3t,
To preue schortly hit is a kny3t.
For of resoun 3e consyderere may,
How hit no man iustly may sey[e] nay,
But hit Parys hath counsailed wele;
For be my troupe, as fer as I can fele,
It wer errour his purpos to contrarie.
Wherfor, lat hym now no lenger tarie,
But holde his wey with a strong navie,
For to avenge pe grete villenye,
pat Grekis han, zif 3e taken hede,
Don her-to-forn to vs andoure kynred;
And, for fynal executiouz
Of pe recure touchyng Exyoun,
Whom pei trete in dishoneste wyse,
Ageyn al rjzt and title of iustice,
pat to pink, it 3e with myn hert a wounde,
pe schame of whiche so new[e] doth rebounde
Vp-on alle pat ben of hir allye.
Wherfor, pe best pat I can espie,
Is pat Parys take pis viage,
With swiche as ben of fresche & lusti age,
Many to wende in-to Grekes* lond;
And by force of her my3ti honde,
Maugre pe Grekis, proude & most ellat,
Ravische per som lady of estat;
And panne 3e may, be kny3thod of my broper,
3if 3e list, chaunge hir for pe toper.
pis most redy & schort conclusioun
pat I can sen for restitucion
Of Exyoun, zif [hit] Parys wende;
And of my conseil schortly pis pe ende."
And panne as fast, ful discrete & sage,
Helenus warns them that Paris's Expedition means Ruin. [BK.II

Then
Helenus,
Priam's
fourth son,
speaks:

Elenus, pe ferpe sone of age,
Ros from his cete with gret reuereunce,
Praying his fader graunte hym audience,
pat he may seyn in presens of hem alle,
Openly what pat schal be-falle,
As he pat most of secre jinges can.
And soburly pus his tale he gan,
With clene entent and trew affecioun:

Howe Elenus, pe fourte sone of Priame, tolde & seid
pat Troye shuld be subuerted, and Parys went into
Greece.¹

"My lord," quod he, "with supportacioun
Of your grace, wher-in is most my trust,
Lat non offence ben vn-to your lust,
Nor you displese, pouz I say my conceyt,
Sith ze knowe I mene no discyeht;
For neuer yet failed no sentence,
But pat it fil in experience,
Liche as I tolde, in party and in al,
In pryue trete & in general,
With-out menyng of any doubilnes,
at it folwed as I did express;
Remembre you, and ze schal fynd it trewe.
And zif God wil, I schal not now of newe
Spare for to seyn, liche as I conceyue,
Nor, to be ded, with fraude you deceyue,*
Declaryng first of trewe entenciouw,
As it schal folwe in conclusion,
[at if Paris in-to Greece wende,
Trusteþ me wel, it wil vs alle schende.
Þe goddis han, by reuelacioun,
Made vn-to me demonstracioun;
And eke I knowe it by astronomye;
For neuer yet in my prophesye
Nas I deceyued of pat schuld[e] falle,
Nor noon þat list me to counseil calle,

2908. he gan] by gan A. 2915. and] or D 1.
2916. ß] nor D 1. 2922. deceyue] to deceyue C.
2929-42 are omitted in D 2.
¹ Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 45 c (misplaced after line 2926).
Helenus's Warning of the Ruin Paris's going will work. 229

So am I taunt of ping pat schal be-tyde.
Wherfor, I praye, for rancour nor for pride,
Nor for envie of [noon] old hatered,
To take vengauce pat 3e nat procede
In 3our avis, liche as 3e purpose ;
I seye 3ou pleynly, for me list nat glose,
3w schal repente 3if 3e Parys sende
In-to Greece, pe whiche God defende!
Wyteth pis wel, for pe conclusion
Schal fully turne to oure destructioun,
And fynally in-to oure ruyne,
Liche as to 3ow I can a-forn devyne.
For pis pe fyn pat per folwe schal:
Submersioun, bothe of tour and wal,
Of paleys, house, here in oure cite,
Al goth to nou3t; 3e gete no more of me;
For me semeth, it ou3te I-now suffye,
Pat I haue seid, sith pat 3e be wyse :
For 3if pat 3e aduerte to my sawe,
I doute not, pat 3e wil withdrawe
3oure hand be-tyme, or pat more damage
Assaile 3ou by constreynt of pis rage.
For bet it is be-tymes to abstene
From pis* purpos, which is 3et but grene,
Pat of hede hastily assente
To ping for whiche we schal echon repente ;
For plenerly per schal no ping socoure,
Pat per schal folwe of 3ou & alle 3oure
Despitful deth, with-oute excepcioun,
Of on and alle abydyng in pis toum.
First on 3our silf, pleynly to endyte,
Schal pe vengauce of pe Grekis byte,
por3 pe furie of her mortal tene ;
And 3oure wyfe, Eccuba pe quene,
Schal lede hir lyf, por3 Grekis cruelte,
In sorwe & wo and in captiuite ;
Helenus and his Speech against Paris's going. [BK. II]

"Your folk and their young shall be slain.
And 3oure leges by ye swerde schal pace
Of cruel deth, with-outen any grace;
And Innocentis mercyles schal blede,
In 3our avis 3if ye shal preeede
Of wilfulnes a werre for to make,
And folily for to vndirtake
For to perturbe 3our quiete and 3our reste,
Which schal turne no ping for ye best,
But to ruyne of 3ow & of vs alle.
I can no more; but ye 3at meschef falle,
Mi conseil is a-forn for to prouyde,
And wilfulnes for to sette a-syde;
Specialy, whan deth, as I 3ow tolde,
Mote be ye fyn, 3if ye 3our purpos holde.
Loo, here is al, with-oute wordis mo,
In-to Greece 3if ye Parys goo!"
And in pis wyse, whan ye Elenus
Had pleinly seid, as Guydo telleth vs,
Trist and hevy, with a pale face,
Ageyn resorteth to his sittyng place,
Of whos sentence astonyd euerychon
Sat in silence, stille as any stoon,
Powerles her hertis to reswme.
To speke a word no man dar preswme
Of alle ye pres, but kept her lippes clos,
Til at ye laste, Troylus up a-ros,
3ong, fresche, and lusty, & coraious also,
And ay desyrous for to haue a-do
In armys manly, as longeth to a kny3t.
And when ye he, of chere ful glad & li3t,
Sawe his fader and breperen euerychon
So inly troublid, pus he spak anon:
"O noble & worpi, sittyng enviroun,
Of hys prudence & gret discreciouw,
Manful also, and of hys corage,
What sodeyn fere hap brou3t 3ou in pis rage?
What new[e] trouble is cropen in 3our brest,

For þe sentence of a cowarde prest?—
Sith þei echon, as ȝe schal euere fynde,
Desyre more, verrayly, of kynde,
To lyue in lust & voide away traueyle,
And dedly hate to heren of bataille;
For þei her wit fynally applye
To swe her lust & lyue in glotonye,
To fyll her stomak & restore her mawe,
To rest & ese euere for to drawe,
And to swe her inward appetite,
þis her Ioye and þis is her delyte,
In etynge, drinkyng, and in couetyse
Is her studie, and fully to deuyse
How þei may folwe her lust, without more,
Of riȝt nouȝt ellis sette * þei no store.
Alias, for schame! whi be þe so dismaied,
And sitte mwe, astonyed & affrayed
For þe wordis of þis Elenus,
Ferful for drede as a litel mows,
bat he quaketh to here speke of riȝt;
And, more-our, ageyn al skil & riȝt,
In preudise of þe goddis alle,
He take þ on hym to seyn what schal be-falle,
Of ping futur for to specyfie,
As he had a spirit of profecye
Grauntid to hym alone in special,
As þauȝe he were in konyng perigal
To þe goddis, hauynge prescience
To schew a-forn, þorȝ his sapience,
What schal be-tide, ouper euell or good.
Lat be, lat be! for no riȝt is so wood,
bat hap his witte, to þeue per-to * credence,
bat any man by crafte or by science,
bat mortal is, hap konyng to devine
Fortunys cours, or fatys to termyne.
Swyche causis hid, conseilid in secre,
Reserued ben to goddis priuete;

"Priests always want
to avoid war."

They fill their bellies,
and drink, and care only for pleasure.

Why are you frightend at Helenus's words?
Without any reason,
he claims the spirit of prophecy,
as if he knew as much as the Gods.
What sensible man can believe that he knows the Gods' secrets?

3011. her wit] herwith A.
3016. 1st [þis] þis is D 1—is] om. A. 3020. sette] set C.
3037. per-to] to þe C. 3042. to] vn to D 1.
Men may divine, but al is but folye
To taken hede; for pei don but lye. 3044
Wherfor, I rede, as in pis mater,
Bope on and alle, & 3ou my lord so dere,
Texclude al drede & al pat may disturbe
Out of 3our hert, and lat no ping perturbe 3048
3our hize corages, pat Helenus hap tolde;
And 3if pat he of hert[e] be nat bolde,
As manhod wold, to help[e] venge our wronge,
Let him go and hide in the temple,
Lat hym go hyde hym in pe temple strong, 3052
And kepe hym clos in contemplacioun,
To wake and praye by deuocioun
With-oute socour, a-dayes and a-ny3tes,
and let bold knights
And suffrep swiche as be lusty kny3tes 3056
To hante her 3oufe & grene lustynes,
Manly in armys to preue her hardynes,
pat pei may hane pe better acquaintaunce
do vengeance on their foes.
In tyme comyng, for to do vengeance
On her enmyes and her cruel soon.
Bid Paris
And commaundeth pat Parys may forge gon
To execute pe fyn of 3our entent, 3064
Afor 3050. purposed in 3our parliamen,
Vp-on Greki for her offencioun,
exact redress for our ancient wrongs."
To parforme vp pe paye of talioun
For wrongis old, of whiche 3it pe fame
Rehersid is vn-to our alder schame 3068
porate-oute pe world, 3e wot pis is no les." And per-with-al Troylus held his pes.
All present
And sodeynly alle pat were present
Be-gan attonys, al be on assent, 3072
praise Troylus's advice,
Troilus counself gretyly for to preyse, [leaf 10 c]
And his manhod to pe heuene areyse,
His fresche corage and his hize prowes,
His fermenvt 3el and his hardines, 3076
And of on hert gretyly hym comende;
And ri3t anoon pei made an ende.

3046. so] most A, D 2. 3050. nat] not so D 1.
3068. vn-to] to D 1. 3074. areyse] Reyse D 2, reise D 1.
3067-78 are repeated in D 2.
Priam tells Paris to get ready to sail. *His Speech.*

Priam dines in Troy at noon,
and bids Paris and Deiphobus go to Panonia,
and make ready to sail to Greece.

Next day he says to his Councell:
"Nobles, you know how the Greeks have wrongd us now, and have kept my sister Hesione in servitude, and to consider & seen it be my lyue; who's cruelte we han to dere abou't, nat-with-stondying pat I haue menys sou3t tho I sent

3095. new [ ]; D 1—now] here now D 1.
3110. seen] sent A.
Priam tells his Council he will send Paris to Greece. [BK. II]

"Antenor to Greece to bring her back.

To ben in rest, without any more,
When in-to Greece I sent Anthenor,
Peyssibly my sustery to recure,
And pe surplus paciently tendure.
But al for nouȝt; pei toke of it non hede,
For al pat I offered of goodlyhede;
It was nat herd, for lak of gentilines,
Record of whiche doubleth my distres.

3116

Wherfor, we most, as techeth sorcerye,
With scharp yrens sechyn remedye,

We must cure this by sharp irons,

and cut away the Grecs' proud flesh.

To kut away, by pe rote rounde,
pe prowde flesche pat groweth in pe grounde,
Whiche wil not voide with oynementis softe,
Al-be pat pei be leid per-to ful ofte.
Riȝt so be ensample, we most be duresse

3120

Getyn recur, whan pat with * fairness,
We may noon haue: wherfor, be ȝour avys,
My purpos is to send[e] forpe Parys
In-to Greece, som lady þer to wynne,
And bring hir hom; & we schal her with-Inne

3124

Kepe hir strong, maugre who seyth nay,
Til we sen som agreable day,
þat pei be fayn, liche myn oppinioun,
To haue exchauTiere for hir of Exyoun,
My dere suster, whom I loue so.

3128

We may nat faile þat it schal be do,
So þe goddis be to vs fauourable,
And þis counsell be also acceptable
To ȝou echon, as it is to me;
For when a ping toucheþ a commvnte—
Of wyse men as it is affermed—
Of alle þe comoun it ouȝte be * conformed;
þing touchyng al schuld[e] ben aprovid
Of alle echon, or it wer a-cheuyd:
Wherfor, I cast, be avis of ȝou echon,
Pleinly to werke." & with þat word anoon

3132

3136

3140

3144

3148

pis noble Priam was sodeynly in pes.

3122. sechyn] shapen D 1.
3126. þer-to] þere D 2.
3128. with] be C.
3129. avys] devys D 2 (partly erased).
3144. be] to be C.
And after that, among[es] al pe pres,
Whan al was hust, in her alder sit,
A knypt vp ros, and Pentheus he hit,
That son[e] was of Euforbius—
De transformatis, as seith Ovidius—
In-to whom he feyneth that per was
Whilom pe sowle of Pyctagoras
Holy transmewed, so as writ Ovide:
As touchyng that, I wil no lenger byde,
But telle fore of that Pentheus,
A-fore pe kyng whiche gan his tale pus:
"My lige lord, vn-to your hize noblesse
Displese it nat, nor to your worpines,
In presence of your maieste
That I schal seyn, for taquite me
Towardis 30w of my feith & troupe;
For sothfastly in me may be no sloupe
Touchyng 3oure honour, pat with-oute drede,
With 3el of feith I brene as doth pe glede,
Of alle harmys to bidden 3ow be war.
For dout[e]les affermes wel I dar,
Jif 3e stond in 3our first avis,
As 3e purpos, to sende forpe Parys,
I dout[e] nat pat it schal 3ou rew.
For God wel wot, of old & nat of newe,
I had a fader callid Euforbius,
Discret & wis, and riȝt vertuous,
And knowyng had a-forn of euery þing
By prescience and by for-wetyng,
To telle pleinly poruȝ his philosophie,
So clere he saw with his hertiis eye,
Pat þer ne was no þing so secre
Hid from his knowyng, nor no preuite
Pat he hit knewe; he was of witte so sage.
And at þe last, wan he was of age
An hundrid 3ere, with lokkis grey & hore,
Pentheus’s Speech against Paris’s Expedition. [BK. II]

I can remembre how he compleyned sore
And wepe also of pite tenderly,
Fully affermyng, 3if Paris utterly
Went in-to Greece to ravishe hym a wyf,
þer schuld[e] folwe swiche a mortal stryf
Vp-on vs alle, þat sothly þis cite
Schuld in-to asches & cyndres turned be;
And þat þer schuld no þing vs socour;
þat Grekis swerd schal cruelly deour
Bope híe & lowe, & pleynly spare noon.
Pray, then,
Wherfor, I praye, among 3ou euerychon,
Of þat I telle hauep no dispit;
3our wrong to venge putteth in respit;
And rancour old, I rede þat 3e lete;
And þe tranquille now of 3our quiete,
Of hastynes, þat 3e [nat] submitte
To Fortune þat can so falsly flitte;
Perturbeth nat, for non olde enmyte,
With new[e] steryng 3oure felicite:
For 3if þat 3e to þis iourne assent,
3e euerychon ful sore schal repente;
And 3if 3e wiln algatis þedir sende,
In Paris stede lat som 3eper wende,
List his viage be to 3ou no sped;
þis * my counceil, & þis is [ful] my rede,
Seide vnder support only of 3our grace.”

His hearers
And sodeinly þei gan echon to chace
At Pentheus, & lowde ageyn hym eire,
Reprovyng hym and þe prophesye
Of his fader to her confusion.
Alas! what
But, o alas! þe reuoluicioun
Of Ioye or wo, [or] of felicite!
is ordaind must happen.
For þing* ordeyned nedes moste* be;
þe ordre of þinges with* fate is so englued,
For þat schal falle may nat be eschedew; [leaf 41 b]
Whiche caused hem for to assent in on,
Vndiscretly, þat Parys schulde gon—
Vnhappily with hap þei were envoluyd;
And þus concludyng, her counsell is dissoluyd.

But casuely, it by-fil riȝt þan,
þat þis avis vn-to þe eris ran
Of Cassandra, and sche with gret affray
Of sodeyn wo gan crye "weyllaway:"
"Allas!" quod sche, "allas! what wil þo don?"
What! schal Parys now in-to Greece gon?"
And with þat word, sche barst oute to* wepe
Ful pitously with inward syzes depe;
Sche gan to waile & swone for þe peyne,
And furiously with noyse to compleyne;
With woful rage & many pitous sown
Sche made a mortal lamentacioun:
For to be ded, sche myȝt hir nat with-holde;
With here to-torn, and with fistes folde,
Sche seyde "allas" more þan an huzdrid sythe—
"O stormy Fortune, why listow to kythe
þi cruel force to oure aduersite,
Vp-on vs alle & vp-on þis cite,
Of mortal Ire and gery violence,
With swerde of vengauunce wers þan pestilence?
O Troye, Troye, what is þi gilit, allas!
What hastow don, what is þi trespas,
To ben euersed & turned in-to nouȝt
With Wilde fyre? þi synne is dere [a]bouȝt!
A! Priam kyng! vncely is þi chance!
What hastow gilit, ouþer do greuauunce
To þi goddis, or wraþpid þoruȝ vnryȝt
Hem to prouoke to schewe her cruel myȝt
Vp-on þi blod? allas, what hastow do!
O moder myn! o Eccuba also!
What maner cryme or importable offence
Hastow wrouȝt to han swiche recompense
þe day to abyde, o noble, worþi quene,

Paris is to go to Greece.
Cassandra hears this.
She weeps
and wails,
She says:
"Fortune! why will you wreck our city?"
and tears her hair.

Paris. 237
2324

3231. barst] brast A, D 2, D 1—to] & C.
3242. 2nd vp-on] on D 1. 3248. wilde] ilde D 1.
Cassandra goes to Priam,

Of his sonys swiche vengauce for to sen!
O woful deth, cruel and horrible!
Alas! whi ar 3e now no more credible
To my conseil swiche harmys to eschewe,
3our mortal purpos fully to remewe,
pat he go nat, as it is ordeyned;
For pou3t of whiche I am so constreyned,
pat vnnepe I may 3e wo endure!"
And to hir fader 3is woful creature
Halt strey3t hir way, & fallip plat to grounde,
And of hir wepyng al in water wounde—
By hir chekis so 3e teris reyne—
And as sche my3t, for constreint of hir peyne,
Vp-on hym sche gan to clepe & crye,
Besechyng hym to schape remedye,
With pitous vois, as sche 3at knew ful wel
In 3is mater pleylyn euerydel,
What schal [be-]falle, & had it ful in mynde,
3e sodeyn harmys 3at swe schal be-hynde.
But al hir clamour was [nat] but in veyn;
For 3at schal falle, as somme clerkis seyn,
Ne may nat wel of men eschewed be;
And eke Fortune, by gret aduersite,
Of hasty Ire furious and wood,
And vnkynde to 3e Troyan blood,
Causeles ageyn[es] hem a-grevid,
And of rancour sodeynly amevid
With blynde a-waites to cache hem in a trauence,
Be violence of hir vnhappy chaunce,
Hath with a swy3e turned hir whele vnstable,
As sche 3at is envious and mutable,
To haste Troyans to her confusion,
Of wilfulnes and vndiscresiouw
Ageyns Grekis a quarel for to make.
And þer-vpon han hir conseil take,
And acheuyd, as 3e han herd deuyse,

3276. swe] we A, folwe D 1.  3282. to 3e] vn to D 1.
3285. hem] him D 1.  3291. a] om. A.
3292. þer-vpon] here vpon D 1.
The Trojans' Folly in rejecting wise Counsel.

With-oute assent of ye most[е] wyse.
For 3if ye had ye dissuasioun
Of Hector herde, concluded in resoun,
In pis mater, and of Elenus
The counsell take, and to Pentheus
Aduertid wysely, and to his sentence
With-oute feynyng 3oue ful credence,
And of Cassandra, pat neuer koude lye,
Prudently herde ye prophesye,
Fro point to point for to cast a-forn,
In swiche meschef ye had nat be lorn,
But flourid sit in her felicite,
With-oute damage and aduersite.

But Fortune vil haue hir cours alwey,
Whos purpos holt, who seyth 3e or nay;
For sche it was pat made pis viage,
With forhed pleyn and [a] false visage,
With sugre out-schad, and venym in ye rote,
Bitter of tast, and in schewyng soote,
Wrinkled double, like an hornyd snail,
Feyth in hir face & fraude ay in ye tail,
To hast Trojans acorden in-to oon,
Pat Paris schuld in-to Greece goon,
As ye han herde: per is no more to seyn;
For her-vppon ye cast hem & ordeyn.

Howe Parys toke ye See with a grete navye towarde
ye londe of Greece; and with of chance he met
with Kenge Menelay, Heleyns husbonde, not
knowynge what he was.1

The tyme aprocheþ whan ye sonne schene
His golden wayn whirlid vp a-twene
ye clere sterris of Iades so red,
Whiche han her si3t in ye Crabbis hed,
And Pliades, ye seuenne sterris bri3t,
Of whiche sixe apperen to oure si3t;
For ye seuenpe drawith hir asyde,

If they had but listend to Hector,
Helenus,
Pentheus and
Cassandra,
the Trojans would never have come to grief.
But Fortune will have her way,
faith in her face, and fraud in her tail.
[leaf 41 d]

When Spring came,

1 Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 47 b.
And courtely doth hir bemy hide,
Whilom for sche dide a gret offence,
\[3328\]hat vn-to vs causeth * hir absence.
For sche dar nat schewe hir stremys clere,
Nor with hir sustren openly apere,
Whilom for sche with a god mortal
Dide a synne hat was crimynal,
Whiche noised was * kouye poruʒ pe heuene,
\[3332\]hat sche allone among pe susters seune
Schroudeth to vs schamfastly hir chere.
And when Tytan in pe ʒodyak spere
Atwen pis sterris had[de] take his se,
Of pe Bole in pe sixtene degre,
Vp-on pe tyme of Ioly grene May,
Whan hat Flora with hir Hewes gay
Hath euery playn, medwe, hil, & vale
With hir flouris, quik and no ping pale,
Over-sprad & cladde in lyuere newe,
And braunchis blosme with many lusty hewe,
And bit vs * fully to be glad & liʒt—
For by assurauwe pei haue her frute be-hiʒt
Ageyn autumpne, who so list hem shake,*
Whan on vynes ripeth euery grape—
And pis sesoun, most lusty of disport,
Enbrasiʒ hertis with new recounfort,
Only of hope by kynde as it is dew,
hat holsom frute schal pe blosmys swe,
Whan tyme cometh by reuolucioun.
And pus in May, pe lusty fresche sesoun,
Whan briddes syngen in her armonyne,
The same tyme out of Panonye
\[3356\]
Deiphobus
Repeyred ben Dephebus and Paris,
And with hem brouʒt, chosen by devis,
ʒre þousand knyʒtes redy for to goon
With hem to Grece, & schippis many on,
Ful vitailed of al þat may hem nede.

3328. causeth] caused C.
3340. hir] his D 1—gay] gray D 2.
3345. vs] is C. 3347. shake] schape C.
And of þese schippis þe noumbræ, as I rede, 3364 Paris had 22 ships.
Was two & twenty, liche as writ Guydo.
And after þis, with-oute more a-do, 3368 Eneas, Antenor and Polydamas go with him.
þe kynge commaundeth vn-to Eneas, 3372 They are to rescue Hestione.
To Anthenor and to Polydamas, 3376 They are to rescue Hestione.
In al hast þat þei hem redy make 3380 Deiphobus go aboard,
With Parys kynȝtly for to vndirtake, 3384 Deiphobus go aboard,
As þe han herde, þis Iourne for tacheue. 3388 near Greece.
And on þe tyme whan þei toke her leue, 3392 They meet a ship in which is Menelaus,
Priamus, with schort conclusion, 3393 going to visit Nestor.
Schewep þe effect of his entencioun, 3395 Pyram A, D 2—a] þe C.
And specialy þat þei her dever don 3396 TROY BOOK.
Menelaus's wife was Helen. And Menelay, his* story berip witnes, Husband was to pe quene Eleyne, 

pat was suster to pe breper tweyne, Castor & Pollux, whiche, as I 3ou tolde, 

wer of her hond so worpi knyžtes holde. 
And in pat tyme, liche to her degre, 

In Strynestar, her most chef cite, 

pei held an housholde solempne & ryal. 

be lone of whom was so special,* Of wille & hert acordyng with pe dede, 

Atwixe hem two, of verray breperhede, 

pat noon from other koude lyue alone. 

and mother of Hermione. 

With [w]hom was eke pe maiden Hermyone, Of fairnes most inly souereyne, 

Of wille & hert acordyng with pe dede, Most passyngly excelllyng in bewte. 

And tus Troyans, sailyng by pe se Toward Grece, among pe wawis wete, And non of [hem] list, of verray pride, 

Kyung Menelay, sailyng by her syde; For to enquere what pat oper was, 

But passe furpe a ful huge pas, For non of hem oper koude knowe. 

And ey pe wynde pesybly gaz blowe, pe Troyan flete causyng in a while 

For taproche to the noble Ile 

pat callid is Cithera pis day; And in pe haene, in al hast pei may, 

pei cast hanker, & bond her schippis strong; 

3402. his] pe C. 
3410. special] in special C. 
3417. excelllyng] excellent D 2, D 1. 
3425. koude] kouthe A. 
And after that, hem list nat tarye long 3432 and go ashore.
To take þe lond, ful many lusty man,
Arraying hem as freshely as þei can.
Now, in þis Ile of passyng excellence,
þat was a temple of gret reuerence,
þat bilded was of olde fundacioun,
And most honoured in þat regioun,
þoruz-oute þe lond, bope fer & ner—
The fest[e] day, ay from 3er to 3er,
Liche as it fil by revoluciouz,
Repeyryng þeder of gret deuocioun,
In honour only of Venus, þe goddes,
Whom þe Grekis with al her besynes
Honoured: most of euery maner age,
With æiftes bringyng and with pilgrimage,
With gret offerynge and with sacrifyse,
And vsid was in her paynym wyse.
For in þis phane, as þei knele & wake
With contrit hert, & her prayer make,
þe statue 3af of euery questyouz
Pleyn answer and ful solucioun,
With cerymonyes to Venus as þei loute;
Of euery þing þat þei hadde doute,
þei hadde ful declaracioun.
And þus þe Grekis vp-on Cytherouz
Halwyn þis fest with riche & gret array,
With rytis due, as ferforpe as þei may,
In hope fully þe better for to prive.
And of fortune, whan he dide aryue
Vp-on þe lond, by auenture or cas,
þe same tyme þis fest[e] halwed was
Of many Greke, commyng to and fro
From euery cost, þat to þe temple go
On pilgrimage her vows to acquyte,
Of þe place þe reliques to vesyte.

3441. it fil] I fele D 1.
3454. hadde] had in D 1.
3462. halwed] holden D 1.
3463. many] many a A.
3465. vowes] vowe A—to acquyte] for to quite D 1.
Howe Parys enterde pe Ille of Citherea, wher he met with the fayre Quene Heleyne.¹

And whan Paris dide pis espie,  
He gadred out of his companye [3468]  
pe worpiest pat he chesen may;  
And to pe temple he took * pe riȝt[e] waye,  
Ful wel be-seyn, & in knyȝtly wyse,  
And dide his honour & his sacrifice [3472]  
Ful humblely to pe Grekis liche,  
With many nowche & many louwel riche,  
With gold & siluer, stonyys and perre  
He spendep per, liche to his degre,  
And quit hym manly in his oblacions [3476]  
And deuoutly in his orisouns  
He hym demeneþ, pat Ioy[e] was to se.  
Now was Parys of passyng grete bewte  
Among[es] alle pat euer werue alwyve:  
For þer was non pat myȝt with hym striue,  
Troyan nor Greke, to speke of semlyhede,  
Wonder fresche and lusty, as I rede, [3480]  
And in his port ful lik a gentil knyȝt.  
Of whos persone for to han a siȝt,  
þei gan to prese, boþe nyȝe and fere,  
So ryally he had hym in his gere, [3484]  
And coueyte, of hiȝe estat and lowe,  
What he was, gretly for to knowe;  
And of his men þei aske besely,  
Fro when he cam, & þe cause why, [3488]  
Of his comyng enqueryng on by on.  
But prudently þei kepethem euerychon,  
þat no þing was openly espyed  
In her answere, so þei han hem guyed, [3492]  
þat euery þing kepeth was secre,  
Eueryche of hem was so avisee;  
Al-be þat somme oppenly declare

¹ Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 48 a (misplaced after line 3470).
BK. II] Helen resolves to go to the Temple of Venus, to see Paris. 245

What pat he was, & ne list not spare,
But tolde pleyly pe cause of his commyng,
And how Priam, pe strong[e] mysty kyang,
His fader was, most royal of renoun,
And how he cam also for Exyoun.

حساس
He resolves to go to the Temple of Venus, to see Paris.

3500 Some of Paris's men tell the Greeks that he is sent by Priam to rescue Hesione.

3508 Eche with other be suspicioun
Demyng pe of liche her oppinioun,
And rapest pei pat no ping ne knewe,
As folkis don of pinges pat be newe.

3512 And whiles pei of pis mater trete
In sondry wyse amonc her wordes grete,
pe fame of hem gan anoon atteyne
To pe eris of pe quene Eleyne,

3516 Nige besyde in pat regiuon.
And whan sche herd be relacioun,
And by report of hem pat cam by-twene,
jis faire Eleyne, pis fresche, lusty quene,
Anon as sche pe sope vndirstood,
With-oute tarying or any more abood,
Sche haste hir to pis solempnite,
pe fresche folke of Frigye for to se—
Wel mor, God wot, in hir entencioun
To se Parys, pan for deuocioun.

3524 Vnder colour of holy pilgrynamge,
To pe temple sche takep hir viage,

3528 With gret meyne & ryal apparaillle,
Parys to sen for sche wil nat faille.
But, o alas! what lusty new[e] fyre
Hap hir hert enflawmyd be desyre,
To go to vigiles ouper to spectraclis!

3532 Noon holynes to heryn of myraclis
Hath mevid hir, pat per schal be-falle;
But as pe maner is of women alle

3536

3500. not ne A. 3501. tolde] tolde D 1.
3516. To] Vn to D 1. 3523. pis] pe D 1, his D 2.
Women's tricks with Men. Guido abuses Women.

But all women will go where men are, to make eyes at em, touch em, and entrap em.


But all women will go where men are, to make eyes at em, touch em, and entrap em.

What women like, they will do, the men say No.

That naughty Guido speaks ill of women, and I'm sorry to have to repeat it, for I love em.

But I must tell you how he blames Helen for going to the Temple.

To drawe pedir, platly to conclude, Where as pei be sure pat multitude Gadrid is, at liberte to se,

Wher pei may finde opportunyte To her desyre, ful narwe pei awaite,

Now courtely her eyne for to baite In place wher as set is her plesaunce,

Now priuely to haue her daliauwce Be som sygne or castyng of an eye,

Or toknes schewyng in hert[e] what pei drye, With touche of hondis [stole] among pe pres,

With arm or foot to cache vp in her les Whom pat hem list, al-be he fre or bonde,

Of nature pei can hym holde on honde— Ageyn whos sleiwithstanding wit nor myst:

For what hem list, be it wrong or riȝt, pei ay acheue, who seyth ȝe or nay,

Ageyn whos lust diffende him no man may.

Bus Guydo ay, of cursid fals delit, To speke hem harme hap kauȝt an appetit,

Poruȝ-oute his boke of wommen to seyn ille, pat to translate it is ageyn my will.

He hap ay Ioye her honour to transuerse; I am sorry pat I mote rehearse

Pe felle wordis in his boke y-fouwde. To alle women I am so moche bounde:

Pei ben echon so goodly and so kynde, I dar of hem nat sey[e]n pat I fynde

Of Guydo write þoruz-out Troye book; For whan I radde it, for fer myn hert[e] quoke,

And verrailly my wittis gonne faille, Whan I þer-of made rehersaille.

Liche his decert lat Guydo now be quit; For ȝe schal here anon how þat he chit

þe quene Eleyne, for cause þat sche be Wþ deuoute hert hir offring to present,

3555. cursid fals] fals cursid D 1.
To pe temple of Venus, pe goddes;
Jus, word by word, he seip to hir Expres:

**Howe Quene Heleyne, aftire that she herd of Parys, hasted here to pe Temple.**

O mortal harme, þat most is for to dreme!
A, fraude y-cast be sleiȝt of wommanhede,
Of every wo, gynnynge, crop, and rote!
Ageyn[e]s whiche helpe may no bote.
Whan lust hâp dryue in her hert a nail,
Ay dedly venym sueth at þe tail,
Whiche no man hâp power to restraye;
Recorde I take of þe quene Eleyne,
þat hoot[e] bren, allas! in hir desires,
Of newe lust to dele with straungeris
Whom sehe knewe nat, ne neuer saw a-forn,
Wher-pore, allas, ful many man was lorn,
Of cruel deth embracid in þe cheyne

**With-oute pite! now, sey, þou quene Eleyne,**
What gost or spirit, allas, hâp mevid þe,
Sool fro þi lord in swiche ryalte
Oute of þin house to gon among þe pres?
Whi were þou wery to liue at home in pes,
And wentist out straungeris for to se,
Takyng noon heed [vn-]to þin honeste?
þou schust a kepte þi closet secrely,
And not haue passed out so folily
In þe absence of þi lorde, allas!
þou wer to wilful & rakil in þis cas
To sen aforn what schuld after swe;
For al to sone þou wer drawe out of mwe,
þat koudist nat kepe at home þi boundis.
þou wentist out as hare among [þe] houndis,
For to be cauȝt, of verray wilfulnes,
And þi desyre koudist not compesse;
For þou þi lust list nat to refreyne.
O many woman hâp kauȝt in a treyne

Woman's guile is the source of all woe.
Her lust breeds poison.
Helen desired intercourse with strangers.
Helen, what evil spirit moved you to go from your home to see strangers?
You should have stayd in your room, but you went out like a hare among hounds.

---

1 Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 48 c.
A woman should keep in her chamber. No ship would be wrecked if it stayd in its harbour.

Her goyng oute swiche halwes for to seke;
It sit hem bet hem siluen for to kepe
Clos in her chaunbre, and fleen occasioun:
For neuer schip schulde in pereil drown,
Nor skatre on rok, nor be with tempest rent,
Nor with Karibdis deourid nor y-schent,
Nor gon to wrak with no wedris ille,
3if it wer kepte in þe hauene stille.
For who wil not occasiouns eschewe,
Nor dreip not pereil for to swe,
He most among, of necessite,
Or he be war, endure aduersite;
And who can nat hir fot fro trappis spare,
Lat hir be war or sche falle in þe snare:
For harme y-don to late is to compleine.

If Helen had kept at home, she'd not have lost her good name,
And destroyd many worthy folk.

Of many worþi, and confusion
Of hir husbonde & many other mo
On Grekis syde, and [on] Troye also,
In þis story as þe schal after rede.

But she went to the Temple of Venus,
And so þis quene, as fast as sche may spede,
To þe temple hath þe wey[e] nome
Ful rially; and whan þat sche was come
Ful deuoutly with-Inne Cytheroun,
Made vn-to Venus hir oblaciuon
In presence and siȝt of many on,
With many Iowel and many riche stoon.
And whan Parys had[de] þis espied,
To þe temple anon he hap hym hyed,
Ful priftely in al þe hast he myȝt;
And whan þat he had[de] first a siȝt
Of þe goodly, faire, fresche quene,
Cupidis dart, þat is whet so kene,

Or he was war, hape hym markid so,
pat for a-stonyed he nist[e] what to do,
So he merveilep hir gret semlynes,
Hir womanhed, hir port, & hir fairnes:
For neuer a-forne [ne] wende he pat Nature
Koude haue made so faire a creature;
So aungillyk sche was of hir bewte,
So femynyn, so goodly on to se,
pat he dempte, as by liklynes,
For hir bewte to be* som goddes.
For his hert dide hym ay assure
pat sche was no mortal creature—
So heuenly faire and so celestial
He pouzt sche was in party & in al.
And considereth ful a-visely
Hir feturis in ordre by and by
Ententify with-Inne in his resoun,
Every ping by good inspeccioun:
Hir golden her, lik pe schene stremys
Of fresche Phebus with his briz[e] bemys,
pe goodlyhed of hir fresche face,
So repleushed of bewte & of grace,
Euene ennwed with quiknes of colour
Of pe rose and pe lylie flour,
So egaly, pat noupher was to wyte
þoruz noon excesse of moche nor to lite.
With-Inne pe cerclyng of hir eyen bryzt
Was paradys compassid in hir siyt,
þat þoruz a brest pe bewte wolde perce.
And certeynly, þif I schal rehearse
Hir schap, hir forme, and feturis by & by,
As Guydo doth by ordre ceryously,
From hed to foot, clerly to devise,
I han non englysche þat þer-to may suffye;
It wil nat be, oure tonge is not lyke.

3649. ne] om. D 1. 3651-56 are omitted in D 1.
3654. be] haue ben C.
3661. in] om. D 1. 3663. schene] sonne A.
3665. fresche] fresshely A, D 1, fresshely D 2.
3668. and] and of A. 3669. wyte] white A.
3670. nor] nor of A.
I've no flowers of rhetoric, I want[e] flouris also of rethorik,
To sue his florischyng or his gey peynture,
For to discrive so fayre a creature;
For my colours ben to feble and feynyt,
Bat nouther can ennwe wel nor peint;
Eke I am nat a-queintid with no mwse
Of alle nyne: þerfore I me excuse
To ȝou echon, nat al of necligence,
But for defaut only of eloquence,
and know none of the Nine Muses,
so I refer you to Guido's description of Helen.
Paris walks up and down,
and gets nearer to Helen,
who, full of hot love,
thinks she's never seen such a handsome man as Paris.
Venus has fired them both.

3680. nor] or D 1.  3686. alle nyne] noon of alle & D 1.
3716. sodeyn] sodeynly D 2.
Paris and Helen disclose their Love.

ihat egaly pei wer broght in a rage.
And sans pe eye* atwen was no message:
Eche on oper so fixe hap cast his sit,
ihat pei conseine & wist[en] a-non rast
With-Inne hem silfe wat her hert[e] ment.
And nere to hir euer Parys went
To seke fully and gete occasion,
ihat pei my3t, by ful relaciou,
Her hertis conceit declare secrely.
And so bi-fel, hat Paris ne3p ny3e
To pe place wher pe quene Eleyne
Stood in her se; & per atwen hem tweyne,
hati broken out pe somme of al her hert,
And saf Issu to her inward smerte.
But pis was don, list pei werne espied,
Whan pepele was most occupied.
In pe temple for to stare & gase,
Now her, now her, as it wer a mase.
hati kepte hem clos, hat no worde a-sterete;
her was no man pe tresoun my3t aduerte
Of hem tweyn, ne what pei wolde mene;
But at pe last, Paris and pis quene
Concluded han, with schort avisement,
Fully pe fyn of her bope entent,
And sette a purpos atwix hem in certeyn,
Whan pei cast for to mete ageyn.
But list men had to hem suspiciou,
hati made an ende, with-oute more sermoun,
And depart, al-be pei wer lope.
And sobirly a-noon pis Paris goth
Out of pe temple, his hert in euery part
Wounded poru3-out with Louys fyry* dart;
To his schippis he halt pe rast[e] way.
And pan anoon, in al pe hast he may,
Whan assemblid was his chialrie,
On and oper of his companye,

Looks are their only messengers,
till Paris draws near Helen's seat,
and their secret is out.
But they kept quiet,
they arranged to meet again.
Paris leaves the Temple, and goes to his ship.

3717. a] om. D 1. 3718. eye] eyen C.
3748. fyry] fyre C.
Paris says to his mates: "You know that Priam sent us here to rescue Hesione from Telamon, 252

With my father in-to Greece vs sent; For, as ye knowe, ye chef of his entent Was to recuren his suster Exyoun [leaf 144a]

Out of ye hondys of kyng Thelamoun. 3760

Be which pung, for out I can espie, Is impossible sothly in myn eye, Be any weye, as fer as I can se, He is so gret & strong in pis contre 3764

Of his alyes about on euery syde, And in hert so inly ful of pride, To yeld hir vp he hap nat but disdeyn, be-er of to trete it wer [nat] but in veyn. 3768

Wherfore, be best pat I can devise, Sith our power may nat now suffise To werreye hym* in pis region— 3772

We be nat egal of myzt nor of re noun, For lak of men with hym to holde a feld; We may not semble with spere nor with schelde Ten countrer hym with al his multitude— Wherfor, be best pat I can conclude, 3776

Is, sithe Fortune hap vs hider brouzt, And pe goddes han eke for vs wrouzt So graciously to make vs for to londe At Venus temple, fast[e] by pe stronde, Which habounde with ful gret riches 3780

Of Grekis offerynge vnto pe goddes, Be lond & se, fro many sondry port,


1 Royal M.S. 18. D. ii. leaf 49 b.
Of men and women that han her resort
To that place in worship of Venus,
So that the wife of kyng Menelaus
Is per present, ful riche & wel be-seyn—
And if that we by manhod my3t atteyn
To rauisch hir, and that temple spoyle,
And of her tresour chosent* oute & coyle
be chef Iowellis, & chargen our somers
With gold & siluer, and take prisoneris,
And maugrey hem to our schippis bring
his same ny3t with-oute tariyng,
We may nat faille, who-euer that sey nay,
3if ze assent, of a riche pray.
Wherfore, in hast that ze 3ou redy make,
And euery man anon his harnes take,
And arme hym wel in his best array.”
And pei assent, with-oute more delay,
And in hir schippis pei bid[e] til at ny3t,
When Phebus chare withdrawen had his list
Vnder wawes, & sternis dide appere
On pe heuene with her stremsys clere,
Or pe mone that tymde dide rise,
pei schop hem forpe in ful prifty wyse,
The manly Troyans in steel armyd bri3t,
To pe temple holdyng her wey[e] ri3t. [leaf 44 b]
For pei cast no longer for to tarie,
But prowedly entre [in] pe seintuarie,
In-to pe chapel callid Cytheroun,
With-oute reuereence or deuociou
Don to Venus in hir oratorie;
For it was clene oute of her memorie,
Honour and drede & alle obseruance:
For fynally al her attendaunce,
As myn auctor sothly can diffyne,
Was to ri3t nou3t but only to ravyne.

3790. her] the D 1—chesen] to chesen C, chosent D 2—coyle]
toyle D 2.
The Trojans seize all the treasure,  
jewels and relics in the Temple,  
carry'em to their ships,  
and kill all who oppose them.

Meanwhile Paris goes to Helen,  
who gives herself to him.

He takes her to his ship,  
and then returns to finish plundering the Temple.

But Greek soldiers from a castle near pursue the Trojans.

The Trojans plunder the Temple of Venus.

bei token al pat cam to her honde,  
Riches & tresour pat was in pe londe,  
Gold & siluer, stony and Iowellis,  
Reliques sacrid, pe holy eke vessels,  
Without abood oute of pe sacrarie,  
And al y-fere to her schippis carye—  
It is a wonder, to penken on pe good!  
bei kille & sle al pat hem withstood—  
It was a pite for to seen hem blede.  
And many Greke bei to schip[pe] lede,  
at pat after livened in captiuite  
Ful many zer in Troye pe cite.  
And pery-phies goth Paris to Eleyne,  
And hir embrasi in his armys tweyn,  
Ful humblely & with grete reuerence,  
In whom he fonde no maner resistence;  
It sat hir nat, sche was so womanly,  
For to Paris sche zalde hir outerly;  
Hir hert in hap was golde or sche cam fere,  
Perfor to zelde hir sche had lasse fere;  
Sche can nat stryue, nor no woman scholde.  
And he anon, as gentilnes[se] wolde,  
Countforte hir as he best can or may,  
And lad hir with hym, with-oute more delay,  
To his schippes; and per ful bysely  
He sette wardis to kepe hir honestly,  
Whil he returne to pe temple ageyn  
To spoyle and robbe & to make al pleyn  
boru; pe temple with his wallis wyde.  
Now stood a castel faste per be-syde,  
I-stuffid wel with Grekysche sowdyours,  
be whiche a-woke with noise of pe pilours  
be same ny3t, & gan make a schout;  
And per-with-al anoon bei issen out,  
Armyd in stel, pe temple to reskewe,  
And manfully after hem bei sewe.
And so be-fil whan ðei to-gydre mette
With speris scharp & swerdís kene whet,
ðei ran I-fere as tigres al vnymylde,
Liche wode liouns or ðis boriis wylde;
ðer was no feynyng founden in her físt,
Al-be ðe felde departed nas a-riust,
For ðe Troyans doubled hem in novmbre,
ðat outerly ðe Grekis ðei encombe,
And at meschef maden hem to fle,
Purswe after and cruelly hem sle
With-oute mercy to ðe castel gate.
Ther * was [no] reskvs, for ðei com[e] late,
Of ðis skarmysche, for ðe fyn was deth;
Now her, now ðer, ðei ȝelden vp ðe breth,
So myȝtely Troyans hem assaille,
ðat to withstond it wold[e] not availe:
For of manhod ðei ðe felde han wonne,
And after ðat, cruelly be-gonne
In al hast to spoillen ðe castel;
And to schip ðei brouȝten euery-del,
Tresour & gold, & what ðat ðei may wynne,
And on ðe morwe to seille ðei be-gynne,
Stuffid with good, be ðe Grekische se,
Toward ðe costis of Troye ðe cite.
ðe se was calm and fully at her wille,
Boþe of tempest and of stormys ille,
And clere also was ðe bryȝt[e] heuene,
ðat in space almost of dayes seuen,
At a castel callid Tenedoun
ðei aryve vj myle fro ðe toun;
And glad and liȝt ðei to lond[e] went.
And after ðat, I fynde, Parys sent
His messanger streȝt vn-to ðe kyg,
ðat hym enformeȝ of his hom commynge;
Of her explyte he tolde hym euery-del.

There is a fierce fight,
b ut the Trojans win, and drive the Greeks back to their castle,
slaying many of em.
for Troy.
in a week they reach Tenedos,
land and send
news of their success to K. Priam.

And Priamus likeþ wonder wel,
pat so manly þei han born hem oute,
And made puplisched* in þe toun aboute
þis tydynges with gret sollempnite,
To his & lowe, þoruy-oute þe cite,
pat for Io ye þe most[e] and þe leste
For remembranuce halwe [and holde] a* feste,
And þanke her goddes in ful humble wyse,
Witþ obseruauces and with sacrifice
On her auteris, with gret deuocioun.
And al þis* while, he at Tenedoun
Holdeth soiour with þe quene Eleyne,
þe whiche gan ful rewwfully compleyne
Hir vnkoupe lyf, to dwelle with strangeurs,
Al dissolat among[es] prisoners,
Fer sequestrid a-weye from hir contre,*
Solitario in captuhte.

Sche wepiþ & criþ with a pitous chere;
þe burbly wawes of hir eyen cler
Liche welle stremys by hir chekis reyne;
And for constreint of hir inward peyne
Ful ofte a day hir song was weylaway,
With sobbyng vois, pat sche so fer a-way
Departid is from hir Menelaus.
For whos absence in rage furious,
Hir lif sche hateþ & curseþ eke fortune;
And in þis wo sche euere doth contune
Witþ-oute soiour, alwey more and more;
And for hir breþer Pollux & Castor,
And for þe loun of hir douþter dere,
Now pale and grene sche wexeþ of hir cher,
þat whilom was frescher for to sene
þan þe lillye on his stalke grene.

Allass! chaunged is hir rosen howe!
And euere in on hir wo encreseth neve,
and lament the loss of her brothers and daughter.
She loses her rosy hue.

3890. likeþ liked D 1.  3892. puplisched] puplische it C.
3895. Pat] And that A.
3896. For] Of D 1—holde] halwe D 2—a] an C.
3899. þis] þe C.  3900. contre] contre C.
3906. in] and in D 1.  3907. &] om. A, D 2.
Paris comes to comfort Helen.

"My Queen, why do you weep so?"

Paris pleads with Helen to stop her weeping.

I wonder greatly how she may endure so moche water causeis to schede, feat with wepyng han dewed so your wede;

For liche a condut pe stremys renne dourc, Lik to a penuant in contriciouu

List pus your silfe in sorwyng disfigure?

Weeping like no woman sche was to beholde;

For ay sche wept as sche to water wolde.

Til at pe last, in al hir heuynes, Paris to hir com of gentilnes,

Hir to conforte and tapese hir rage— He besythe hym hir sorwes to aswage, Seiynge to hir: "what may al pis mene, pat 3e, allass, o goodly fresche quene, List pus your silfe in sorwyng disfigure? I wonder gretyly how 3e may endure So moche water causeis to schede, pat with wepyng han dewed so your wede; For liche a condut pe stremys renne doun, Lik to a penuant in contriciouu 3e you disraye, allass, whi do 3e so!

Lat be pis fare and lateth ouer go Al your wepyng, pouzt, and heuynes, And beth no more, my lady, in distres.

Makep an ende nowe of your greuaunce, For al pe ese, comfort, and plesance pat men may do, truste p3e schul haue, It is but foly in sorwe pus to raue!

Let passe ouer alle pis scharp[c] schowres, And here my troupe: 3e and alle joures, Of what you list schal haue suftisaunce, As ferforfpe, and more habundauce

ban 3e had among pe Grekis pere, I you ensure, and beth no ping in fere, pat I schal hold al pat I haue hi3t, On my troupe, as I am trewe kny3t,

In worde and dede with al myn hert entere." [leaf 45 a]

And sche anon, with a woful chere, So as sche my3t for sobbyng po suffice, Answerde ageyn in ful lawly wyse:

"I wot," quod sche, "wher me be loth or lef, Sith I am kau3t & take at pis meschef,

3938. to] om. A. 3957. po] to A.

TROY BOOK.
Paris pleads with Helen to stop her Weeping. [BK. II

and can't resist.

Vn-to 3our wil I may nat now with-seie;
I am so bounde, pat I most obeie,
Vnder 3our daunger, pat I may nat sle,
In hold distreyned and captiuite.
3e wote also, be nature, oute of drede,
pat it ne longeth vn-to womanhede
In straunge soille to stryuen or rebelle;
An[d] namly per, wher as hir querelle
Schal haue no fauour nor sustened be.

But 3ef 3e list now to han pite
On me or myne, of 3our goodlyhede,*
3e may of God disserue pank & mede,
pat wil rewarde iustly alle po
pat comfort hem pat ben in care & wo.”
“Now lady myn,” paune quod Parys,

What pat may like or ben at* 3our devys,
Al schal be do, trusteth me ri^t wele;
For be my troupe, as fer as I can fele,
In any jing pat may 3ou do* plesaunce,
3e schal it haue with al habundauce :
pis I ensure of heste not fallible;
Beth nat a-gaste, but fully beth credyble
To my wordis & hestit enrychon.”

He leads her to a royal palace,

And þer-with-al he lad hir ri^t anon
In-to a place of royal apparaile,
To comfort her, jif it wolde availle,
And secrely þer atwen hem two,
pis Paris first, with-outen more a-do,
Spake vn-to hir & seyde : “lady dere,
I feyne nat, but speke of hert entere,
And þat I hope 3e schal in dede fynde ;
Wherfor, I pray, enprenteth in 3our mynde
What I seie, and in 3our remembranze—
pis is to seien, sith 3e be puruyauce

Ben of þe goddis brouȝt as now þer-to,
And Fortune eke wil þat it be so,
I dar afferme, pleasyn for * þe firste,
þat þei disposed haue nat for þou r wirst,
But for þou r good, & so þe most it take.
Wherfor, I rede, to letyn ouer-shake*
Al heuynes, and loke þat þe be
As glad and list here in þiscontre,
As þe þe weorne in þou r owne lond.
For fœythfully I do þou to vnдоровonde,
þe schal haue here as moche habundance,
On euery part, with ful sufficiauce
Of al þat may be to þou plesaunt:
For of o þing I dar make avaunt,
In þiscontre, as it schal be founde,
Of al plente we passyn and habounde
More richely þan þoure Grekis þonder;
And þe þe þe ben from hem now assondre,
Out of þe lond þat calid is Achaye,
þe haue no cause þow so to dismay,
Sith at worschip and more reuerence,
At more honour and gretter excellence
þe schal be cherisched þan þe were a-fore.
And where þe þe þe haue forbore
þou r owne lord and ben as now left sool,
For whom þe makyn al þis wo & dool,
þe schal in haste be sette better at ese—
For certeynly, so it nat displesse
Nor offende vn-to þou r womanhede,
In stede of hym, I purpuse, out of drede,
To wedde þou and ben þou r trew[e] man,
To loue & serue in al þat euer I can,
With-oute fœnyng, to my lyues ende,
And be to þou as lowly & as kynde,
As diligent and more laborious
þan whilom was þoure Menelaus,

3995. þer-to] her to A, her to D 2.  3996. eke wil] wil eke D 1.
3997. for] as for C.  4000. shake] slake C.
In every ping you're lustis to obeie—
Hath here my trouth til tyme that I deye.
And pan that I in wordis be but pleyn,
For loue of God, haue not disdeyn
Of my request, nor gruchip nat at al;
For, at ple est, of ple stok royal
I am descendid & comme of as hige blood
As Menelay, and of birpe as good;
And can in loue to you be more trewe
Pan he was ever, and change for no newe.
Wherfor, stynte puse to pleyn & wepe,
And late som comfort in your bosom crepe,
3our wo apesteth, which is not worpe an hawe,
And som myrpe late in your hert adawe:
 pis I besche, and of womanhede
To my wordis for to takyn hede.”

“Alas,” quod sche, “how my3t pis be-falle,
hat haue left my frendis on & alle
In strange lond, and am here but allone?
How schuld I pan but I made mone?
I haue no cause, God wot, for to pleye,
Nor my chekis for to kepe dreye
From salt[e] teris, allas! it wil nat be,
hat can noon end of myn aduersite.
For in good feyth, it were azen[e]s kynde
So sodeynly to putten out of mynde
Pilke ping hat, for Ioye or smert,
In al pis world sittep nexte myn hert—
For whom, allas, so sore I am * distreynd.
But, sith goddis han as now ordeyned
No bettre chaunce of hope vn-to me,
I can no more—I mote it take at gre
And humblely accepte also her sonde;
For I am feble her power to withstonde.
Wherfor, I schal ageyn my wil [now] stryue,
Al-be for wo myn hert I fele* ryue,
For to concente and lowly to admitte
pilke ping [fro] whiche I may not flitte,
Maugre my wil, of necessite,
Fully to obeye what 3e list do with me—
It wil nat helpe þau þ I seide nay."
And þus sche peyneth al þat [euere] sche may,
Lite and lite hir sorwe to aswage.
What schuld sche ay lyue* in wo & rage,
To lese hir silfe, so tender a creature—
An hert of stel ne myþt it not endure.
But ay of women þe maner & þe kyndye,
þat þei can nat of sorwe make an ende
Til þei be leiser han y-wept her fulle;
But at þe last, whan þei gymn de fulle
To make sorwe, it happ þe hem as faste
þat by grace þei sone it ouer casten
And lîȝtly cache confort of her smerte—
þei be so tendre þat men may hem convynte
From wo to Ioye, & þouȝt from hem dissenuere,
þer is no storme þat may lasten euere,
As clerkis wyse in bokis liste discerne;
þing violent may nat be eterne;
For after stormys Phebus briȝter is.
And so be comfort & counsell of Parys,
Sche dawed is of hir olde sorwe:
For euene liche, as þe glade morwe,
Of kyndye sweþ þe dirke, blake nyȝt,
So be processe hir hert[e] weþe þiȝt,
And of her wepyng dried is þe welle,
Liche as þe story schal anon ȝou telle.

Howe Paris and Heleyne were ressayde into Troye,
of Pryamus and his lordys; and of þe sorrowful
lamentacyoun that Cassandra made when she
sawe þe weddynge.¹

In spite of her will, Helen must obey the Gods.

Why should we live ever in woe?

But women must weep their fill.

Then they feel comfort and can be joyful.

The Sun is brighter after storms.

Glad morning follows dark night.

So Helen stops her weeping.

¹ Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 50 b.
When Helen's cheeks freshen,

When the queen called Eleyne
A-dawed was of her drery peyne,
And her waves of her heuy chere
On her chekis gone for to clere,

Paris sends to Priam

Paris, in herte fresche and amorous,
In haste hap sent to kyng Priamus
For hors & men and oþer apparaile,
Clothes of gold ful noble of entaille,
Made for Eleyne & wrought for þe nonys
With riche perle & many sondri stony,
A-geyn hir comyng in-to Troye touz.

and brings Helen towards Troy.

And after þat, Parys fro* Tenedoun
Schapeþ hym to lede hir in-to Troye;
And Priamus mette hem on þe weye
Ful ryally, as faste as he may hye,

Priam meets them,

With many a lord in his companye,
Ful many lady fresche & wel be-seyn,
And many mayde þat riden hem ageyn—
First estatis and after comwneris.
Now had Parys alle his prisoneris
Set be-forn in ordre tweyn & tweyne,

Paris riding next to Helen.

And he rood next with þe quene Eleyne,
And Dephebus vp-on þe toþer syde,
And his knyþtes enviroun dide ride;
But nexte hym rood þe worþi Eneas
And þe Troyan, callid Pollidamas,
His meyne swyng eche in his degre
So gentilmanly, þat Ioye it was to se—
Eche from oþer kepyng a certeyn space.
And furþe þei ride but a soft[e] pace,
Til þat þe kyng hem mette sodeynly,
And hem receyveþ ful solemnlyn,

Priam takes the rein of Helen's palfrey, and leads her into Troy.

As he best coude, & goodly toke þe reyne
In-to his hond of þe quene Eleyne,
And hir comuyeþ furþe to his cite.
Gret was þe pres þat aboood to se,
Of sondry folke, \( \text{bat} \) schove fast and croude;
\( \text{be} \) schrille trumpettis wern y-reised loude—
Vp to \( \text{he} \) skye goth \( \text{be} \) blisful sown
When al \( \text{pis} \) peple entrep in \( \text{pe} \) toun—
4136
And many a-nöfer diuers instrument,
\( \text{bat} \) al to-forn in at \( \text{pe} \) gatis went,
In sondry wyse \( \text{bat} \) made melodie,
\( \text{bat} \) to heren \( \text{pe} \) heukenly armonye
4140 and heavenly
Be musik touchid vp-on string & corde,
So euen in on & iustly \( \text{pei} \) acorde,
It wold an hert rausiche in-to Ioye.
And when \( \text{pei} \) wern entred in-to Troye,
4144
Amyd his paleys kyng Priamas a-li\( \text{t}, \)
And anoon, as fast as euere he my\( \text{t}, \)
In-to a chambre, riche & wel be-seye,
\( \text{be} \) quene Eleyne in hast he doth cozueye,
Comauwlyng vrith hert\[e\], wil, and pou\( \text{t} \)
His officers \( \text{pat} \)-hir faile nou\( \text{t} \)
Of any \( \text{ping} \) \( \text{pat} \) sche can be-pinke.
4152 and Priam
\( \text{be} \) spicis partid, anoon \( \text{be} \) wyn \( \text{pei} \) drink,
And \( \text{pan} \) \( \text{pe} \) kyng toke leue til* soper,
And sche \( \text{per} \)-whiles chaunge\( \text{p} \) hir attir.
But of \( \text{pe} \) Ioye \( \text{pat} \) was in \( \text{pe} \) toun,
In eche place wher men went vp & dou\( \text{n}, \)
4156
I am to rude, sothly, al to wryte,
So moche in hert \( \text{pe} \) Troyans hem delitc,
\( \text{bat} \) saufe & sounde retournd is Parys—
\( \text{pei} \) wende haue be for Ioye in paradis,
4160
\( \text{bat} \) he so wel spedde in his Iourne,
And hath nat on loste of his meyne,
Wher-of \( \text{pei} \) ben in hert\[e\] glad & li\( \text{z} \).
And in al haste after \( \text{pe} \) neste ny\( \text{t} \),
4164
As writ Guydo, with-oute tariyng long,
Erly on morwe, a-for \( \text{pe} \) larke songe,
In Pallas temple, as myn auctor seiphe,
Assured was be o\( \text{pe} \) & eke be feiphe
4168

4136. pis] \( \text{pe} \) D 1, his D 2—entrep] entren D 1—in] in to D 1.
Paris weds Helen. The Feasting.

Paris and Helen are wedded.

There is 8 days' feasting.

With jousts, tourneys, and fine meals.

But Cassandra,

weeping,

foretells woe to Troy for this adulterous marriage.

The city will be destroyed.

The bond of wedlock of hym & Eleyne,
For ever-more to last a-twen hem tweyne,

And pis was don fully be thassent,
First of pe kynge, and also be thavis
Of al pe cite in faunour of Parys.

And so pe feste and gret solempnyte
Contwnyd was with moche ryalte,

Of pis weddyng in myrthe & solace,
porou-oute pe toun be viii dayes space.

What schuld I write pe reuel or* pe daunces,

be fresche array or be countenaunces,

be stole touchis, be lokis amentous,

be prevy gruchyng of hem pat wer Ielous,

be grete iustis, bordis, or tornay,

Amyd palastre with many sondry play,

be dunders coursis eke at enery feste,

be large plente don vn-to pe leste,

be straunge metis, pe manere of seruyse*
I haue noon englische al for to deuyse—

I passe ouer, for I was not pere.

But whan pis weddyng cam vn-to pe ere
Of Cassandra, and first it dide espie,

A þoundand sithe “allas!” sche gan to crye
Of pitous wo with vntressid heris,

And seide þus al be-spreint with teris:

“O wrecyd Troye, erryng in þis cas,

With-Inne þi sylfe to suffre þis trespas,

For to concet vn-to swyche folye,

In sustenyng of foule auoutr[y]e,

þat Paris schulde takyn vn-to wyve

þe quene Eleyne whos husbond is alyve! [leaf 466]
O woful Troye, to cruel is þi fate!

For to be war it is almost to late!

The tyme is come, pou schal[t] distroyed be!

For many fader schal his sone se

4176. moche] mychel A, D 2, D 1.
4180. countenaunces] countenaunc D 1.
4187. seruyse] þe seruyse C. 4190. vn-to] to D 1.
Hol in þe morwe, þat schal be slawe or eve
Amyd þe feld, þat wil him sore greue,
And many wif sore schal be-wepe
To se hir husbonde with large wouzdis depe
Girt þoruʒ þe body, pale, cold, & grene!
Allas, howe schal þe sorwe mow suste ne!
A, wrecchid modris! how schal þe sorwe mow sustene!
It wil nat help, þouʒ ʒe clepe criþ.
A, moder myn, Eccuba, þe quene,
How schalt þou bide þe scharp[e] stoundis kene,
þi worþi sones to sen a-for þe slawe,
And in þe feld by cruelte y-drawe*!
A, blinde peple, of deth þou taxt non hede,
Why nylt þou werche [and] don after my rede,
And in þis cas more prudent ben & wys,
To take away Eleyne from Parys,
As riʒt requireth, with-outen any more,
And to hir lord iustly hir restore?
What! trow[e] ʒe his þefte and cruel dede
Schal passe þus?—Nay*! with-outen drede,
þe swerd of vengauce schal ful scharp[e] bite
For his offence, & we schal bere þe wyte—
Paleis & hous to seen, with-Inne a þrowe,
And touris hize leide on þe erþe lowe!
Allas, allas! I seie to þe, Eleyne,
Vnhappy woman, causere of oure peyne,
Hard & vnȝely, and also graceles,
Vnweful woman, disturber of oure pes,
þou haste vs brouȝt in meschef & in were,
Kyndled a brond to sette vs alle a-fere!
Allas, þou art [þe] rote & grounde of al,
Of many drery fest[e] farewell
þat schal be holde amonge vs in þis toun!"

4237. rote & grounde] ground and Roote A.
Thus Cassandra cries her Prophecies of Ruin about Troy,
and makes such a horrid noise that Priam puts her in prison,
where I'll leave her.

And in this wyse Cassandra vp & doun
Aboute ran in subbarbe and in strete,
And crieth euere, whom that euere sche mete,
Ful ofte sype: "allas and weillawey!"
Til Priamus, be-cause of hir affray,
And for þe noyse þat sche dide make,
With-oute more, anon he doth* hir take
And bynd[e] fast, fetid in presoun,
With-oute mercy or remyssioun.
þei take noon hede to hir sadde troupe,
Nor to hir wordis—it was þe more roupe—
But schet hir vp in bondis gret & strong,
With-oute pite, where sche abidip longe.
And þus in prisoun a while I leeue hir mourne,
And to [þe] Grekis I wil ageyn returne.

Of the sorowe that Kynge Menelay made when he herd
that Parys had ravishede his wyff; and of þe
manly comforde and councele þat Agamenon gave
hym for to revenge hym.¹

While Fortune smiles on the Trojans,
they forget that her Wheel will turn,
and bring them to confusion.

The vnhappy tyme & þe same while
þat Fortune falsly gan to smyle
Vp-on Troyans & bad hem [to] be merye,
For whiche hiȝly þei gan her goddis herie,
Wenyng in Ioye to haue ben assured wele,
No þing aduerting þe turyng of þe whele
Of hir þat lastip stable but a throwe—
Whan meu most trust, sche can make a mowe,
Turne hir forhed, & hir face writhe,
(Suche Ioye sche hape hir doubilnes to kype,
And to wrappe hir clernes vnder cloude),
Ageyn whos myȝt no man may hym schrowde—
Whan sche most flateriþ, þan sche is lest to trist:
For in her Ioye þe Troyans litel wist
What sche ment to her confusioun.

¹ Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 51 a.
BK. II] Menelaus hears of the Wrongs the Trojans have done him. 267

For while ἔτι aboute in al ἤπε τον
Wenden of Grekis haue geten ful recur
Of her damages, & euere to haue be sure


While the Trojans chuckle over their success against the Greeks.

4276.  y-brouȝt] brouȝt D 1.  4286.  praye] a praye C.
4294.  renewe] remwe A.  4301.  lives] lovis A.

To Menelay ἐς τὸ δυναγματος ὑ[L]/ν την
While he abood with Nestor at Pyra,
First of ἦπε τὸ τεμπλον τῆν Κυθη[ρ/η]α,
Of gold & tresour, & ἦπε τὸ τυραννον
Of gold & tresour, & ἦπε τὸ τυραννον


Menelaus hears of their plundering his Temple.

4276. Menelaus hears

4280. their slaughter of his folk.

4284. And how ἦπε τὸ τετελεσμον

4288. and their carrying off his wife.

4292. As any τὸν στων, and paleth of his hewe.

4300. and he laments his losses.

4304. Myn hert, also, korve in euery veyne
Menelaus's Lament. Agamemnon comforts him. [BK. II

For 30w, my wif, for 30w, myn owne Eleyne,
pat be deuorcid fro me, wellawey!
Far-wel my Ioye, farwel myn olde pley!

Now han strangers of 3ou pocessiou, 4308
Whiche wil to me be ful confusion.
Allas, I not how pei 3ou cherische or trete,
My faire Eleyne, pat wer to me so mete.
Now 3e ar gon, pensifhed me slethe—
I may nat waite now but after dethe.”

And aftir pis, amyd of al his wo,
pis Menelay schope hym for to go
To his regne, but litel þer be-syde;
He axeth hors & seide he wolde ride
Sool to compleyne of þat he felt hym greue.

But al þis while Nestor wil nat leue 4316
To go with hym for consolacioun,
Of frenedly riȝt haungyng compassion.
Hym to conforte with al his ful[le] myȝt,
Ledyng with hym many worþi knyȝt
In-to þe regne of þis Menelaus,
þan, first of al, þe story telleþ vs,

How þei sent for Agamenoun,
And for Castor to com to hym anoon, 4328
And for Pollux, zif it myȝt[e] be;
And whan þei wer comez alle þre,
And saie her broþer in swiche meschef brouȝt,
Almost mordred wiþ* his owne þouȝt,
With-oute abood þe wyse Agamenoun
To zif hym counforte & consolacioun
Dide his labour & diligence entere,
Seiynge to hym, riȝt as 3e schal here:
“O broþer myn, what wo, what heuynes,
What dedly sorwe þus inly may oppres
þour knyȝtly hert or trouble þoure manhede,
More furiously y-wis þan it is nede; 4340

4306. 2nd 30w] þouȝt D 1.
4307. deuorcid] devoced D 2, denoced D 1.
4311. or] & D 1. 4315. of al] in al A, D 1, al in D 2.
4324. with] to D 1—many] many a A.
4326. vs] þus D 2, D 1. 4331. her] his D 1—in] to D 1.
For pou3 pat rizt requered outerly
3ow for to sorwe and had cause why,
3et, me semeth, by iuste prouidence,
3o schulde sligly dissymble * yowre offence— 4344
Sith eche wiseman in his aduersite
Schulde fayne cher & kepen in secre
Be inward wo pat bynt hym in distressc— [leaf 47 a]
Be manly force rathest per compesse 4348
Be spiriet of Ire and malencolie,
Where pe peple it sonest myst espie.
It is a doctrine of hem pat be prudent,
pat when a man with furie is to-rent, 4352
To fayne chere til tyme he se leyser
pat [he] of vengau?ice kyndle* may pe fer ;
For sorwe oute-schewid, zif I shal nat feine,
Who-so take hede, it doth pinges twyne :
It causeth frendis for to si^e sore,
And his enymyes to reioische more— 4356
pi frende in hert is sory of nature,
pin enemy glad of pi mysaventure.
Wherfore, in hert, whan wo doth most abounde,
Feyne gladnes pin enmy to confounde,
And schewe in cher as pou rouzist nou3t
Of ping pat is most greuous in pi pou3t. 4360
And wher pou hast most mater to compleyne,
Make per good* face & glad* in port pe* feine ;
For in-to teris pou3 pou al distille,
And rende pi silfe, as pou woldest* pe spille, 4364
It helpith nat to aleggen pi greuance:
For noufer honour nor pursu?e of vengau?ice,
With sorwe makyng mow ben execut— 4368
pou3 it last ay, per cometh were-of no frut.
Men seyn how he pat can dissymble a wrong,

4344. sligly dissymble]lilystly dissymblc C—dissymble]dissymble A.
4354. kyndle] he kyndly C.
4356. take] toke D 1, takep A.
4359. is sory of nature] whan woo doth most habunde A.
4360, 61 are omitted in A. 4363. rouztist] pouztist D 1.
4365. most] moost is A, most is D 2.
4366. good] glad C—glad] good C—pe] pou C.
This 'tis show he has a manly heart.

They must fight with swords, not words.

How he is slye and of herte stronge; And who can ben peisible in his smerte, It is a tokene he hath a manly herte, Nat to wepen as wommen in her rage, Whiche is contrarie to an hise corage.

With word & wepyng for to venge our payne, Be no menys to worschip to attayne; Lat vs with swerde & nat with wordis fist, Oure tonge apese, be manhod preve our myst: Word is but wynde, & water nat we wepe, And pouz pe tempest and pe flodis depe

Of pis two encresen enere-mo, pei may nat do but augmente ourwy wo— And to oury foon, per-of whan pei here, Bope of oury dool & oury* heuy chere, Al is to hem but encrees of Ioye.

Wherfore, brospir, a while dope a-coye pe cruel torment pat byndep 3ow so sore; For in prouerbe it hap ben said ful 3ore, pat pe prowes of a manly knyzt

Is preued most in mesclief, and his myzt:

To ben assured in aduersite,

Strongly sustene what wo pat it be, [leaf 47 b] Nat cowardly his corage to submitte In euery pereil, nor his honour flitte poruz no dispire, but hopen al-wey wel,

And haue a trust, trewe as any stel,

Tacheven ay what he take on honde.

For finally I do 3ou vndirstonde,* pat of hym silfe who hap good fantasie To sette vp-on and putte in Iupartie, What pat be-falle, [or] hap what hap[pe] may, Takyn what chaunce wil turnen on his play,
The fyn of whiche gladly is victorie,

4375. ben peisible] peysible ben A.
4377. wommen] a woman D 1.
4386. pei] The A—oure) of oury D 1. 4388. our] of oury C.
4391. byndep] byden A.
4402. vndirstonde] to vndirstonde C, D 1.
4407. whiche] soche D 1—whiche gladly is] suche is gladly D 2.
The Greek lords assemble, and appoint their Leader. 271

The Greek lords assemble, and appoint their Leader.

And tyme is now, to speke in wordis fewe,
O brobir myn, manhod for to scheewe,
To pluk vp herte & 3ou to make strong;
And to venge your damages & youre wronge,
We schal echon help & leye to honde—
Kynges, dukers, and lordis of pis londe—
And attonys done oure besynes,
I 3ou behete, your harms to redresse.
And in dispit of whom pat euere vs lette,
We schal vs loge & oure tentis sette
Euene in pe felde a-fore Troye touh,
And leyne a sege to her distruciuon,
Al-be her-of I sette as now no day.
But, brobir, first, in al jey haste we may,
Lete make lettris, with-oute more sermoun,
To alle pe lordis of pis regioun,
Of pis mater touching youre villenye,
To come to-gidre & schape remedie—
pis is theffect* of al pat I can seyn."
And pis relessid somewhat of his peyne
Is Menelaus poruy comfort of his brofer;
For whan he sawe it myt[e] ben noon oper,
And of his tale pe kyng made an ende,
Prorye-oute pe londe he dide his letteris sende,
First to his kyn and to his allye
To come to helpe hym of her curtesye.
And first of alle to Menelaus
Cam Achilles, and with hym Patroclus,
And alder-nexte stronge* Diomede
And many an oper to helpen in pis nede.
And alle echon, in open parlement,
pei wer acordid ful by on assent
To be gouerned as Agamenmon
List to ordeyne in his discrecioun—
Of pis viage pei made hym gouernour,

4411. 3ou to make] mainy make 3ou D 1.
4417. whom] whoo A, who D 2, D 1.
4427. theffect] theffect C. 4437. stronge] worpi C.
4442. in] by D 1.
The thwarted Expedition of Castor & Pollux after Paris. [BK. II]

Before this, Pollux and Castor

Before this, I fynde, Paris for to swe,

Pollux and Castor, to secure Eleyne.

A storm rises,

A storm rises, To-Troye-ward in he large se,

lightning shivers their mast,

lightning shivers their mast.

the ship's planks part,

the ship's planks part.

And of her ost chefteyn and emperour.

Among hem alle þer was ful vnite  [leaf 47 e]

Vp-on Troyaus avengid for to be,

And from þis * purpos neuer to remewe.

But first, I fynde, Paris for to swe,

þe viage toke þe worþi breþer tweyne,

Pollux and Castor, to secure Eleyne.

þet neuer-þe-les, as somme bokis telle,

þat þese kynges no lenger wolde dwelle,

But as fast as Paris was a-goon

þei toke a schip and folweden * a-noon,

With many worþi in her companye;

And dout[œ]les, but 3if bokis lye,

þat or þei hadde sailed daies þe

To-Troye-ward in þe large se,

þe tempest roos & wyndes ride awake,

þe heuene dirke with þe cloudis blake,

þat han þe day turned in-to nyȝt,

And briz[b]e Phebus was myrked of his liȝt—

þe fery leuene and stroke of þe þondre

Smote in þe mast & schiverid it a-sondre.

It was so dirke no liȝt nyȝt adawe;

þe see gan swelle with many sturdy wawe

þat ryse on hþe, large as any mount,

And fille doun & swappid in þe frount

Evene of þe schip, & ploungid it ful lowe—

Now vp, now doun, for-cast & ouer-browe

Her schippes werne with tempest to & fro:

þe fomy water grene, white, and blo

Of feruent boilyng, & as piche eke blak

With storme & wynde, þat al goth to wrake;

So hidously þe blastis at hem dryve,

þat euery bord gan from oder ryve,

And al is perschid, þer skapeþ nat a man,

But al attonys, as I reherse can,

Be dede & dreynt with tempest sodeynly——
Castor & Pollux are Lords in Heaven or Hell, or Stars. 273

per skaped noon, I say you certeynly, 4480 and all the men on board are drownd except Castor and Pollux, who are made lords, one in Heaven, the other in Hell.

Exepte pe brepre, whiche, as bokis telle, 4482. lowe] om. A.

pe ton in heuene, pe toper lowe in helle 4482. D1. 4483. lowe] om. A.

Wer lordis made to abide eternaly. 4484. her] his D1.

And some feynyn in her poysey, 4484. D1.


After her schippes wern y-go to wrake— 4485. gre] degree D 2, degre D1. 4492. D.

The descent of pe moste part of princes pat kame with pe Grekis for pe destrucyoun of Troye. 1

But for-as-moche as Dares Frigius

Was in his boke whilom corious

pe forme of Troyens & Grekis to discryve,

The description of pe moste part of princes pat kame with pe Grekis for pe destrucyoun of Troye. 1

But for-as-moche as Dares Frigius

Was in his boke whilom corious

pe forme of Troyens & Grekis to discryve,

4480. skaped] escaped D1. 4482. lowe] om. A.


1 Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 51 d.

TROY BOOK.
Dares describes both Trojans and Greeks as he saw them:

Liche as he saw—pis auctor by his lyve—
pe schap, pe forme, and complexiou, 4512
Bope of pe party of hem of Troye toun,
And of pe Grekis, be good avisement,
In tyme of trewe among hem as he went, 4516
Seyng pe maner of her gouernaunce,
Her port, her chere, with euery circumstance,
Namly of poo pat wer of hije degre—
He nat for-gat color nor qualite, 4520
Condiciouns, and* also her stature—
Al to discrive Dares dide his cure,
In Grekysche tong, be-gynnyng at Eleyne,
Liche as to-forn 3e han herde me seyne, 4524
Of hir beute and hir semlynes
How ceryously Guydo doth expresse
(Saue he seide, in a litel space,
A strype per was endelonge hir face,
Whiche, as he writ, be-cam hir wonder wel,
Embelyssching hir beute [e]uerydel,
Like as Dares makep discripcioun).

Helen

(who had a stripe along her face),
A strype per was endelonge hir face,
Whiche, as he writ, be-cam hir wonder wel,
Embelyssching hir beute [e]uerydel,
Like as Dares makep discripcioun).

Agamemnon

And first he seip how kyng Agamenoun
Was of good schap & hije of his stature,
And myyte in labour at pe best endure—
Vnpacient to lyuen in quiete,
He was to armys so egal and so mete—
Of colour white, & good proporcioun,
And flewmatik of his complexiou,
Discret and hardy, & wonder vertuous,
And of speche ri3t facundious,
And kowde him wel in euery ping demene.
But Menelay of stature was but mene,
Proporcioned atwixe schort and longe,
[leaf 48 a]
Worpi in armys, deliuere, & also strong,
And of corage and hert[e] vigorous,
Semly also, and ay more desyrous
To lyue in werre, rather 3an in pees.

4527. he] a D 1. 4533. his] om. A.
4534. my3te] myghty A, D 2.
And, furthermore, to speke of Achilles,

He was riȝt fair and of gret semlynes,

With hawborne her, crispyng for piknes,

With eyen glawke, large, stepe, and grete,

And brod schuldrid, with brost ful square [and] mete,

Tendure in armys fel and coragous,

And of his loke wonder amorous,

Hiȝe of stature, and large of ȝiftes eke,

And more of strengȝe þan any oþer Greke.

And to spende he sette litel charge,

He was of herte so plenteuous & large,

And in the feld passyng chialrous.

And for to telle forȝe of Tantalus,

Of sangwyn hewe, havyng moche of red,

Diyers eyed, ay mevyng in his hed,

Of huge makyng & also of gret strengȝe,

Wel answerynge his brede to his lengȝe,

Hatyn to stryve where he saw no nede,

Riȝt trewe of worde also, as I rede;

And neuere quarel wolde he take on honde

To riȝt[e] fore, but he myȝt vndirstonde

þat it were fully gronded vp-on riȝt,

And þanne he wolde quyte him lik a kynȝt.

Oyleus Aiax was riȝt corpulent;

To be wel clad he sette al his entent;

In riche array he was ful corious,

Al-peȝe he were of body corsyous,

Of armys gret, with schuldris square & brode,

It was on hym al-most an hors[e] lode,

Hiȝe of stature & boistous in a prees,

And of his speche rude and rekkes—

Ful many worde in ydely hym asterte,

And but a coward was [he] of his herte.

Anȝȝer Aiax, Thelamonivs,

þer was also, discret & vertuous,

Wonder fair and semly to beholde.
Dares describes Ajax the Telamonian

Whos her was blak, & vpward ay gaz folde
In compas wyse, rounde as any spere;
And of mvsik was þer noon his pere,
(a fine singer, Hauyng a vois ful of melodie,
Riȝt wel entvned as by armonyne,
(contriver of musical instruments,
And was inventif for to counterfete Instrumentis, bope smale and grete,
In sondry wyse longyng to mvsik.
And for al pis, zet had he gret practik

a noble knight,
In armys eke, & was a noble knyʒt—
No man more orpid nor harder to fɪʒt*
Nor desyrous for to han victorie,
hating vain glory,
Devoide of pompe, hatyng al veyn glorie,
Al ydeld laude, spent & blow in veyn.
and Ulysses
Of Vlixes what schal I also seyn?—
Ʉat was so noble & worði* in his daies,
(crafty, Ful of wyles and sleʒtʒy at assayes,
deceitful, In menyng double and riʒt deceyueable,
To forge a lesyng also wonder able;
With face pleyn he coude make it tow Goose
Merie wordid, and but selde lowe,
(a prudent counsellor, and most eloquent, In conseillynge discret & ful prudent,
And in his tyme þe moste eloquent,
And halpe to Grekis often* in her nede.
and Diomede
And for to speken of worði Diomede,
Ful wel compact & growe wel on lenпе,
Of sturdy port and famvs eke of streŋpe,
(fierce, Large brestid, & fers also of fіʒt,
And deseyueable of what þat euere he hiʒt—
testy, Hasty, testif, to Smyte rek[е]les,
And medlif ay, and but selde in pes,
To his servanți sus ful impacient,
disputatious, And baratous wher þat euer he went,
For litel worpe of dispocioun,

4594. fіʒt] fіʒt C. 4599. noble & worþi] worþi & noble C.
4600. at] of D 1.
4603. face] facece D 1—towe] tough D 2, touʒe D 1.
4607. to] þe D 1—often] ful often C.
4608. on] a D 1.
4609. 10. lenпе and streŋpe are spellt with a g in A, D 2, D 1.
And lecherous of complexioun,
And had in loue oft[e] sythes his part,
Bremynge at hert wip Cupides dart,
And specheles ful oft felt[e] soor.
What schal I seyn [eko] of duke Nestor?—
Of longe stature & wel compact with-al,
With kurbe schuldris & of myddel smal,
In hondis strong, with armys large & rounde,
In counsellyng prudent & wys y-founde;
Whos wordis werne sugrid with plesaunce,
Vp-on his frende haung ay remembraunce:
For of his troupe he ne koude feyne,
But in anger he my3t hym nat refreyne;
He was so fret wip malencolye,
pat no man my3t his Ire modefie,
Al-be it laste but a litel space—
Who coude hym suffre, anon it wolde pace,
Li3tly it cam and li3tly went a-way.
And Proteselavs was fresche of array,
Wonder semly & of gret bewte—
I trowe a fairer no man my3t[e] se—
Of good stature and deliuere & li3t,
No man more swyfte; & to speke of my3t,
Of his makyng he was passyng strong,
Fers of corage & loth to take a wrong.
And to telle of Neptolonius,
He was of makyng wonder corsious,
Whos her was blak, schynyng as dop get,
With eyen rounde, brood[e], stepe, and gret,
Large brestid, wip a risyng bak,
And in speche stamered whan he spak;
But in causes he coude medle wele,
And in pe lawe ful depe he dide fele,
For al his lust was be-set on plees.
But for to telle of Pallamydes,
Kyng Naulus sone, with-outen any wene,
Dares describes Palamedes, Polydamas, Machaon, Cressid. [BK. II

Dares describes Palamedes
Of face faire, of body longe and lene,
Of manful hert, hardy in bataille,
And desirous his emny to assail— 4656
(courteous)
Famylier, curteis, and tretable
In alle his dedis, & inli worshipable,
and generous),
In zifyng large, & passyng of gret fame,
Of whos bounte ful wyde sprange pe name
In many londe, pe story telleþ þus.
Polydamas
And nexte, I fynde how Polydamvs,
(big-bellied, pe worþi Greke, was of gret ðiknes,
Of wombe swolle, enbosid with fatnes,
þat onneþe he myȝt him silfe sustene;
proud,
And set of hert he was ful proude & kene,
and dull),
Rȝt surquedous & ful of pensifnes,
And seld[e] glad, so pouȝt dide hym oppres. 4664
Machaon
But Machaon, lik as writ Guydo,
Of longe & schort was atwixe two,
(impatient, Fel, proude, & fers, deuoyde of pacience,
revengeful, And vengable, who hym dide* offence;
and bald),
And ȝit he was ballid as a cote,
On whos forhede, euene by þe rote,
þe here was falle & wasted clene awey,
And selde or neuer he wolde slepe a-day. 4676
and Cressid,
And ouermore, to tellen of Cryseyde,
Of whom my Master, Chaucer,
described the beauty:
Mi penne stumbleþ, for longe or he deyde
My maister Chaucer dide his dillingence
To discryve þe gret excellence
Of hir bewte, and þat so maisterly,
To take on me it were but hige foly,
In any wyse to adde more þer-to;
For wel I wot, anoon as I haue do,
þat I in soth no þanke disserue may,
Be-cause þat he in writyng was so gay—
And but I write, I mote þe trouþe laue
Of Troye boke, and my mater breue
And ouer-passe and nat go by and by
As Guydo dop in orde ceryously. [leaf 48d]

4670. atwixe] be twixe A, D 2, D 1.
4672. hym dide] dide hym any C. 4687. but] om. A.
And þus I most don offenciouν, 4692
þoruse negligence or presumpcioun:
So am I sette euene amyddes twayne!
Gret cause haue I & mater to compleyne
On Antropos & vp-on hir envie,
þat brak þerede & made for to dye
Noble Galfride, poete of Breteyne,
Amonge oure englisch þat made first to reyne
þe gold dewe-drops of rethorik so fyne,
Oure rude langage only tenlwmyne.
To God I pray, þat he his soule haue,
After whos help of nede I most[e] crave,
And seke his boke þat is left be-hynde
Som goodly worde þerin for to fynde,
To sette amonge þe crokid lynys rude
Whiche I do write; as, by similitude,
þe ruby stant, so royal of renouν,
With-Inne a ryn of copur or latoun,
So stant þe makyng of hym, dout[e]les,
Amonge oure bokis of englishe per[e]les:
þei arn ethe knowe,* þei ben so excellent;
þer is no makyng to his equipolent;
We do but halt, who-so takeþ hede,
þat medle of makyng, with-outen any drede.
When we wolde his stile counterfet,
We may al day oure colour grynde & bete,
Tempre oure aþour and vermylouν:
But al I holde but presumcioun—
It folweþ* nat, þerfore I lette be.
And first of al I wil excuse me
And procede as I haue be-gonne,
And þoruþ his fauour certeyn, þif I konne,
Of Troye boke for to make an ende;
And þer I lefte ageyn I wil now wende,
Vn-to Cryseyde, and þouþ to my socour
Of rethorik þat I haue no flour
Nor hewes riche, stonys nor perre—

4699. gold dewe-drops] golden dropes D 1.
4711. ethe knowe] ethe to knowe C, esy to knowe D 1.
4719. folweþ] forweþ C.
Cressid described; her sunny Hair and heavenly Eyes. [BK. II

For I am bare of alle corioust, 4728
þorú crafty speche to enbrovde with her sleve—
þet for al þat, now I wil not leue,
But ben as bolde as Baiard is, þe blynde,
þat cast no peril what weary þat he fynde;
Riȝt so wil I stumble forþe of* hede
For vnkounynge, & take no better hede,
So as I can, hir bewte to discrue.

Cressid was small, 4736

But I must do like blind Bayard,
and stumble along.

Cressid was small,

But I must do like blind Bayard,
and stumble along.

Cressid was small,

But I must do like blind Bayard,
and stumble along.

But I must do like blind Bayard,
and stumble along.

But I must do like blind Bayard,
and stumble along.

But I must do like blind Bayard,
and stumble along.

But I must do like blind Bayard,
and stumble along.

But I must do like blind Bayard,
and stumble along.

But I must do like blind Bayard,
and stumble along.

But I must do like blind Bayard,
and stumble along.

But I must do like blind Bayard,
and stumble along.

But I must do like blind Bayard,
and stumble along.

But I must do like blind Bayard,
and stumble along.

But I must do like blind Bayard,
and stumble along.

But I must do like blind Bayard,
and stumble along.
He hir accuseth, and newfongilnes.
And aftir pis, Dares dope reherse
Amongis opher, how þe kyng of Perce
Cam to Grekis with many worpi knyht
To helpe & furþere with al his ful[le] my3t.
þe whiche kyng was of stature longe,
And wonder fat and, as he writ,* riht stronge;
Whos berd and her, reed as flawme of fire,
With eyn steppe, and feruent of desyre
To haue a-do, and sterne of chere & loke,
And ofte syþes* of sodeyn ire he quok—
And had wertis plente in his face.
And þus Dares, shortely for to pace,
No more of Grekis wriþet, as I fynde,
But of Troyans for to make mynde,
Ceriously he dope his stile dresse
Hem to discryue, as I schal expresse.
And first he seith how kyn Priamus
Was of his chere benigne and gracious,
Of hiþe stature, with lymys sklender & longe,
Delityng moche in musik & in songe;
And specialy he was most desyrous
To heren songis þat wern amerous—
A semly man, and of gret hardynes,
And spake but lowe, as bokis vs* expresse:
Devoide of drede, hatyng flatery,
And alle þat koude ouþer glose or lye,
Trewe of his worde, & to euery wy3t
He dide pleinly equite and riht;
For no mede hym list nat to decline,
And loued erly on morwe for to dyne.
In his tyme on þe worþiest
Of alle kynges, and he þat loued best
Worþi knyhtes; & alle þat he knewe
þat manful were and of hert[e] trewe,
He koude cherische, no man half so wele,
With gold & giftes, pat pei myst[e] fele
His grete fredam & largesse eke with al.

Priam's eldest son Hector was the flower of manhood,

And of his sones, for to rekne hem alle,

be first of birpe, so as bokis telle,

Was worpi Ector, of kny3thod spring & welle,

Flour of manhod, of strengpe per[e]les,

Sadde & discret & prudent neuere-pe-les,

Crop & rote, grounde of chialrie,

Of cher demvre, and of curtesye

He was example—per-to of sobirnes

A verry merour, & for his gentilnes

In his tyme pe most[e] renomed,

To reknen al, and of goodlyhed

pe most[e] famus, [and] in pes &* werre

Ferpest spoke of, bope ny3e & ferre.

On eche part he was so vertuous,

And to be loued pe most gracious,

Of brawn & bonys compact be mesure,

So wel brepid in armys to endure,

So wel parformed be proporcioun,

So quik, so lifly, and of most* renoun,

So huge made, so wel growe on lenghe,

So wel complet for to haue gret strengpe,

pat in his worlde, 3if I schal nat feyne,

Was neuer noon pat fully myst attayne

To pe prowes of his worpi kny3t,

To rekne his hert as wel as his myst.

And per-wip-al so wys and avysee,

be low[l]iest eke of his degre

To riche & pore, and of wordis fewe.

Vn-to alle suche chere he koude schewe,*

Of his presence pat glad was every wy3t,

Whan pei at leyser hadde of him a si3t;

He was so benygne to hem of pe touz,

And to his enmyes lyk a fers lyounz

He koude hym schewe, whan it was to do;

4818. lifly and of most] lusty and most of C.
4819. on] o D 2.
4826. lowliest] lowest D 1.
4828. alle] alle peple D 1—schewe] hem schewe C.
And in þe felde þer myȝt[e] no man so,  4836  Hector was never tired of fighting,
To rekene al his labour, half endure:

For þe story doth vs pleyn assure  4838
þat he was neuer wery in bataille,
Nor feint in hert his fomen to assaille.
Of alle good I fynde he was þe beste;
Prowes & vertu in him wer sette at reste  4840
So passyngly, þat neuer was no schal
Noon bore of modir to be perigal
To hym of manhod nor of chiualrie:
For alle he passed, but ʒif bokis ly[e],  4844
In whom Nature was no þing to wyte,
Saue in his tonge he was let a lite;
And, as som auctours make mencionu,
He was sangwyn of complexiou[n].  4848

And, ferfermore, his broþer Dephebus,
Lik as I fynde, and also Elenus,
Were liche Priam, þat sothly of hem þre
Was hard tospien any diuersyte
Of schap, of forme, or of countenaunce,
Saue of age, þer was no variaunce:
Her fader olde and þei wer ʒong & liȝt.
And Dephebus was a worpi knyȝt,  4856
And had in armys fame & excellence;
And Elenus in clergie and science
Was wel expert, & toke but litel hede
Of alle þe werre, knyȝthod, nor manhede.
But Troilus shortlȝy ʒif I schal diseryve,  4860
þer was of hert now manlier on lyue,
Nor more likly in armys to* endure:
Wel woxe on* heijte and of good stature,
ʒong, fresche, & lusty, hardy as a lyoun,
Deliuere and strong as any champiou[n],
And perigal of manhod and of dede
He was to any þat I can of rede  4868

4836. pleyn] pleynly A.
4838. to] for to A—to assail[e] for tasay[e] D 1.
4860. nor] or D 2, D 1.  4861. shortlȝy] sothly A.
4863. to] for to C.  4864. on] of C.
4865. a] om. D 2, D 1.
Troylus was a second Hector, and true in love, firm-willd, and death to the Greeks, but a shield to the Trojans.

Paris was the handsomest of men.

In doring do, pis noble worþi knyȝt,
For to fulfille þat longeþ to a knyȝt.
Þe secunde Ector for his worþines
He callid was, and for his hiȝe prowes
Duryng þe were, he bare hym ay so wel;
þer-to in loue as trewe as any stele,
Secre and wys, stedefast of corage,
þe most[e] goodly also of visage
þat myȝt[e] be, and benigne of cher,
With-oute chaunge, & of on hert entere.
He was alwey feithful, iust, & stable,
Perseueraunt, and of wil inmvtable
Vp-on what þing onys set his herte,
þat doubilnes myȝt hym nat peruerte—
In his dedis he was so hool and pleyn;
But on his foon, þe sothe for to seyn,
He was so fers þei myȝt him nat with/stonde
Whan þat he hilde his bloodly swerde on hond:
Vn-to [þe] Grekis deth and confusioun,
To hem of Troye shelde* and procteccioun ;
And his knyȝthod shortly to acontu, þer myȝt in manhod no man hym surmounte, þorouȝ þe worlde pouȝ men wolde seke,
To reknen al, Troyan nouþer Greke,
Noon so namyd of famus hardynes,
As bokis olde of hym bere witnes,
Excepte Ector, þer was nat swiche anoþer.
And aftir hym, to speken of his broþer,
I mene Paris, most passyng of bewte,
þat in þis worlde no man myȝt[e] se,
In verray sope, a more semly knyȝt;
For as I rede, þat he, be title of rjȝt,
Of fairnes bare awey þe flour—
With lokkis selwe lik gold were of colour.

4869. knyȝt wyght D 2.
4871. misplaced at bottom of column in D 2.
4872. He callid was and] þe secunde Ector D 2—callid was] was callid A.
4902. were] wire D 1.
And in schetyng most was his delite,  
Hauyng in hunting a [ful] gret appetite;  
And as Dares likith hym discryue,  
þe best archer on þer-of a-lyve;  
And of his hond was eke a noble knyȝt,  
A manly [man], deliuere and of good myȝt;  
And in þe werre preued wel he was.  
And, as I rede, þe Troyan Eneas,  
As myn auctor listeth to endite,  
Was wel brested and of body lite,  
And bare in Troye wonder gret estat;  
In his werkis discret and temperat,  
Wys of counseil and of gret sapience,  
Most renomed also of lettrure,  
Delytyng moche in bokis & scripture,  
And euere glad, boþe of port & chere,*  
Sterne of his loke, with persyng eyen clere.  
And amonge alle dwellýng in þe town,  
To speke of goodys and pocessiouw,  
Of castels and towres gret plente,  
I fynde, sofely, þat noon in þat cite  
Ne myȝt atteyne vn-to his reches;  
And hadde also, for al his worpines,  
Of gold and mebles passing gret tresour.  
And his felawe, he, dawn Anthenor,  
Was scendre & longe, & of gret dalyaunce,  
And circumspect in al his gouernaunce,  
Wel be-louyd also of Priamus,  
And of wordis wonder copious,  
Resownyng ay in-to myrpe and pley.  
And he was Iapyng al þe longe day  
Among his feris and in companye,  
So driely þat no man myȝt espie,  
So sobir he was in his contenaunce,
Dares describes Polydama, Merionas, and Hecuba.

Polydama, who was like his father, was like his father, quickly angry, and his son, callid Pollydamas,

Was lik his fader of stature & of mak, I-thewed wel, pat per was no lak

In his persone, gentil and riȝt trewe, Wonder strong and pale also of hewe,

And to Ire sterid sodeynly, But al his hete passe wolde anoon.

And to telle of kyng Meryon, And al his speche ful of bourdis was.

Large brestid, & of his makyng al Of schap and forme pat men* koude fynde,

And so wel performed vp by kynde, And to Ire sterid sodeynly,

pat non was lik to hym, nyȝe nor fer :

His lokkis selwe, & crispyng was his her— Stille of his port, and gentil with to play,

And inly strong maystries for to assay; Wonder curteis, to no wiȝt dispitous,

And wrouȝt in armys dedis meruelous, As in pis boke her-after schal be sene.

Nowe after hym, to Eccuba pe quene, Whos lymys alle dide more decline

Lik pe story, my style y mote encline— To schap of man þan to womanhede,

As seith Guydo ; but in werke and dede Sche was in soth þe most[e] womanly,

þe best avised, and most prudently In hir dedis koude hir silfe gouerne,

þat maznys wit myȝt[e] nat discerne To fynde a bet, dout[e]les, þan sche—

So trewe example of femynyte Sche was in soпе, and to eueri wiȝt

Dares describes þat every wyȝt hadde gret plesaunce 

To here hym talke, whan þat he was glad;

And, al-be-it þat he of port was sad,

3it al his speche ful of bourdis was.

And his sone, callid Pollydamas,

Was lik his fader of stature & of mak,

I-thewed wel, þat þer was no lak

In his persone, gentil and riȝt trewe, Wonder strong and pale also of hewe,

And to Ire sterid sodeynly,

Al-be in wordis he kept hym couertly—

But al his hete passe wolde anoon.

And to telle of kyng Meryon,

Large brestid, & of his makyng al

þe best[e] compact and þe most[e] tal

Of schap and forme þat men* koude fynde,

And so wel performed vp by kynde,

þat non was lik to hym, nyȝe nor fer :

His lokkis selwe, & crispyng was his her—

Stille of his port, and gentil with to play,

And inly strong maystries for to assay;

Wonder curteis, to no wiȝt dispitous,

And wrouȝt in armys dedis meruelous,

As in pis boke her-after schal be sene.

Nowe after hym, to Eccuba pe quene,

Lik þe story, my style y mote encline—

Whos lymys alle dide more decline

To schap of man þan to womanhede,

As seith Guydo ; but in werke and dede

Schere was in soth þe most[e] womanly,

þe best avised, and most prudently

In hir dedis koude hir silfe gouerne,

þat maznys wit myȝt[e] nat discerne

To fynde a bet, dout[e]les, þan sche—

So trewe example of femynyte

Schere was in sope, and to eueri wiȝt

4940. bourdis was] borde was (partly erased) D 2.
4953. men] non C. 4955. nor] ne A.
4967. misplaced at bottom of column D 2.
4970. myȝte] ne myȝt D 1.
Benigne of port and gracious of siȝt:
To pore also pitous and merciable,
And vn-to nedy wonder charitable.
Be wif of Ector, hir douȝter in lawe,
After hir lore mochel dide drawe,
Andronomecha, be feipful trewe wyf,
So good, so iust, be whiche in al hir lyf
In honeste dide hir moste delite—
Longe of hir schap, with brestis faire & whyte,
With rody chekis, ennewed by mesure,
With persyng eyen, of angelik figure*—
Lik gold hir tressis, & rosyn lippis rede
I-liche fresche, of colour no ping dede.
Per-to sche was of chere be goodlieste
To riche & pore, and spake alwey be beste
Of euery wîst, ay helping what sche myȝt,
Pat no man trist went out of hir siȝt;
And ouer þis, euery gentil-man
Sche forþre wolde in al þat euer sche can,
And gladly euer dide* hir dilligence
To gete grace to hem þat dide offeince:—
Þis was hir vsage and condicioun,
Sche was so ful of compассionuz
Þat women alle myȝten of hir lere.
And Cassandra, hir ovne douȝter dere,
Was of stature wonder wommanly,
Of colour white, and þer-wiȝth riȝt semly
(Sane in her face in soundri places were
Many wertys growyng here & þere);
And al hir Ioy and felicite
Was to kepe hir virginithe;
And freelte þat wômmen han of kynde,
Þoruȝ vertu moral sche put out of mynde,
Of alle foly fleyng occasiouȝ;
And ay in studie & contemplacioun*
Dares's description of Cassandra & the lovely Polyxena.

Dares describes Cassandra (who has a spirit of prophecy),

Of sondry bokis sche wolde [hir] occupie,
And specially of astronomye;
Of prophesy e a spiritt hed[de] sche;
And somme men seyn sche was on of þe þre,
Of þe women þat Cebile bare þe name,
Of whom þe renoun foureth & þe fame
Vn-to þis day, and is as yet but grene.

And for to telle of zong[e] Pollicene,
And descriu hir bewte vp and douz,
It were in soþe a presumpcioun
To take on me now so grete a þing,
To clyme þo hige & passe my konnyng,
Sipen Nature in forgynge of þis mayde,
Hir konnyng al utterly assaied
To make hir fair aboue eche creature,
And seide proudly: “se how I, Nature,
Whan [pat] me list, enbelissche can my wirke:
Liche as Phebus among þe cloudis dirke
Is passyng clere, so in comparisoun,
I can my wirke and operaciou
Riþt as me list adourne & make fair,
So peint & florische, it schal nat apeire;
And my colours so craftily dispose,
Of þe lillie and þe fresche rose,
And so ennew þat þei schol nat fade,
But ay ben on; and in þis wyse I made
My dere douzter, ze wite whom I mene,
þe ʒonge, fresche, faire* Policene,
A-skans þat non can þis crafte but I!”
þus in hir wirke bosted outerly
Nature hir silf, whan sche þis maide wrouȝt,
As sche þat fully in hir hert[e] pouȝt
Abouen alle oþer to maken hir excelle,
And of bewte to be þe verray welle.
And þer-wiþ-þal in schap nor [in] stature
Ne was no lak, I dar þou wel assure;
And God aboue ʒaf hir souereynete
In alle thewes, and wolde sche scholde be

Crop & rote namyd of womanhede,
With folsomnes of al goodlyhede,
So passyngly, þat it wer ydelnes
Me to preswme by and by texpresse
Hir beute al, it wer a vayn travail;
For wel I wote myn englishe wolde faile,
In whiche mater to talke felyn[g]ly,
Who-euere it can, certeyn it am nat I.
þerfore I passe, & streȝt now wil I go
To my mater; for Dares of no mo
In al his boke maketh mencioun
Of hem of Greece nor of Troye toun:
In special he putte no mo in mynde
þan 3e haue herde, saue, as 3e schal fynde
In pis story, whan it cometh þer-to,
Of hir knyþthod & who þat best hath do,
Lastyng þe sege, þe maner euerydel.
And rïȝt anon to scharp[e] my poyntel
I wil me dresse, pis story to entrete,
Of al þe werre to telle þou þe grete.

Here folowyngge is declarede the grete noumbre of
shippes that the Grekys assemblede in the havene
of Athenes, bysidis a grete navye that kame to
them whene þay wer at Troye.¹

The tyme neiȝp aftir þis nat 3ore,
þat breme wynter with his frostis hore
Gan taswagen of his bitter colde;
When Appollo passid was þe holde
Of þe signe þat we calle Aquarie,
And in þe Fissche, fer in Februarie
I-ronne was to-wa[r]l þe Ariete;
And þat sesoun, with þis feynt[e] hete,
On hillis hïȝe gan his bemsy smyte,
Makyng þe snow with faire flakis whyte
In-to water kyndely relente,
Whiche from aboue to þe valey went,

5048 Polyxena
5052 was so lovely that my English can't describe her.
5056 So I'll go on with my story of the War,
5060
5064 and sharpen my pen to tell it.

¹ Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 52 d.
The Greeks muster at Athens. The Ships of Agamemnon. [BK. II]

The Greeks muster at Athens.

The Ships of Agamemnon.

The Greeks muster at Athens. The Ships of Agamemnon. [BK. II]
The Grecian Navy at Athens for the Expedition.

Cam xxxii schipes in þe companye
Of þe duke þat híste Achalapus,
With whom was eke, ful fresche & desirous,
Helymux* þe erle, þe worpi knyȝt;
And fifty schipes, ena[r]med for to fyȝt,
With him brouȝt þe kynge Epistrofus,
Only with helpe of kynge Cedyus;
And Thelamoun, whom Aiax som men calle,
Ful renowned, for to reknen alle,
Hath fifty schipes brouȝt to þis Iourne
From Solemyne, his royal che[e] cyte,
With erlis, dukis, & many worpi knyȝt,
Eueryche of hem in stele armyd briȝt.

And duke Teuter, with Amphiacus,
Erl Darion, and noble Theseus—
þis ilke foure, ful worpi of renoun,
In þis viage cam to Thelamoun.
And olde Nestor, cruel of hert & þouȝt,
Oute of Pilon hþ fifty schipes brouȝt.
þe kynge of Daymes, þat ful worpi was,
And eke þe kynge þat híst also Thoas
Brouȝt[e]n with hem in her companye
An C schipes knyȝtly for to guye;
And Thelamoun, y-callid Cilleus,
þat was in armys fel & dispitouþ,
With him brouȝt from his londe so ferre
Sixe & þritty schipes for þe werre.

Amphimacus & kynge Polibete
þritty schipes brouȝt[c] to þe flete
From Calcedoyne; and Meryoun, þe kynge,
Wip Ydumeus hadde in her ledyng
Foure score schipes with hem oute of Crete;
And Vlixes wip Grekys dide mete
With fifti schipes stuffid oute of Trace,
Towardis Troye proudly for to pace.

Duke Mellyus, ful of manly men,

5119. Helymux] Elymny C.
5120. Epistrophus and Schedius 50;
5123. Nestor brought 50 ships out of Pylos;
5124. 50 ships from Salamis
5126. and many knights,
5128. Amphimacus (Amphimac- cus), Teucer, Diore, Theseus (Thal- pius) and other heroes.
5132. [leaf 51 a] [leaf 51 a]
5136. Thoas 100;
5140. Telamon Oileus 56;
5144. another Amphimacus and Poli- betes (?)
5148. From Calcedon; Meriones and Ido- meneus 80 from Crete;
5150. proudly] stilly D 2.
The Grecian Navy at Athens for the Expedition. [BK. II

292

Brought eke [wip] hym grete schipes ten;

And, ouermore, pe duke Perotacus
And pe duke namyd Prothisalus,
To pe hauen pe pat callid was Athene,
Brought fifty schipes, enarmid brijt & schene,
From Philiarcha, pe strong my3ty Ile.
And Methaon, as Guydo doth compile,
Wip his broper Polidris also,
From her contre Troycianyco,

Brought xxii schipes, as I fynde;

And from Phices, as it is made mynde,
With Achilles cam fifti ful by noumbre ;
And from Rodon, Troyens to encombre,
Cam xxii schippis with kyng Thelap[ol]us;
And with pe duke pat hit Antipus,
Oute of pe londe pat Hesida men calle,
Of whiche pe folke be ny3e cherlis alle,

With sail crossyd ageyn pe brijt[e] heune,
In noumbre cam schipes eke eleuene;
And with hem was, of name ful famus,
pe worpi duke, callid Amphymacus.
And Polibethes, pe strong my3ti kyng,
Fifty schipis brought at his comyng;
Oute of Richa, pe noble regiony;
And with pis kyng, ful worpi of renoun,
Was Losius pe duke, eke as I rede ;
And, as I fynde, pe noble Diomede,
Of schipis grete (I speke of no smal barge)
Hath with hym brought from Calidoyn & Arge ;

Foure score in noumbre, sothely pis no tale ;
And Thelimus and my3ti Euryale,
Two manly men & in armys sage,
Wip Diomede cam in pis viage.

And Polyphemus brought[e] schipis seuene,

5181. pis] pat is D 1.
And Phyneus, þe hardy kyng, enluene;
And Prothoylus, as I can specifie,
Brouȝt fiftie schipis vn-to [t]his navie
From Demenesa, þe myȝti regiouw;
And Carpenor, as made is mencioun;
Brouȝt fifti eke from Capadie his contre,
A gret provynce, of whiche kyng was he.
Trearyus, of Beysa lord and kyng,
Brouȝt xxii[?] also in his comyng;
And finally, ȝif I schal nat lye,
Ful many schip was in þis navie—
Mo þan Guydo maketh reherseale,
Toward Troye with Grekis for to saile.
For as Omer in his discripcion
Of Grekysche schipis makeþ mencioun,
Schortly affermyng, þat man was neuer borne
Þat swych a noumbre of schippis saw to-forne—
Countid þe schipis þat Palamydes
Brouȝt with hym her noumbre to encrese—
Þat whan þese lordis a-forn-seid euerychon,
Kynges, dukes, and erlis alle in on
Assemblid wern, wijp-outen any wene,
Afore þe hauene þat callid is Athene,
Þe famous kyng, grete Agamenoun,
So wys, so worþi, ĵe of so hîȝe renoun,
As he þat was prince and gouernour
Of Grekis hoste, anon diþe his labour,
His besy cure and wakir dilligence,
By hîȝe avis and inward prouidence
To delibre wysly in þis nede
What were to do or þat he procede
In þis mater, castyng vp and down
And reuoluyng of hîȝe discrecioun,
Þat he may so begynnen þat þe ende

5194. xxii[?] two and twenty A. 5196. schip] schippes D 1.
5197. maketh] makeþ of D 2, D 1.
5206. alle in] many D 2. 5209. New Þ A.
5214. hîȝe] his D 2.
Conclude wel, āt wilfulnes ne schende
Holly her purpos þoruȝ no rakilnes,
Ne þoruȝ noon hast, with-oute avisenes,
So þat þei may a-forn so wysely se,
þat finally in felicite
þei may accomplishe her purpos in certeyn.
And so þis kyng, vp-on a large pleyn,
Out of þe cite but litel* fro þe stronde,
With his lordis wil for no þing wonde
To haue a conseil, þis wyse Agamenon,
Makyng a-noon a convocacioun
Of swyche as wern most gret in special,
He sittyng first in his se royal,
And his lordis eueryche in his se,
Like as þei wern of hiȝe or* low degre;
And al tumulte stinted, and silence
Was þoruȝ þe pres, to ȝif hym audyence,
þazne he anon, in ful sobre wyse,
Began his tale, as I schal deuyse.

Howe prudently Agamenon coragyde his lordys ageyns the Troyans.¹

"Sirs," quod he, "I praye you takep hede,
þat be so noble and so renomed
Boþe of wisdam and of worpines,
Of manhode eke and of hiȝe proves,
þat of knyȝthod þe report & þe fame
þoruȝ-oute þe world reboundeþ to ȝour name :
For dout[e]les þe flour of chialrie
Men may now fynde in þis companye ;
For who sawe euer of manly men y-fere,
To-gidre met, as þer* ben now here—
So ȝonge, so fresche, so coraious also,

¹ Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 53 c.
King Agamemnon's Speech to the Greeks in Council. 295

So wel be-seyn for to haue a-do,
Or so likly, sith pe worlde began,
With-oute raskail so maney kyngtly man,
Of kynges, dukes, and maney anoþer lorde,
As be now here of wil & on accorde,
And of on hert assemblid in pis place,
Pat ʒif Fortune & goddis, of her grace
Be nat be-hinde oure Iourne to aпреve,
We may nat faille oure purposé to acheme:
For, I deme hym pleynly in a rage,
Or wors þan wod, þat durste pis viage
In any wyse perturben, or þreswme
To take ageyn vs, ouþer to asswme
Be myȝt on hym of malys to excite
Our worpiines—wer it neuer so lyte—
Vs to prouoke to Ire, or doon offence,
ðat we ne schulde, be mortal recompense,
A quyte his mede, as it lype in oure myȝt,
ðat han among vs so maney a worpi knyȝt—
Amongis whiche an hundrid & ʒit mo
I koude chese able for to go,
Be manly force & knyȝtly suffysance,
To take on hym for to do vengaucce
Vp-on Troyans be hym sylf allone—
For whiche þat we be gadred now echone—
þat with his meyne were sufficient
To execute þe somme of his entent
And it acomplische in felicite—
þe cause, I mene, for whiche þat alle we
Assemblid ben, boþe hige and lowe.
And with al þis, to þou is nat vnknowe
Howe shamefully Troyens han vs grevid,
Proukid vs & wilfully y-mevid

5252. "with no scamps among you,
5256. if Fortune favours us,
we cannot fail.
5260. I can pick 100 who could singly revenge us on Troy.
5264. Among you
5268. Among you
5272. I mene, for which þat alle we
5276. You know how shamefully the Troyans have treated us.
Let us then, with one accord, make war on the Trojans, and teach em not to land again in Greece. Their offence against us sets us on fire.

Agamemnon urges the Greeks to revenge against Troy. [BK. II

To rise ageyn hem to han recur of riȝt
Of wrongis don, with aloure force & myȝt.

Wherfore, lete vs be on assent & wille,
Setlyn to han, as it is riȝt and skylle,
Redres to fynde of pat we now compleyne,
And of oon herte done oure besy peyne

make war on the Trojans,

Vp-on Troyens a werre for to make.
And I suppose, we schul hem so a-wake,
pat pei schal lerne, or we pe[n[ne]s wende,
To remembre to pe worldes ende

how pei her-after schal dur take on honde
For to preswme in Greece more to londe,
Or to be bolde while pei haue lif or space
Ageyn[es] Grekis more for to trespace:
For whos offence, as who seybe do but late,

their offence against us sets us on fire
to avenge it,

With-Inne oure herte, with so brennyng hate,
pe feruent hete and pe gredy Ire
Fro day to day so settip vs a-fire,
pat it renewep pe constreynt of oure peyne
So inwardly, zif I schal nat feyne,
We mote of resoun of so hys greuaunce

and wreak our injuries on them,

Our siff enforce for to do venguance,
As riȝt requireth, and oure iust[e] sorwe
Compelleth vs, bophe eve and morwe,
On Troyans oure harmes to be-wreke.

and make them fear to repeat it.

And for to stop tonges pat so speke
To oure reprof and to oure vileny,
We most attonys schape remedie,
pat oure soon hen[ne]s-forne may drede
For to do wers to vs, as God forbede,*

In tyme commyng, zif poruȝ oure pacience
We liȝtly suffre her importable offence
To passe forpe, and take of it noon hede.
Sith neuer zit of Grekis koude I rede,
pat any man dide reprof to her name,
pat iustly myȝt rebounde to her schame,

With-oute pis, pat pei it quitte ageyn

5290. we] I D 1. 5293. dur] om. D 1, dor D 2.
Agamemnon urges the Greeks to revenge against Troy. 297

Horô, her manhod, so openly & pleyn,
Pat no man myst of hem seyn or pis
In any wyse or report a-mys.
Ne we schal nat dissymulen in pis cas,
Withcher oppresse,* nor with dreadful face 5324
To lete slyde or lijtile ouer-go
Pë grete offencis pat were so late do,
Whiche wolde turne vn-to vs and ours 5328
To gret reprefe, & to oure successoures
In tyme comyng, & schamefully be spoke,
How pat Grekis durste nat be wrote
Vp-on her foon—pë whiche may nat be,
I jou ensure, Sith pat alle we
Ben of oon wil to reformeoure wrong,
And për-with-al so mystly & so strong,
Pët who is he pët konde in brede & lenghe
A-rist rehearse our power & our strenghe,
Or who durste euer oure worpines assaile
Pët he ne schulde, with-oute any faile,
Repente in hert, or at pë ende rewe—
Saus Troyans, pis oper day of newe,
Of wilfulnes, in a foly rage
In-to oure londe maden a viage,
Vnwar of vs, & with her praye hom wont;
Pë whiche pëi schal ful hastily repent,
For her trespas and gret offenciou
: For al pë worlde knoweï vp and dow,
But late agon how Grekis* but a fewe
Vp-on Troyens her power dide schewe
And slowe her kyng, callid Lamedoun,
Fadir to Priam, now kyng of pët tou
, And fordide touris and cite,
And with hem ladde in captiuite,
From Grekis swerde swiche as hem list spare,
Pët among vs in seruitude and care
Compleyne her harme whiche may nat be recurid.

5321. myst] repeated in D 1.
5324. oppresed] oppressyng C.
5327. wolde] shulde D 1.
5350. pët] pë D 1.
Agamemnon says they must consult the Oracle.

"The Trojans are preparing to resist us, and to get friends to help them. Lastly, I advise that we send to Delos, and obtain an answer from Apollo, how our undertaking shall prosper.

The Greeks agree to this."

The Trojans are preparing to resist us, Of our coming Troyens ar wel war And don her labour & her diligence Ageyn[e]s vs to* make resistance With al her myst—I knowe it oute of doute— And gadre frendis in contres al aboute To helpen hem & strengpe hem in her nede, Vs to wipstone, 3if pei myst[e] spede. But finally, o* ping I consaille, From pis haunene or we ferper saille, bat we may be pe more fortunat, Of oon assent to make ambassiat, And prudently, or we ferper wende, In-to Delos in al hast bat we sende— Whiche is an yle a litel here be-syde— More discretly our Iourne to provide, [leaf 53 b.] bat we may han pe better hap & grace Of Appollo, patron of that place— To haue of hym, 3if pat we may spede, Fynal answer in pis grete nede Of our exployt how bat it schal falle, 3if it so be 3e wil assenten alle To pis conseil, pei meste and eke pe leste.” And pei echon pouzten for pe beste To condiscende to pis conclusion With-outen any contradiccoun ; And alle attonys, with-outen any drede, pei prayse his counsell & his wyse rede ; And per-vp-on, discretly, as pei ouste, As seipe pe stori, euene pus pei vrouz't.

Howe Agamenon, by þe avyce of al þe princes of Grece, 
sent Achilles and Pirrodus into Delphos, to haue 
answere of Apollo, whidere thay shulde haue þe 
victory of þe Troyens or no. And here-aftire is 
declarid, howe ydolatrye and fals godeþ had ther 
bygynnenge; And how Calchas kam to þe same 
Ille.¹

After þe tyme þat Agamenoun

Concludid hap fully his resoun,
As þe han herde, & his sentence fyned, 
þe Grekis ben of herte ful enclined, 
And with o vois acordid pleyly þus, 
þat Achilles and also Pirrodus, 
For comoun profit, sith[en] þei wer sage, 
Schal take on hem þe charge of þis message, 
To Appollo for answere for to goon;
And to schip þei hem haste anoon
And seile furþþ be þe large se
Toward Delphos, and in prosperite
þei ben aryued & I-com to londe.
þe whiche Ile, as I vndirstonde,
And as myn auctor seith, with-oute les,
Haueth his syyt amonge[s] Cyclades,
Wher men with rokkis haue so moche a-do,
Amyd þe see callid Elespontico.
Of whiche Ile to make discricioun,
I mote a while make digressioun
Fro my mater, as myn actor doth;
For in þis Ile, Ysidorus in soth
Reherseþ pleyly how Latona, þe quene,
Appollo firste, and Diane þe schene
I-childid hapþ, by Iubiter her lord,
Whan he and Iuno wer[e]n at discord—
As writ Ovide—for a litel while.
And so by-fil, in þis litel Ile
þer was a temple whilom dedicat

¹ Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 54 b.
Of Apollo the Sun, & Diana the Moon, & the ile Delos. [BK. II

To Apollo a Temple was dedicated,

Vn-to Appollo, and also consecrat
In his worshipe, of olde fundacioun,
pat was honoured with grete deuocioun,

Be-cause Appollo with his bemys clere,
After pe flood, firste pere dide appere

To schewe his hornys, rafer pere & sone,
And Diane eke, pat callid is pe mone.

Of whiche schewyng pis Ile berep pe name
In-to pis day, pat is of so grete fame—

Only be aperyng of pis ilke tweyne:
For Delos is in Greke no more to seyne

pan a schewyng or an apparence.
And püs be-gan pe grete reuerence

To Appollo first, and pe honour eke
To hym y-do of so many Greke,
And to his suster pat callid is Dyane,
pe pale mone, pat can so wexe and wane,
And callid is of paynymys a goddesse,

pat whilom was in wode an hunteresse.
And pis lady, with pe sonne her broper,

Of pis Ile haue lordschip & non oper,
Only for pei at her natiiuite
Schedid her liȝt firste in pat contre.

The Greeks call Delos 'Ortigia,'
Ortigia, in her language alle,

Be-cause curlewys wer þer first I-seyn:
For Ortigias is no more to seyn

þan a curlew, in grew, I vndirstonde;
For pei were firste engendrid in þat londe.

And Appollo is callid eke Tytan,
þat in his tyme so moche worship wan,
Longe to-forne or he was made a sterre,

With Jupiter whan þat he hilde werre.

And he also y-callyd is Phebus,
And of somme y-namyd Phicius:
For of Pheton he hadde pe victorie
Whan he him slow3, to his encre of glorie—
pe grete serpente here in erpe lowe—
Wip his arwis and his myzti bowe,
Of whiche conquest pe gret[e] god Cupide
Had envie, and euene poryz pe syde
He wouaddid hym, depe to pe herte
With pe arwe of golde, pat made him sore smerte.
And of Pheton, pat Phebus made fyne,
Com Phetonysses, pat konne so devine—I
mene women pat ben devyneresses
boro3 dede men, pis false sorceresses,
As oon whilom reisede Samuel
For loue of Saule, pe Byble can 3ou telle.
And in his temple large, longe, and olde,
per was a statue al of purid golde,
Ful grete and hige, & of huge weizte,
And per-in was, poru3 pe deuels sleizte,
A spirit vnclene, be false illusioun,
pat 3af answere* to every questioun—
Nat pe ydole, dovmbe as stok or stool.
And pis pe peple, deceyued euerychon,
Were* by pe fend brou3t in gret errour,
To done worship & swyche false honour,
With sacrific[e] & cursed mawmentrie.
And in pis wyse began ydolatry,
As in pis place to tellen I me caste,
And how longe it abode and laste,
Compendiously I purpose to discryve—
Gynnyng & ende, as je schal here blyve,
Wip-outen any ambyguite.
For at pe birpe and natuute
Of Crist Iesu, at pe incarnacioun,
Alle pe ydoles brast and fell[le] dow[n],
And vanished, & wer brou3t to nou3t,

The Sun was also named Phaethon
when he slew the great serpent, Python.

5460 and from him came the Pythonesses,
sorceresses, of whom one raisi Samuel for Saul.
In a statue of gold in Apollo's Temple

5468
5464
5456
5472
5476
5480
5484
5488

Among

5469. his] this A. 5471. of] of an D 1.
5474. 3af answere] answe3 3af C. 5477. Were] Wher C.
5484. here] here as D 2. 5486. at pe] in pe D 1.
5488. dow[n] a dow[n] A.
An Angel appeared to Joseph, and bade him take the Child and Mary into Egypt. Then all the idols were broken to shivers.

Ishmael was the first idol-maker. But some pagans say Prometheus was.

Others assert that Belus, lord of Assyria, was.

When Herodes pe blisful* childe hap souȝt þoruz his malis & crueltie horrible, As holy writ recordeþ & pe Bible. For whiche pursut and persecucioun, þer dide apere, be a visiouyn,* An holy angel to Ioseph as he slep, And bad hym ryse & also taken kep Vn-to þe childe, and also to Marie, And goon his way, or Herode him espye, In-to Egypt, þe grete regiouw, Lik as þe gospel makeþ menciouyn. 5500

And riȝt anoon, as he cam to* londe, þer was non ydole vp-riȝt myȝt[e] stonde, But to-schuerede vn-to pecis smale— pis holy writ, pleynly, and no tale, As was recorded first of Isaiye, How þat oure lorde on an esy skye Ascende schulde & holde furpe his weye Toward Egypt, & þer-wip schulde deye Al mawmetrie, and no lenger duelle. 5508

But as þe Iewes recorde of Ysmael, þat he was first þat mawmetrie fonde, And made of clay an ydole with his honde, And as peynymys write & tellen vs þat aldirst first was Promotheus þat fond ydolis, schortly to conclude ; For simulacrum cometh of similitude— þat is no þing pleylynly but liknes Made after man, his ymage to expresse, Vn-to whiche peynymys in her guyse, With false honour & cursyd sacrifise, Be-gonne first þis ryt for drede of man. 5520

And somme seyn, how Belus first began Swiche fals[e] worshop & suche mawmetrie, [leaf 53 a] In her bokis as clerkis specifie, 5524

pat of Assirie was lord & gouernour,

After whos deth his sone in his honour,  
\[\text{Ninus, the son of Belus,} \]
\[\text{set up a golden image of his father,} \]
To be worshipte only for his sake—  
\[\text{5528} \]
Al of brent gold, be fals afeccioun,  
\[\text{5532} \]
And sette it vp for consolacioun,  
\[\text{5536} \]
And for a mynde and a memorial,  
\[\text{5540} \]
Vn-to \text{pe whiche, with hert[e], wil, and al,}  
\[\text{5544} \]
Of ygnoaraunce and of fleschly love  
\[\text{5548} \]
He dide honour, as to God above,  
\[\text{5552} \]
In his templis, most of excellence,  
\[\text{5556} \]
And made his peple to do reuerence,  
\[\text{5560} \]
And seide in heuene he was deified,  
\[\text{5526. in] D 2. 5533. Of] And of D 1.}  
\[\text{5534. as] ther to as D 1.}  
\[\text{5544. jei] per D 1.}  
\[\text{5550. fil] pus fillen D 1}  
\[\text{5555. je] pis D 1.}  
\[\text{5558. je] pis D 1.}  
\[\text{5558. je] pis D 1.}  
\[\text{5558. je] pis D 1.}  
\[\text{5558. je] pis D 1.}  
\[\text{5558. je] pis D 1.}  
\[\text{5558. je] pis D 1.}  
\[\text{5558. je] pis D 1.}  
\[\text{5558. je] pis D 1.}  
\[\text{5558. je] pis D 1.}  
\[\text{5558. je} \]
\[\text{5558. je} \]
\[\text{5558. je} \]
\[\text{5558. je} \]
Of Saturn & his Sons; & of the Gods Mars & Apollo. [BK. II

And zat hym name after þe planetæ
hat in heuene hap so large a spere.
And as poetis in her fablis lere,
that he be-forn, þoruz his sapience,
Sawe in his dyvyne providence
Howe a sone schulde of hym discende,
And of Iuno þe godessa, as he wende,
þat schulde hym pleinly from his regne expelle
And suffren him no lenger for to duelle
In his kyngdam, whan he com to age—
Wher-of Saturn fil in swiche a rage,
þat he wil schape remedie þer-fore,
Byddying his wyf, þat whan þe childe wer bore
þat sche to hym schulde it bring a-noon,
In stede wher-of to hym sche brouȝt a ston—
To saue hir chylde sche dide hir besynes—
And þis Saturn, þoruz his gredynes,
þe ston deuoureþ in his malencolye.
And þus Saturn, but þif bokis lye,
Hadde sonys þre, a douȝter, & no mo:
Iubiter, Neptunus, and Pluto.
But Iubiter grattest was of name,
Most renomed & worpiest of fame
Among paynyms, as it is verefied;
For þei so hiȝe han hym magnyfied,
þat þei hym calle “god of fire & eyr,”
Nexte to Satorne borne for to be heyr.
And nexte to hym, in bokis as I rede,
Is god of bataille, myȝti Mars þe rede;
And nexte Appollo, so cler, so schene & briȝt,
þe daies eye & voider of þe nyȝt,
Cherischer of frut, of herbe, flour, & corne—
þe whiche god, liche as is seid a-forne,
in Delos is worschipete and honoured.
And after, Venus, þat often hap socoured
Many louere, þe faire, lusty quene,
And hem alleggid of hir woundis grene,

5594. a-forne] to form A, D 2, D 1.
pat first were hurt with hir fyry* broud,
As sche pat is goddes of many lond,
And al pe worlde hape in hir demeyne
Fast enbracid in hir fyry cheyne—
I mene pe lady pat callid is Venus.
And nexte in ordre is Mercurius,
pat in speche hath most excellence
Of rethorik and sugrid eloquence;
Of musik, songe, and of armonye
He hath lordschipe and hool pe regalye.
Nexte pe mone, pat waxe can & wane,
Callid Lucyna and also eke Dyane,
pat in Delos hath hir mansiouz,
Lik as to-forn is maked* menciouz—
Now ful of list, now hornyd pale is sche,
Lady of chaunge and mutabilite,
pat selde in on halt hir any tyme;
And so fare pei pat ben born in hir clyme,
pat ay delite in pingis pat ben newe,
Whos hert is clad in many sondry hewe,
So pei be diuers in her affecious;
And in pis wyse, in sondri* regiouns,
Of mawmetrio is pe venym ronne,
Lik as clerkis wel deuyse konne:
For, as I fynde, pe Mawricyens
Worschip Iulam, and Egyptiens
Honouren Ysis, after her konnyng,
Whilom douzer of Ynachus pe kyng,
pat tauȝt hem first hir lond to ere & sowe,
And also lettris for to rede and knowe,
And in lettrure to sette her besyneye—
For whiche ping pei calle hir a goddes.
And Iubiter honoured is in Crete,
Where he whilom hilde his souereyn sete,
And on hem leyde many diuers charge,

5615. pat] And D 1.
With egles betyn in his baner large;
And he was lord of eyr, of lond, & see,
His royal kyngdam deuidyng in-to þre:
In þe hiest hym silfe doth contune,
And hool þe se he 3af vn-to Neptune,
And laste þe erpe, to holde his se royal,
He 3af to Pluto, þat god is infernal;
And alderlast, when he was stellified,
Jupiter was lord of Creation.

Of hem of Crete, a-bouten ouer al,
To whom þei made for a memorial
A large tombe and a statue a-lofte,
And hym honoured in her ritis ofte
With encens and oper sacrifice.

Jupiter's Division of the World.  Of Fauns, & Romans. [BK. II]

Jupiter was lord of Creation.

He gave the sea to Neptune; the earth to Pluto.

He was most honour'd in Crete.

The Latins did reverence to Fauns.

The Romans' God was Quirinus.

Romulus first built Rome.

His spear, when planted,

budded and bloom'd.

After him, Roman knights were called 'Quirites.'

5645. a-lofte] of loftte A.  5671. hym] hem C.
Hiȝe in heuene whan þat he was stallid
Amonge þe goddis, and y-deifyed.
And þus Romeyns han hym glorified,
As for her god, with gold & gret expencis.
And, as I rede, þe Athenyenses
Of hoo[le] herte chosen for to serue
To þe goddes þat callid is Mynerue,
And Pallas eke, wip hir cristal schelde,
þat with Neptunus evene amyd þe felde
Helde chaumpartye, with wommen on hir syde;
And he with men, ful sirquedous in* pride,
Defendip hym for þeving of þe name
Of Athenes, a cite most of fame—
þis to seyn, wheþer he or sche
Schulde of riȝt name þe cite—
Til it be-fil, as þei gonne stryue,
Sodeynly þer sprang a fair olyue
For Pallas part, grene & fair blosmyng,
And þer ageyn, a welle gan to springe
For hym Pluto, with water, large & depe,
Of whiche þing Appollo toke good kepe,
Whiche in his dom was nat rek[e]les;
And for þe olyve token[e] loue & þes,
Water trouble, contek, werre, and strif,
He 3af sentence anon diffynytif,
How Pallas schulde, þat callid is Mynerve,
þe palme pleynly of þis strif disserue.
And sche anon 3af name to þe touȝ,
And callid it, be hiȝe discrecioun,
Athenes, þe whiche in special
Is to seyn, a cite in-mortal:
For wisdom first þer be-gan to flour[e].
And for þis skille, þis cite dide honour
Mijt[y] Pallas, goddesse of science,
And had hir ay moste* in reuerence.
And þei of Pave, in al her regiou[n,
Worschip moste þe quene of Cytheroun—
At Paphos the statue of Venus is painted with gold and azure.

I mene Venus, ful of doubilnes,
Of whom asorne somwhat I dice expresse—
And in hir temple, ful solemnely,
pe sette hir hiest; & moste richely
With gold and azure hir statue pei do peint,
And oper colours peat may neuer feynt,
And set hir vp in pe hizest se
Of all* pe temple peat al men may se;*
And sche stant nakid in a wawy se,*
Abouten hir with goddesse pre,
peat be assygned with besy attendaunce
To a-waite on hir & don hir obserenaunce.
And floures fresche, blewe, rede, and white
Ben hir aboute, pe more for to delyte;
And on hir hed sche hap a chap[e]let
Of rosys rede, ful plesauntly y-set,
And from pe hed douu vn-to hir* foot
With sondry gommys & oynementis soot
Sche is enoynt, swetter for to smelle;
And enviroun, as poetis telle,
Ben douvys whyte fleyng, & eke sparwis,
And be-syde Cupide with his arwys—
Hir blinde sone—for to hurte and dere,
And loseth ofte & smyt he wot not where,
As he mote nede, be-cause he is blynde.
And þus honouryd & most had in mynde
Amonge þis peple is Venus þe goddesse.

And Naxyens don her besynesse
To serue Bachus, þe myþi god of wyn,
Whos licour is moste precious and fyn
To recomfort hertis and to glade,
And to refresche hewes þat ben fade
In facis pale, and makıp wittis sharp,
Losnyth* tongis, & doth hem loude carp,
And causeth hem to walke at liberte,
And to discure þing þat was secre

5713. do] om. D 1. 5716. Of all] In C.
5716. 17 are transposed in C. 5720. a-waite] wayte D 1.
5724. y-set] set D 1. 5725. vn-to hir] to þe C.
Wip-out avys or discrecioun:
For w[h]er as wyn hath domynacioun,
No secrenesse may be kepte in mewe.
And somme of hem bat Bachus serue & sewe,
Amonge to hym haue swiche deuocioun
bat pei som while ar voide of al resoun,
Hasty and wood, & wip-out al drede;
And somme also so toty in her hede
bat pei are voide of power & of my3t,
And haue no foot for to stonde vp-right.
And 3it pei ben as chargaunt as a pye,
Pale cherid, wip a glasy eye,
Ful of resou\n til his wynde be spent:
For man or woman bat is vinolent
Is verreyly a beste vnresonable,
And, to my dom, I holde hym eke vnable
To ben acceptid in any companye,
Whan bat her tonge wadeth on pe lye,
bat pei ne may brynge forth* a worde.
And pus Bachus, pe stronge my3ty lorde,
Ful ofte causeth folkis for to erre,
To debate, & to* make werre
Of hastynes, wher as is no nede.
Wherfore it is wisdam bat men drede
His slis\ty werkyng, or pei falle in pe snare;
And feble braynys be mesour for to spare
Or pei vnwarly arestid ben & take,
And or Bachus make hem for to schake
In a fevere wers pan tercyen*—
3iffe it of custom be quotidiен,
Alterat with Bachus my3ty lows—
And afferde of tornyng of pe hous,
And for-dreynt on pe drye lond,
When he hath lost bope foot & hond,
And with a strawe pleyeth like an ape,
And deuoutly gynmeth for to gape,

Where wine rules, no secrets are kept;
men get void of reason,
others become toty, and can't stand up-right.

A winer is an unreason-able beast.
Bacchus breeds strife and war.
His fever is worse than the tertian.
He makes folk play with straws like an ape.
Of Bacchus, God of Wine. Of Vulcan, Mars & Venus.

And noddeth ofte with his Iowsy bed,
As he had on an hevy cappe of led.
And who pat be of his condicioun,
He entre may pe religioun.

Of mysti Bachus, for abilite.

pe which[e] lord hath pe souereynte
Bope of hony and of mylke þer-to,
And of bawme, pat is so riche also,
And lordship hafe of hige power devyne
Bope of grapis and of euery vyne,*
To ȝf hem norisshing by his influence.

Of whom pe honour and pe reuerence
Is reysed most, as I vndirstond,
Among wynteris in euery maner lond,
Be-cause he is to hem so gracious.

And pei of Lewne worship Wlcanus,
þe god of fyre, Iubiter[i]s smyth;
þe whiche forgip on his blak[e] stith
þe gret[e] þonder, hidous & horrible,
And þe levenys, þat whilom be visible*
In-to þe west, oute of þe orient,
And gasteth vs with his dredeful dent—
þis smotry smyth, þis swart[e] Wlcanus,
þat whylom was in herte so Ialous
Toward Venus, þat was his weddid wyf,
Wher-of þer roos a dedly mortal stryfe
When he with Mars gan hir first espie,
Of hige malis & cruel fals envie,
þoruþ þe schynyng of Phebus bemyt brȝt,
Liggyng a-bedde with Mars her owne knyȝt.
For whiche in hert he brent as any glede,
Makyn þe sklaundre al abrood to sprede,
And gan þer-on * falsly for to mwse—
As God forbede þat any man accuse
For so litel any woman euer:
Where lone is set, hard is to disseuere;
For þouþ þei don swyche þing of gentilles,

5784. he] om. D 2. 5790. vyne] wyn C.
5786. Lewne] lune D 1. 5800. visible] viseble C.
5804. was in herte] in herte was A. 5813. þer-on þer of C.
BK. 11] Vulcan's absurdity. How Lucifer was cast into Hell. 311

Passe ouere liȝtly and bere noon hevines
Liste þat þou be to wommen odious—
And sit þis Smyȝt, þis false Wlcanus,
Al-be þat he hadde hem þus espied,
Among peynys sit was he deified;
And for þat he so falsely hem a-woke,
I haue hym set laste of al* my boke
Amonge þe goddis of fals mawmetrie.
And in þis wyse gan ydolatrye,
As þe han herde, þoruz oppiniouns
Of peple erryng in her affecziouns*—
þat al is fals, who þe trouthe cerche:
For by techyng of al holy chirche,
þe holy doctrine and tradicioiws,
We schal dispise swiche oppiniouns,
Whiche of þe fende wer founde nat of late.
For whan angelis in hevene wer create,
He þat of alle hadde prelacey—
Of whom þe prophete callid Ysaie
Writþþ riȝt þus: how þe cedris grene
Of paradys wer nat so fair to sene,
Planys nor fir in heïȝte, soþe to seyn,
To his hiȝnesse myȝt[e] nat atteyne,
Nor al* þe tres, so deliciouȝs,
Of paradys were nat so precious,
Nouþer in siȝt nor in semlynes
To ben egal to hym in fairnes;
But þo[r]uȝ his pride & his surquedie,
When he seide to God, þat sit so hîȝe,
He wil be like, and also set his se
Hîȝe in þe northe, passyng his degre,
He was cast down with alle his legiouns
From þe faire hevenly mansiouns,
Al sodeynly in-to þe pitte of helle,
Perpetuely þer for to duelle.
Of whom was seide, when he fil so ferre:

5824. of al] in C. 5828. affecziouns] afflicziouns C.
5841. al] of C.
“How fil þou so, o þou morwe sterre,
From þe myddis of þe stonyz briȝt,
þat ben so percyng & fyre of her liȝt,
þat whilom wer for þi gret briȝtnes
Callid Luciȝer;”—of whom Crist seiy expresse

In his gospel, how he sawe fro hevene
Sathan discende, lik þe fyry* leuene—
þe olde serpent, þat is so lowe falle,
Whom Hebrei in her tonge [c]alle
Be-mowpe, þat doth in latyn plein expresse
A beste rude, ful of cursednesse—
þe vile serpent, he, Leuyathan,
Whom Ysidre wel discrue can,
Whiche of kynde is euere convessaunt
In wellis trouble, & hauȝ most his haught
Amongis watreis in þe large see;
Of whom seiy Dauid, lik as þe may se,
In þe sauter makyng mencion
Of þe snake, þe monstruous dragoun,
Ful of venym, and of harde grace,
Whiche in þe se, large & gret of space,
With foule addris hape his mansioun,
Vn-to mankynde to doon illusioun—
Whom whilo? sawe þe holy monke Brandan,
As he seiled by þe occian,
þrowe* & defeict, in a pet horrible,
More foule and hidous þan it is credible,
þer to abide, þis tortuose serpent,
Vn-to þe day feynly of Iugement,
þat of malis envied so mankynde.
Whiche with his gyynes* & sleiȝtes, as I finde,
Cam to oure fadir first in paradys;
And to deceyve þe bet at his devys,
More couertly, þis werme in his passage
Toke of a serpent þe liknes & ymage—

5855. stonyz] stremes D 1. 5860. fyry] fyre C.
The Serpent tempted Eve in Paradise, & spoke by Spirits. 313

pat is, of chere, of loke, and countenaunce
Like a mayde, & hath pe resemblaunce
Of a womman, as recordeth Bede,
In his deceytis rapir for to spede—
I mene pe hed only, and nat ellis:
For be-hynde, so as clerkis tellis,
Like a serpent of wombe, bak, & taile
He was whan he gan hem to asaile;
And towarde Eve whan he gan to glide,
He first enquerip, as he hir toke* a-side,
Why God for-bad hem etyn of pe tree,
Whiche zif pei ete, sothly schulde be
Like to goddis, knowyng good & ill.
And ri$t furpewith, as pei gan fullfille
pe fendis heste, her eyen were vnclosid,
And for her gilt sodeynly deposid
From paradys in-to wrechidnes,
To liuen in labour, sorwen, & distres.
And pus pe fend, first whan pat pe toke
Forme of a snake & a woman loke,
And made pe tongue in hir hed to meve,
By fals engyn mankynde for to greve,
So as he doth in hem pat be travaillied,
With wicked spirites vexid & assailed,
To meve her tongis falsly oute to breke
In-to blasfemye, what ping pat pei speke—
pe same serpent, he Levyathan,
Contynvyng ay falsly as he gan
In cursid ydoles dovmbes, defe, & blynde,
Ful ofte spekith* be spirites, as I fynde,
Whiche ar but fendis, Davuid wrt certeyn,*
pe goddis alle, whom folkis so in veyn
Honour with ritis superstycious,
As whilom was Appollo Delphicus,
Liche as to-form ye han herde deaise,
Why Guido has said all this about Idolatry is,

because it wasn’t known.

Achilles in Apollo’s Temple.

Of the answeres that Appollo gave, as welle to fals Bisshope Calchas, as to Achylles.

~314 End of the Idolatry talk. Achilles in Apollo’s Temple. [BK. II~
And per abide many stronge bataille,  
But at pe last, with-outen any faille,  
At ten þere day, þei wyne schal þe tou[n]  
And bringe it pleynly to distruiçion—  
Wal and touris schal falle to ruyne;  
And with al þis, her purpos for to fyne,  
Kyng Priamus and Eccuba his wyf  
And her sonys, in þis mortal stryf  
Schal þer be slayn, broþer after broþer:  
þis is þe fyn, for it may be non oþer;  
For þer schal non eskapan in þe place,  
But swiche as Grekis likeþ vn-to grace  
Of verray rouþe and of mercy take—  
þis al and som, & þus an ende I make."  
Of whiche answere Achilles glad & liȝt  
Was in his herte, & witeþ al his myȝt  
þankþ Appollo of þis blisful ever;  
And sondeynly, of sort or aventure,  
þe silfe tyme be-fil a wonder þing:  
For out of Troye, fro Priamus þe kynȝg,  
Was sent a bishop for þe same caas  
To haue answere, whos name was Calchas.  
And he cam in, sool wip-outen prees,  
þe same hour while þat Achilles  
Was þer present, a man of gret science—  
I mene Calchas—& had experience  
Specyally of calculaciouw,  
Of sort also and divinaciouw,  
And lernyd was in astronomye.  
And whan þat he his tyme dide espie  
To haue answere most conuenyent  
Of Appollo, like to his entent,  
As to-fore makid is memorie,  
He entrid is in þe oratorie,  
Doyng his rytys & his obseruaunces,  
Like þe custom with þe circumstaunces,  
And besely gan to knele and pryhe,
The Oracle bids Calchas not return to Troy, but go to the Greeks with Achilles.

And his pinges dueoutly for to saye, And to pe god crie & calle stronge; And for Appollo wolde him nat prolonge, Sodeynly his answere gan atame, And seide: "Calchas," twies be his name, "Be riʒt wel war pat þou ne turne ageyn* To Troye touw, for þat wer but in veyn; For finally, lerne pis of me, In schort tyme it schal distroyed be— pis is in soth, whiche may nat be denied, Wherfor I wil þat þou be allyed Wip þe Grekis, and with Achilles go To hem anon; my wil is it be so: For þei schal han, as I haue disposid, Victorie & honour, þat may nat be deposid; For it is fatal and ne may nat varie, And þou to hem schalt be necessarie In conseillyphg and in zevinge red, And be riʒt helpynyg to her good[e] sped.”

This he does. And with þat worde roos him vp Calchas, [leaf 55 e] And to Achilles he went an esy pace, And whan þat he cam to his presence, With gret honour & moche reuerence He was reseyuyd, like to his estat; And after some þei [were] confederat, Swor to-gidre be bonde & assuraunce To ben al on, wip-oute variaunce; And þanne in hast þei to-gidre goon To her schipes, & schope hem furpe anon, With Pirrodus goyng by her syde. þei hale vp anker and no lenger bide, But seile furpe, Calchas & þei tweyne, Toward Greece—hem nedeth nat compleine On wynde nor wawe—til þei arived be At Athenes, þat stood vp-on þe se, A large cite of olde fundaciouw; And Achilles to kyng Agamenoun Hath Calchas brouȝt and also Pirrodus.

And whan þe Grekis, þe story tellip vs, Assemblid wern, þei to-gidre wente To-fore þe kynge, & Calchas represente To alle þe lordis, and no lenger dwelle. And riȝt anoon Achilles gan to telle With-oute abood, in Delos how þei mette To-fore Appollo, where þei answer fette, And how þe god hath pleynly determyned þe Grekis purpos, how it schal be fyned Vp-on Troyens, and bad Calchas also In no wyse þat he to Troye go, But wip Grekis þat he abide stille, Til þei her purpos fynally fulfille. Of whiche þing þe Grekis, glad of chere, Calchas accepþ with herte ful entere For on of hem, confederat be bonde, To ben al on on water & on londe, Wip-outen chaunge or any variance— þe oþe is made & put in remembraunce; And þei ageyn fully hym* assure To cherissent hym whil her lif may dure, For wel or wo, and so þei made an ende, And after parte & to her loggyng wende. Til on þe mawre, after þe sterry nyȝt, Whan Aurora was gladid with þe liȝt Of Phebus bemens, þe Grekis vp aryse, And to her goddis with many sacrifice þei don honour in what þei can or may, And deuoutly holdyng a feste day, After her ritis, meynþt with love & drede, In remembraunce of þe good[e] spede, [leaf 55 d] And of þe answer þat gooddis han hem sent, So agreable vn-to her entent, By Pirrodus and by Achilles. And afþir þis, amongis alle þe prees, Is Calchas come to-fore Agamenoun,

6051. fully hym] hym fully C; but each word is marked to show that the order should be inverted.
6055. new * A. 6059. don] dide D 1.
Calchas warns them against delaying their Expedition.

How fals Calchas of Troy was conveyede to pe presences of pe prinse of Grece, and howe he innaturally exortyde them to make mortal were vpon his kyngye and kynrede, as folowith.¹

He warns them

"O sirs," quod he, "and my lordis dere, Kynges, princes, & dukis pat ben here, So noble echon, worpi, and famus, And eke so manly and so vertuus, Which in* pis place be now here* present, Is nat pe fyn & chef of [3]oure entent, And cause, also, why pat 3e echon Assemblid ben to Troye for to goon Wip pis power and pis grete strengpe— Your purpos is to longe drawe a lengpe And differrid furthe* fro day to day To 3our damage, platly pis no nay; For to longe 3e soiowre in pis Ile. And trowe 3e nat pat Priam in pis while Hath his espies among 3ou preuily— I wote it wel, I saie 3ou feithfully— To knowe pe fyn of 3oure gouernance, And he þer-whiles may make puruyauce Hym to diffende, while 3e in ydel reste!

Me semeth, sothly, 3e do nat for þe beste:

¹ Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 55 c.
For in abdyng & in swiche delaies
Gret harme may falle, certeyn pis no nay is.
I preue it þus: for pleynly while þat þe
To þoure enmyes graunt[e] liberte
Calchas urges the Greeks to sail for Troy at once. 319
Hem to purueye, þei may with myȝti honde
Enforcen hem þour power to wiþ-stonde
Wip her frendis and her allianse,
And at leiser make her ordynance.
It is foly þat þe so differre,
Sith þe be redy, for to make a werre
On þoure enmyes, with every circumstance;
For no þing may a quarel so avaunce
As hasty swt, it wil þe scharper bite—
þe Iren hoot, tyme is for to smyte;
And nat abide til þat it be colde:
For nouþer þanne it plie wil nor foldre.
Goth, set vp-on, alle of oon acorde,
And to schip anoon with-Inne borde
Enhastep þou, for tyme is to remewe,
Wip al þour myȝt þour quarel to pursewe
Ageyn[e]s hem, þat han to þow trespassid.
How many daies ben of somer passid,
And many moneth ronne & ouer-slide!
And Titan ofte with his chare hath ryde
From est to west, and in þe wavies depe
His stremys baþed, whil þe han leyn a-slepe
And spent þour tyme in þis place þus,
Whil þat þe wynde, callid þephirus,
Benignely enspired hath on* lofte
Thatempre eyr, þe wedir fair & softe,
þe calme see from wawis stille and pleyn,
Whil þe waste þoure daies here in veyn—
þat whan þoure foon her-to* taken hede,
þei wil suppose þat it be for drede,
And be more bolde to sette of þow but lite.
Trusteþ for soþe, for I wil me quite

Calchas tells the Greeks they must

Calchas urges the Greeks to sail for Troy at once.
The Gods have been kind to the Greeks, and should not be provoked.

Trewly to 30w, like as I am bounde,
And pinke how 3e han pe goddis founde
Her-toward benigne and fortunat,
3oure honour said in highe and lowe estaat,
And so schal forpe, 3if 3ou[r] ingratitude
Prouoke hem nat 3oure purpos to delude,
Wilfully to slopen 3oure fortune:
No wondir is, pou3 pei nat contune
Towardis 30w for to schewe hir grace.
Wherfore I rede, hen[ne]s pat 3e passe,
And schapep 3ou no lenger to lyn here,
But whil pe wedir is so fair & clere,
And lusty somer abidep in his hete
Or wynter com with his reynys wete,
And whil pe sesoun is so fresche & grene
(I speke of hert, platly as I mene)
For 3our expelit and 3our alder ese
(Wher it so be, I anger 3ou or plese)
J}at forpe in haste to schippe pat 3e wende—
I can no more, my tale is at an ende.”
And alle attonys pei ben condescendid;
To his avis, & han it wel commendid;
And in al hast, Agamenoun pe grete—
pe lusty tyme and pe sesoun swete
Hastyng pe Greis, bopen hize & lowe—
Made a trompet to schipward to blowe;
And pei echon his biddyng dide obeie,
And to her schippes pei goon pe ri3[t][e] weye [leaf 56 b]
With-oute abood—pei wil no lenger dwelle.
What schulde I more of pe noumbre telle
Of her schippis, sith 3e han herde a-fore?
It nedeth nat reherse it any more;
I can nat se what it my3t availe.
But furpe pei dresse hem & be-gan to saile;
And pis is soth, pleynly & no wene,
So gret a navie was neuer 3it y-sene

6134. han pe goddis] pe goddes haue D 1.
6147. &] om. A.
6168. y-sene] sene D 1.
A Storm rises. The Greeks land at an Island.

In al þis worlde, ne to-gider met.
þe wynde was good, þat þei wer nat let
On her weye first whan þei be-gonne;
But after some gan þe schene soune
þe clerenes chaunge of his briȝt[e] face;
And dymme cloudis gan his liȝt embrace;
And sodeynly, in ful owgly wyse,
þe heuyn dirke & þe wynde gan ryse;
þe hidous ponder & þe leuene clere
Smet in þe mast, briȝt as any fere;
And þe blaknes of þe smoky rayn
Blindeth þe eyr, þat no þing may be seyn;
And þe wawes gan to ryse a-lofte,
And in her schippes falle no þing softe,
But plounge a-doun and in her toppis smyte,
þat hem pouȝt þei want[e] but a lite
To haue be ded, in þe silfe stounde:
Til Calchas hath by his crafte y-founde
þe cause of al, [and] with his orisouns,
Wip his charmys and incantaciouns
Made sodeynly þe tempest to apese,
And with his crafte don riȝt gret ese.
For he fonde oute þe cause of enerydel,
How Diane liked no þing wel
þat þe Grekis durst[e] take on honde
To be [so] bolde to parte fro þe stronde
In-to þe se, in any maner wyse,
And do to hir no maner sacrifise,
Nouer offre to-form or þat þei goth:
For whiche þing þe goddes is so wroth
Toward Grekis, seyling in þe se,
þat þei echon wend haue drownyd be.
Til at þe last, kyng Agamenoun
Hath be counsel and informacioun
Of wyse Calchas made sette vp to* londe,
In-to an Ile, and fast his* schippes bonde.

At first the weather is fair;
then comes a storm, with thunder and light-
The ships are lost about
till Calchas charms the tempest to be still.
Diana was angry at the Greeks start-
ing without sacrificing to her.
They land at an Iland, Aulis.
And Aulides patent Ile histe,  
In whiche he fonde vnwarly in his si3te  
A litel temple and an oratorie,  
Founded of olde & made in memorie  
Of Diane, to whiche anoon he wente  
Ful dewently his offerlyng to presente,  
And quemyd hir with his oblioums,  
And lay her long in his orisouns,  
After pe rytis vsid in his lawe,  
Til pat he sawe pe tempest gan a-dawe.  
But some bokis make mencioun  
Touching pis ping, pat Agamenoun,  
As Ovide reheerseth in his boke,—  
How pis kyng his owne douster toke,  
Effigenya, benigne of face and chere,  
And endelong yppon pe autere  
pis maide he laide, dispoiled of her wede,  
To-fore Dyane to maken hir to blede,  
To fyn only pat he pe heuene quene  
With blood pat was Innocent & clene  
Apese my3t, and queuen of hir rage.  
And pe goddes gracius of visage  
Hath mercy meint with hir magnificence,  
To suffre a maide ful of Innocence  
Gilt[es] in her temple slawe,  
Hath be miracle a-waye hir body drawe,  
And conservid from al anoye & smerte,  
And in hir stede vnwarly cast an herte,  
By deth of whom, as bokys make mynde,  
Agamenoun first gan grace fynde  
In pe goddes for to modyfye  
Hir* crucl Ire; and clere gan pe skye,  
pe se wexe calme, and pe wedir fair;  
And Phebus eke, to glade with pe eyr,  
Gan schewe newe, & his bemys cast  
In-to pe se; and pe kyng as fast  
Vn-to schip repeired is a-geyn,
The Greeks sail to the Castle Sarobona, near Troy. 323

The Greeks sail to the Castle Sarobona, near Troy.

Diana is said the Queen of Roads and Journeys.

The Greek ships help of hir which is, as clerkis seyn, Lady & queene of wayes and passage; And goddess is callid of viage, After sentence and oppinioun Of hem pat werke be calculacions, And 3eue her domys by astronomye. And most of al pei hir magnifye In pe tenpe and pe twelpe house; For pe sche is, pei sei, most gracious, Best fortuned, cler or in hir schade, 3if sche haue comfort of aspectis glade Of planetis stondying in good state— I mene swiche as be fortunat To viage or Iourne for to make.

Howe the Grekis destroyede the Castel callede Sarobona as pey saylede towarde Troye, and it dispoyled.1

And swiche tyme Agamenon hath take His happy weye schipped for to be; And in good* hour he taken hape pe se With pe Grekis, pe wedir agreeable; And Eolus hath maked acceptable Wynde and eyr, hooly at her wylle, Noufer to loude, pleyuly, nor to stille, But in a mene so merie made blowe, pat pei atteyn, in a litel prow, To certeyn boundis of Troye pe cite, Vn-to a castel, pat stood vp-on pe se, Right wonder strong, pouz it wer but lite, pe name of whiche, pouz Dares not ne write— I mene Dares callyd Frigyus— Set oper auctours rehersen sothly pus, Sarobona pat it was y-callid, Rounde aboute diched * & wel wallid, With hize touris rounde, square, and wyde; pe se went vnder, and faste per be-side

The Greek ships have good weather,

And reach a Castle near Troy,

Cald Sarobona,

On the sea.

6242, which] pat C. 6251. schade] sage D. 2.
6258. good] a good C. 6272. diched] dykyd C.
1 Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 56 c (misplaced after line 6266).
The Trojans sally out from Sarobona, but are beaten. [BK. II]

Was an hauene able for ryvaille.
At whiche, pleinely, þe Grekis wil nat faile

With her power myȝtely to aryve,
Maugre alle þo þat þer ageyn[es] stryue—
þei myȝ[e] wel, for it was nat denied,

Only excepte þat þei wer espied

Of hem allone þat in þe castel dwelle.
þe whiche anoon, as þei herde telle
Of her commyng, proudly in þe berde

With hem to mete were no þing a-ferde,

But issen oute, doun vn-to þe stronde,
In purpos only to letten hem for to londe
With al her myȝt, 3if it wolde available.
But þe Grekis so proudly hem assaille

þat þei ne myȝt in her diffence endure:
For wher-as þei wendyn haue be sure,

Demyng þe Grekis pleinely of þe se
Forweried and feynted hadde be,

Wip longe seyling parbraked & forbroke—
Wherfor þe[.] cast on hem to haue be wrote
Al sodeinly, and settyyn on of hede,
And putte hem silf in aventure & drede

Of rakislyn, vn-avisely.
Wher-of to hem ful vnhappily

It be-fil whan þei-þe Grekis mette

With speris longe & swardis scharpe whette,

Eche on oper manhod for to scheue.
But, for cause Troyans were so fewe,
To issen oute þei dide folily;
þe felde was nat partid egally:

For þe Grekis wern Innumerable,

þat hem to mete þe Troyans wern nat able—
For þat tyme þei myȝt[e] nat suffice:

þei toke on hem so passyng hîse emprise—

And 3it þei nolde for no þing hem withdrawe

Til þei were wounded and y-slawe,
The Greeks slay all the Trojans in Sarobona.

And ouerlyn of* Grekis utterly—
Now here, now þere, bor don cruelly,
Merciles, as Guydo doth reporte,
þat hem behoveth hom ageyn resorte
Of verray node and necessite.
And alle attonys gone for to fle—
I mene swiche as were lefte alyve—
To þe castel þei hasten hem ful blive;
For þei ne myȝt no lenger holde felde
Ageyns Grekis, with spere nor with schelde:
þei were to feble, schortly to conclude,
To abide so gret a multitude.
And as þei fle, þe Grekis a gret pas
Ne cesse nat to swen on þe chas,
Ful hastely to þe castel gate,
And entren in, and by cruel fate
þei kille & sle boþen hiȝe & lowe;
þei spare noon, ne list no wiȝt to* knowe
Of non estat, but fellly hem oppresse;
And what þei fond, gold & eke richesse,
Vn-to shipp þei cariden* anoon;
And of þe castel þei left nat a stoon
Aboue a-noper, but turnen vp so don
Boþe wal & tour & þe chefe dongoun,
þat no þing stood, so þei vnder-myne.

Howe Agamenon layde his Oste byfore Thenedown, a
stronge Castele vj myle fro Troye, the which he
wan, and it bet to þe grounde; and aftire þat,
agally made distribucyoun of the godys.1

And whan al was broȝt vn-to ruyne,
Grekis anoon to her schipples haste
Of on assent, and purpos as faste,
With-oute abood, of o will[e and herte,
Fro þat hauene pleylyn to diuerte,

6328. no wiȝt to] wete ne C—no wiȝt] with D 1.
6330. what þei] whanne D 1.
6331. cariden] carien C, paryeden D 2.
1 Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 57 a (misplaced after line 6340).
The Greeks sail to Tenedos, 6 miles from Troy.

And to saille towarde Tenedoun,
A strong castel, whiche fro Troye toon
In distaunce but sixe myle stood,
Ful of tresour, of riches, and of good,
Repleysched of alle habundaunce.
And whan þat þei with her ordinaunce
I-seiled han, boðe sauf and sounde,
and land there.
And fro þe se taken han þe grounde,
To her plesaunce wonder agreable,
The place is
And of syȝt a place delitable,
Holysom of eyr, þe soil riȝt fair & grene,
And lusty playnes goodly on to sene,
full of food,
And was also habundaunt of vitaille,
Repleysched of al þat may availe
To hosteyng and to soudyours—
flowers,
For firste þe lond, ful of fresche flours,
corn
Was plenteous boðe of corn & greyne,
and cattle,
Of wyn & frute, þat no þing ley bareyn,
and fish.
Ful habundaunt of fysches, as I fynde,
The Trojans in the Castle
And whan þat þei which Inne þe castel were
þe Grekis seie londen from a-fere,
With-oute abood þei arme hem & wente oue,
And vppon hem make an hydous schout,
Stuffyng þe castel with meine strong be-hynde,
march against the Greeks,
And toke her wey, in Guydo as I fynde,
who meet them well armd.
And riȝt furþe-withe Grekis eke anoone
Mette with hem vp-on þe toper syde,
Ful surquedous and riȝt ful of pride,
Clenly armyd in harneis al of stel,
Fresche arayed and be-sye þe so* wel
For þe felde, as þikke as swarme of ben—
On ech syde men may beholde & sen,
Sprad al þe pleyn dowm vn-to þe stronde, 
Til at þe last þei metten honde of honde, 
And assemble with square speris grounde, 
And hurtle* I-fere, with many blody wounde. 6380
þer was no “gooday,” nor no saluyng, 
But strokis felle, þat men herde rynge 
On basenettis þe strokis rounde aboute 
So cruelly þat þe fire sprange oute 
Among þe tuftis brode, briȝt, & schene 
Of foil of gold & þepres white & grene. 
Eke in-to brestes percíd many schelde, 
And besagus flen a-brood þe felde, 
And many a man lyn þat mortal stounde 
Ful dedly pale, lowe be þe grounde, 
With face gruf & blody stremys wyde. 
And aldermost vp-on þe Grekis syde 
þe slaþtre was and þe discoun shutsure, 
So myȝtely Troyens dide endure. 
Til at þe last, for þei were so fewe, 
With multitude þe Grekis on hem hewe:
For mo þan fourty wer ageyn[e]s on, 
Of verray force abak þei most[e] gon, 
No þing for lak of manhod, I dar seyn, 
But for so many han hem ouerleyn, 6400
þei may no lenger in þe felde soiourne, 
But to her castel hom ageyn retouren 
In ful gret haste, swiche as myȝt eskape 
Away a-live; and somme of hem for rape 
And drede of deth taken hem to flȝt 
On horse bak to Troye touñ ful rȝt— 
No wonder was þouȝ þei* hast[e] fast; 
For to þe gatis þe chas of Grekis last, 6408
So cruelly after þei purswe. 
And somme of hem þat myȝt[e] nat remewe 
On Troye side, for-weried of flȝt,

The Greeks besiege and assault Castle Tenedos.

The Greeks lay siege to Tenedos.

They scale the wall.

The Trojans defend themselves, and throw the Greeks down.

Some Greeks mine the towers, and set up scaling ladders.

pe Grekis slen with al her ful[le] my3t—
Now here, now þere, whom pei my3t atteyne,
þer may no raunsoun nor no mercy geyne
Of noon estat, wiþ-oute excepción.

And after þat, vn-to Tenedoum
pe Grekis went, and it be-set aboute, 
þat Troyan noon my3t* eskapen oute.
And whan þei had þe bolewerkis wonne,
To skale þe wal after þe be-gonne,
And made assaut manfully and ofte.

And Troyens, as þei stood a-lofte,
Putte hem of, þat entre þei ne my3t,
With cast of stoon and quare[le]s briʒt,
With bowe turkeys & schot of arblasteris,
And her gonnys* stondynge at corners,
Wiþ lym also, and cast of wylde fyre,
Of Irous hate ful hot in her desire,
Lik manly men hem silf[e] þei diffende.
And ay þe Grekis, as þei vp ascende,
Cruelly þei putte to þe groudne;
Til þei with-oute an ordinaunce han* founde,
What with gynnys deuised for þe nonys,
And gonnys grete, for to cast[e] stonys,
Bent to þe touris, riʒt as any lyne,
And large sowis lowe for to myne—
And somme of hem vp-on þe wallis gon,
þat were so þikke made of lyme & ston;
And to entre þei many wayes seke,
Sette her bastiles and her hurdois eke
Rounde aboute to þe harde wal,
And skalyng ladders for sautis marcial
þei gan vp cast, wiþ hokis for to holde.
And vp ascende þe sturdy Grekis bolde,
Til Troyens from þe crestis caste
þe grete stonys, whil þei wolde laste,
And Callyoun eke Grekis to oppresse,  
And wonder manly did her besynes  
In her diffence, and made hem plounge lowe  
With caste of quarel, & with scoth of bowe  
poruʒ oletis, that of necessite  
pei put hem of, it may noon oper be,  
And broke her neckis & her schulder bonys,  
As pei falle, with pe square stonyes,  
And leyen ded, pitous pale of hew.  
But Grekis ay gan her saunt renewe,  
Wit multitude Troyens to assaille,  
To withstonde þat pei gan [to] faille  
And wexe feble, for reskus cam þer non;  
And so of force þe Grekis ben y-gon  
þoruʒ þe wallys whan þei han hem broke,  
And on Troyens so cruelly be wroke,  
þat fynally þei lefte noon alyue,  
But sle and kylle; and after þat as blive,  
On þe wallis her baners þei han set,  
And ʒonge & olde—it myʒ[e] be no bet—  
Al goth to wrak vp-on Troye side.  
And after þat, þei nyl* no lenger byde,  
But tresour, gold, & what þat þei may fynde  
þei cast on hepe, & to-gyдрe bynde,  
And made spoile of al þat was with-Inne;  
And þanne in haste þe wallis þei be-gyʒne—  
Pynacle & tour, and also þe dongoun  
To brenne & hewe, and to bete doun;  
And with þe soil þei made al euene & pleyn.  
And with gret pray anoon þei went a-ʒeyn  
To her schippes, glad & list of chere,  
Whan þat þe fuyr with his flawmes cler  
þe castel had conswmyd & y-brent.  
And after þat, avise and prudent,
Agamemnon bids his Greeks bring their plunder of Tenedos, and he distributes it to them according to their deserts.

He then calls all his lords together, and makes a speech to them.

\[BK. II\]

Agamemnon distributes the spoil of Tenedos.

He manly man, worship Agamemnon,
Lete make anon a convocation
Of his Greeks, & bad ye schuld[en] bringe
Gold and tresour, with-oute more tariyng;
With all ye pray ye wan at Tenedon,
To his presence, for his conclusion:
Pat he may make destribucioim
Among him, with-oute excepcion,
Like her desert—vn-to pore & riche
He depart[ed] to every man y-liche,
But moste to swiche as did best disserue,
For to hym silf hym list no ping conseurce;
For he hath leuer hertis pan ye good,
Of swiche as had spent her owne blood
So manfully ye castel for to wynne:
For who ye can with larges first be-gyne,
Ne faillep nat after wel to spede
Bour help of men, whan ye ha[n]e nede:
For loue folwey fredam comonly.
And after pis, ye kyng lete make a crye,
Pat alle ye kynges & lordis of his hoste,
Dukis, erlys com from euery coste,
The nexte morwe to-form hym to apere.
Ye nyxt y-passed, Phebus gan to clere
Her emyspyrie, aftir ye larke song,
Whan ye kyng, among ye Grekis strong,
Vp-on ye pleyn, in his se royal,
And fast[en] by, most chef & principal
Of his lordis were set in her degre—
And whan ye kyng sawe oportunyte,
Pat he was made silence euerywhere,
His liges stondyng envirouz here & pere,
Ye kyng of chere sadde & eke Iocoute,
As he ye was of speche ful facounde,*
Be-gan his tale with sobre contenauence,
Yeffect of whiche was pis in substanouce:
Howe Agamenon rememberde al his princes of the vngodely answeres that Anthenor had of them when he desyerd to haue had restitucon of Exiona, wherupon they sent Vlixes and Dyomede to Priamus, to haue restitucon of quene Heleyne.  

"Sirs," quod he, "ful worpi of degre, Of verray ri$t and necessite
We be compelled, bope hize & lowe,
With al oure my$t, liche as ze wel knowe,
To redresse a ping pat is amys:
For þoruz þe world, as it reportid is,
We ben of force, of power, & of my$t,
Of worfines in every wizttes syzt
Most renomed & most worshipable,
And I-dempte & Iuged for most able
Of alle peples, & likliest to stonde
For to parforme what we take on honde,
Who pat euere gruce[þ] or sey[þ] nay.
3it, me semeth, 3if it be to 3our pay,
þilke power most is acceptable
Vn-to goddis, & lengest stondeþ stable,
þat is deuoide of surquidie & pride;
For it is koupe vppon every syde,
In eche lond, bope of oun and alle,
How many harmys & grevis han be-falle
þoruz rancour only, pride, & wilfulnes,
So importable, as I coude expresse,
þat þoruz pride þer is* don offence;
þe hize goddis make resistance
To alle þo þat be surquedous,
Whiche is a vice so contrarius
þat it may in no place abide.
And in good feith, manhood is no pride:
For who þat hath any acquezintance,
Outuer by frenschip or by alyauwce,
With a prowde man, to be confederat

6532. it is deuoide of surquidie & pride; 6536. how many harmys & grevis han be-falle
6539. It knows too what harm has hapt thru Pride,
6540. a vice intolerable.
1 Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 57 d.
Agamemnon’s Speech to his Greeks against the Trojans. [BK. II

Wip hym in herte, of his e or lowe estat,
He nedis muste, what-euer pat he be,
To many oper of necessite
Be lothsom first, enmy & contraire;
For no ping may a man so moche apaire
As pride, in soth, in híse or* lowe degre.
Wherfore, I rede pleiningly how pat we
his foule vice oute of our hert arrace,
pat our quarle may haue þe more grace;
And specially pat oure dedis alle
Conveied ben, how-euer þat it falle,
Be rïȝtwesnesse more þan volunte:
For þif trouþe oure sothfast guyde be,
Vs to directe by his rïȝtful lyne,
þan oure quarle schal ay in honour schine
And contvne in* ful felicite.
And, ferþermore, þis knoven alle ȝe
How we ar come for to do vengauwce,
With oure frendeschip and oure alliance,
Vp-on Priam for wrongis don of olde
By hym and hyse, as I haue ofte tolde;
And here-vp-on we han his grourale I-take,
And some of his maked to a-wake
With manful honde, & his castells strong
I-bete douw, þat stonden haue so longe,
And take þere þe riches þat we founde,
And slawe his men with many blody wounde,
And harmys mo don in his contre,
þat I wot wel, ȝif her enmyte
Was vn-to vs gret & moche a-fore,
I dar seie now it is in double more;
þat þif þat þei avenged myȝt[e] be
On vs echon, anon ȝe schulde se
Her gret Ire, so cruel & so huge,
Ben execute with-oute more refuge.
And þit, in soth, I wote þe han espided

6570. to] for to D1.  6571. castells] castel D1, castels D2.
6577. vn-to] to D1.  6578. now it is] it is nowe D1.
BK. II] Agamemnon's Speech. The Greeks are sure to win. 333

Oure beyng here—jou3 we be nat askried
Of hem as 3it, I dar seyn utterly,
pe are wel war pat we ar fast[e] by;
And ouer-more, pis wote I wel also,
Of pe harmys pat we han hem do,
pe whiche as 3it ben but fresche & grene,
3if pei wer strong & my3ti to sustene,
A werre on vs anon pe wolde gynne.
And 3it pe cite whiche pei ben Inne
Is wallid strong & tourid rounde aboute,
pat pei wene fully, oute of doute,
With pe meyne pat pei haue gadrid Inne
Of her alies, pat we schal nat wynne
Of hem but smal in werre nor in strif:
For he in sothe hath a prerogatyf
And a-vauutage, pat in his contre
Hym silfe diffendith ; namly,* 3if pat he
Be stuffid strong of frendis hym be-side,
[leaf 58 c]
And of alies, where he doth abyde;
Like as pe rauen, with his feperes blake,
With-Inne his nest wil ofte tyme make
Ageyn pe faukon—gentil of nature—
Ful harde diffence whil[e]s he may dure,
Or pat he be venquisshed & outtraied.
And 3it som while pe faukon is delayed,
Whils pe raven be-syde his nest dop fle,
With-Inne his court at his liberte;
As eue?y foule is froward to areset,
For to be daunted in his owne nest.
And 3it pis wordis to 3ou I nat sey
In any wyse to putten in affray,
Joure kny3tyl hertis, so manly & so stable,
Nor pat to 3ou it schulde be doutable,
But pe Troiens pat we schal confounde,
And her cite, in whiche pei habounde,

6584. "The the men in Troy haven't seen us, they know we are close by.
6588
6592 Their city's walls are strong, and defenders of their own country always have the advant-
6600 [leaf 58 c] like the raven against the falcon.
6604
6608
6612
6616 But don't doubt that we shall beat the Trojans.

6589. as 3it ben] is 3it D 1.
6591. gynne] begynne D 1.
6592. whiche] in which A, D 2, pe wiche D 1.
6600. namly] manly C, D 1.
6606. dure] endure A.
6610. at] and D 1. 6613. now * A.
Pleasantly distroied, al-þouȝ pat it be strong,
And þei & alle þat ben hem among
Schal finally consumpt[þ] be with deth,
þorouȝ Grekis swerde þelden vp pe breth.
But þe cause, with-outen any drede,
Why I seye þus, is þat þe take hede,
For any pride or presumpcioun,
To aduerte in þoure discrecioun
So prudently, þat resoun in þis nede
For any hast may oure bridel lede,
And so ordyn, or we hen[þe]s wende,
þat laude & pris affir in þe ende
May be reported, as I haue devised :
For many man þat hath nat ben avised,
In his pursut, for lack of prouidence
To sen to-forn in his aduertence
What schulde falle, to deth it hap him brouȝt :
Swiche wilful hast wer good to be þoȝt
Of vs a-forn be examynacioun,
And wel deduct* by reuolucioun
Of þingkyng ofte, þat we nat repente.
And first remembriþ how þat Priam sente
To vs but late only for Exyoun,
þat is þit holde of kyng Thelamoun,
Whiche was of vs, with-oute avisement,
Undiscretly denyed by assent ;
Whiche hath to vs be non avauntage,
But grouwde & rote of ful gret damage.
For þif þat we, þorouȝ wys purviance,
Of hir had maked delyuerauȝce,
þe harmys grete had[de] ben eschewed,
þat aftir wern of Parys so pursewed
In the temple of Cytherea,
þat biled is be-side Cirrea—
þe tresour gret, also, þat he hadde,
And Iowells þat he wip hym ladde

6619. al-þouȝ al be A, D 2, D 1—þat om. A.
6624. is] om. A.
6638. deduct] decut C, decuite D 1, decoit D 2.
6643, 44 are omitted in D 2. 6645. non] vn D 1.
BK. II] *Agamemnon* advises that Paris be askt to return Helen. 335

Pene to Troie, and pene gret riches,
\(\text{pene}\) slaughtre of men, and pene heuynes
\(\text{pat}\) 3it is made for \(\text{pe}\) quene Eleyne
\(\text{poreuz-oute}\) Greece, \& \(\text{pene}\) gret[e] payne
Of Menelay—al had ben vnwroug
3if we had[de] seyn pis in oure pouzt
Wisely afrorn, and Exyouz restored.
\(\text{pan}\) had nat \(\text{pe}\) harms be so morid
On vs echon, in verray sothfastnes,
Nor spent oure labour so in ydelnes,
Tresour nor good wasted so in veyn,
Nor come so fer for to fecche ageyn
\(\text{pe}\) quene Eleyne, with costis importable,
With-oute harms, now in-eschuable:
And for al pis, 3it ne wite we,
\(\text{Wh}e\) to Ioye or aduersite
\(\text{pe}\) schal turne \(\text{pat}\) we be aboute,
Sith ofte sithe dependent \& in doute
Is fatal ping, vnsoeker \& vnstable,
And fro \(\text{pe}\) gyuuyng ofte variable
\(\text{pe}\) ende is seyn : Fortune can transmewe
Hir gery cours ; \& \(\text{perfo}\)re, to eschewe
\(\text{pe}\) harms likly possible [for] to falle,
My conseil is, here among 3ow alle,
Vp-on travaul trueaul to eschewe,
In pis mater or we ferper swe,
To Priamus, with-outen any more,
To sende first ageyn [for] to restore
\(\text{pe}\) quene Eleynye, as rizt \& resoun is,
And oper harms don eke be Parys,
Aftir his trespas \& offenciouz
Iustly to make restitucion.
\(\text{pan}\) may we alle in worship \& honour
Retournen hom, wip-oute more labour,
3if \(\text{pei}\) assent to don as we require;
And oure axying 3if hem list nat here,
But folily, of her wilfulnes

6656. "and the slaughter of Greeks would not have taken place;
6660. and we shouldn't have wasted treasure and goods for Helen.
6664. We shouldn't have wasted treasure and goods for Helen.
6668. And as Fortune is uncertain,
6672. And as as Fortune is uncertain,
On Agamemnon's advice, Ulysses & Diomede are to go to Troy.

“If Priam refuses us,
Refusen it, þan oure worpines
Is double assured on a siker grounde,
By iust[e] title Troyens to confounde.
Wip þinges two we schal ben vnder-piȝt:
First ore power, borne vp with our riȝt,
Schal for vs fiȝt our quarel to dareyne,
In balanunce to weye atwixe vs tweyne
To fyn þat we schal be more excusid;
For þei to-forn han willfully refusid
Oure ȝust proferes made to hem a-fore;
And we schal be poruȝ þe world, þer-fore,
With-oute spot of trespass or of blame,
Of mysreport in hyndring of our name,
Wher þei of foly schal y-noted be,
Of wilful wodnes, pleiny, wher þat we
Schal stond[e] fre oure power for to vse;
And euery man schal vs wel excuse,
þouȝ þat we doon execucioun
Be takyng vengauunce for her offencioun
Of man and childe, of eche sect and age,
þat schal of deth holde þe passage,
And be þe swerd, with-oute mercy, pace,
Oon and oþer,—þer is no better grace.

But first let us send our messengers."
þat ȝe to hem al[le] mesour bede:
þis hold I best and most sikirnes;
And werketh now be good avises
Among þour sylf, and no lenger tarie.”
To whiche conseil some wern contrarie
And variaunt to þis oppinioun,
Sauȝ þei þat wer of mosyte discrecioun
Assentid ben pleiny to þis ende,
And chosen han to Priam for to sende
Amongis hem thenbassiat to spede,
Wyse Vlixes & worþi Dyamede.
þe whiche anon gan hem redy make,

6692. riȝt] miȝt D 1.
6698. atwixe] be twixe D 1.
6700. to-forn] to for D 1.
6701. þe] þe D 1.
6702. hilly] willfully D 1.
6705. Of] Or A
6706. wode] wilful D 1.
6707. þat] his D 1.
6708. þouȝ] that D 1.
6715. new] ðe A.
6720. To] Of D 1.
6721. þis] his A, D 1.
And schop hemfurpe and her weie take
Toward Troye, as any lyne riʒt,
Whan pe some schon ful schene & briʒt,
Holdyng pe cours of his fyry speare
In mydday arke, wonder briʒt & clere,
And gilte chele, vale, pleyn, & roche
With his bemys, whan pei did aproche
To pe wallis & gatis of pe toum.
And in pei goon with-oute noyse or sown,
Ful wel be-seyn, & in her port hem hadde
Riʒt manfully; and pe wey hem ladde
To pe paleis, streiʒt as any lyne—
Hem nedeth nat a-side to decline,
But in-to a courte large, wyde, & square.
And pei ful knyʒtly for no wyʒt wolde spare
Vn-to theeffect manly to procede
To don her charge, with-oute fere or drede;
For pe entre was to hem not refusid:
For po dayes paraunter was nat vsid
To* hame [no] conduit for embassatrie;
pe custom was to no man to denye,
As I suppose, entre nor passage,
3if it so wer he come for massage.

Howe wyse Vlixes and Dyomedede enterde Ryale Ylion,
of the which they marveldewhen the byhelde pe beldynge.1
And in pis court, bilt so rially,
Whan pei come, pei merveil ful gretly
pe rial siʒt of so huge strengpe,
So wel co[m]plete bope in brede & lengpe;*
For pei nat had in her lif to-fore
Seyn noon so fayr; and ʒit pei wondre more—
In-to pe paleis as pei to-gidre goon,
pat pauyd was al of Jasper stoon—


TROY BOOK.
Of a tree pat amyddes stood,
On whiche to loke hem þost it dide hem good, 6760
Musing wher it wer artificial,
Erect or set by magik natural,
Or by engyne of werkmen corious,
þorú3 sotil craftis supersticious, 6764
Or oper werke of nygromauncye,
Or profound castyng of philosophie
Be apparence or illusioun,
Out þer by craft of incantaciouns:
Vp & douz þei casten in her mynde,
Out by* resoun þif þei koude fynde
Rote & gronde of þis wondir wirke;
But þe troupe was to hem so dirke, 6772
þat in her wit, þouþ þei longe trace,
þe pryvite þei can nat oute compasse,
To conseuyue how it was possible.
For to þe eye as it was visible, 6776
In verray soth, with-outen any fable,
To mawnys hond so it was palpable;
Of whiche þe stok, of Guydo as is* tolde,
In sothfastnes was of purid gold, 6780
Whiche schon as briȝt as þe somer sonne
To enlumyne þinges þat wer donne;
And þe body as a mast was riȝt,
Proporcioned most goodly to þe siȝt, 6784
Substancial, & of huge* strengþe;
And xii cubites þe body was of lengþe;
And þe crop, rounde & large of brede;
And in compas gan so florische & sprede,
þat al þe pleyn aboute enviroun,
With þe bowis was schadowed vp & down.
þe riche braunchis and þe levis faire,
Twayne & twayne Ioyned as a payre— 6792
Oon of gold, anoþer of siluer schene,
And meynt among with stonys whit & grene,
Some rede and some saphirhewed.
And euery day pe blomys wer renewed;
And pe blosmys, with many sondri swt;
For stonys ynde it bare in stede of frut,
As seith Guydo—I can no ferper telle.

Howe Vlixes and Diomede, without dewe reverence purposed pere Embassayte in pe presence of Priamus. And here ye shule se pe birthe of Eneas, and howe Agamenoon sent Achyle, and Theliefus to the Ille of Messay for an eyede of vitaile.\(^1\)

And pe Grekis wil no longer dwelle,
But hilde her wey be many sondri went
To parforme pe fyne of her entent,
Til pei ateyne pe chambour principal,
Wher Priamus in his se royal,
Like his estat, in ful knyȝtyly wyse
Saat, [and] aboute, ful prudent & ful wyse,
His lordis alle in setis hym be-syde—
Whan pe Grekis, surquedous of pride,
With sterne chere & froward countenaunce,
As pei pat hadde litel remembraunce
Of gentilles nor of curtesye—
For, as Guydo doth pleynly specefye,
Entryng in pei taken han her place
In thoposyt of pe kynges face,
And sette hem doum, with-oute more sermoun,
Any obeiyng or salutacioun,
Worschip, honour, or any reverence
Done to pe kyng, for al his excellence,
In preiudyce of al gentilles.
And pan anon Vlixes gan expres
Cause of her comyng to kyng Priamus,
With-oute abood seiyng euene jus,
Not* forberynge presence of pe kyng:

6795. Some] And somme D 1. 6801. hilde] holde A.
\(^1\) Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 59 c (misplaced after line 6823).
"Don't be surprizd at our discourtesy: it is due to our hate of you."

"Meruelve nat nor haue no wondring, 
Douz we to p be do non honour dew,
In our comyng pe for to salue,
Sith it ne longeth, in sop, as pinkep me,
Whe ranceour is & hertly enmyte
Of dedly hate, with* salutaciouns,
Or wip fyned fals affecciouns
For to schewe, wher hertis ben a-fire :
For naturell no man schal desyre
Of his enmye pe helthe nor welfare.
And platly now me list nat for to spare
Schortly to schewe pe fyn of our entent,
Liche as we haue in commuaudement
In oure message from Agamenoun,
be noble kyng, most worpi of renoun,
Whiche vs hath sent, per is no more to seyn,
Now vn-to pe for pe quene Eleyne,
pat was rauissched oute of Grekis* lond,
And brou to Troye be force of my3ti hond,
Ageynes* ri3t, and by violence.
Wherfore, schortly, with-out more offence,
We iustly axe, with-out more demaunde,
pat pou anon ri3tfullly comauade
To Menelay pat sche be sent ageyn ;
And with al pis, we axe nat in veyn
pat pou make restitucioun
Of wrongis don in pat regioun,
Of pilfres grete, slau3tre, & robberye,
By Paris don of wilful tyrannye,
Whiche is pi sone, and by pe sustenyd,
And in his errour wrongfully mayntenyd.
Wherfore, come of and fully condescende,
With-out grucching, pesse wrongis to amende : 
For so pou maist best pe goddis queme,
Liche as pou my3t* in pi resoun deme,
BK.11] Ulysses threatens Priam with ruin. He answers angrily. 341

As riyt requerep, to werchen as pe wyse.
For 3if so be, pat pou now dispise
To execute pat I haue tolde pe here,
Trust me riyt wel, a lesson pou schalt lere,
Whiche pou and pinse schal aftir sore rewe,
With-oute feynyng pou schalt fynde trewe,
pat, but 3if pou a better ende make,
Cruel vengauwe schal on pe be take;
And finally, what schulde I to pe feyne,
ppe force of deth pis quarel schal dareyne
Vp-on pe and vp-on al pi blod,
Raunsomles outhere of gold or good.
And questionles, reporte pis of me,
pay mercyles pis riche strong cite
Schal doun be bete and y-layed ful lowe,
Wal & toures also ouerthrowe.
pis al and som; be now wel avised
pat oure axynf of pe be nat dispised,
But wisly werke & do as I haue seid.”
And sodeinly kyng Priamus abreide,
Of hasty Ire he my3t[e] nat abide,
Of pe Grekis whan he sawe pe pride,
pe grete outrage and presumpciou—
Wip-oute abode or deliberacion,
To Vlixes anon he gan out breke,
And [vn-]to hym euene pus to speke:
“IJ wondre gretly in myn aduertence,
Beyng astonyed how 3e in my presence
So vngoodly dar make pis demaunde,
Like as 3e had power to comande
And me constreyne 30our biddynge to obeye,
And I for fere durste nat wip-seye
No maner ping pat 3e axen here,
Nor* contrarie what pat 3e requere;
Wher-of sothly in hert I am amevid,
And of 3our pretis inwardely a-grevid,

6860. now] not D 1.
6865. make] take D 2 (marked with a little cross to indicate the blunder).
6892. Nor] Ne C.
And astonid, surly nat a lite,
Yet he bold so me to excite,
And vilenly myn honour to provoke
On 3oure wordis for to ben awroke.
But for al pis, truste p me ri3t wel,
I wil nat passe my boundis neuer-a-del,
Nor be rafer, shortly at he ende,
To 3our axynge in no ping condescende;
For considerid he fyn of 3our entent,
It wer nat syttyng nor conuenient
A kyn to graunte 3our axynge, hou3 pat he
Stood in meschef and captiuite,
With-oute recure to outtraunce brouste.
It were outrage, pleinly, to be houste,
To axe of hym pat 3e axe of me!
And sothly, 3it, I suppose nat pat 3e
Acomplissching may so moche availle
As 3e han seid; for platly 3e schal faillle
Of 3our purpos, I seie, & God to-forne,
Maugre 3oure my3t, hou3 3e had it sworne:
For 3oure request, in euery wy3tis si3t,
Wanteth a grond, bope of troupe & ri3t—
But axe of me satisfaccioun!—
And were 3oure silfe first occasioun,
Whan 3e slowe my fader Lamedoun
And his liges, & brenten eke his toun,
And many harmys, 3if pei wern [out] sou3t,
On hym and hyse causeles 3e wrou3t,
Whi it were longe al for to reherse—
Which day be day 30ru3 myn her[e] perse—
My suster eke, callid Exyouw,
3e ladde a-weye oute of pis regioun,
Be which is nat vn-to hir worpines
I-tretid like, nor aftir gentillesse.
And for al pis 3e wolde a-mendis haue
Wrongly of me, pat whilom for to sane
Al ping in pees & to stynte werre,
To 3ou sente in-to Grece ferre
BK. II] Priam refuses Ulysses's demands, & bids him be gone. 343

Of whiche sond 3e had but disdeyn,
And cruelly and in vngoodly wyse My massanger 3e gonne to dispise, 6936. "you scorned and despised my messenger!
\(\text{pat he vnepe myzt eskape away} \)
Out of Greece—3e knowe it is no nay— Of 3ou he had so vngoodly chere. 6937.
And in good feith, me list nat now to here 3oure request, nor 3even audience To 3our axying, for 3our gret offence;
For leuer I hadde, schortly, for to deye, 6938. I'd rather die than grant your demands.
\(\text{pan condescende to ouzt } \text{pat 3e seye :} \)
For I wil fully, for conclusiouw, 6939. Tell Agamemnon I'd rather fight him than be friends.
\(\text{pat it be knowe to Agamenoun,} \)
\(\text{pat we haue leuer—pis is doute[es]—} \)
Fynally his werre \(\text{pan his pees,} \)
Sith 3e to me han don so gre[t] trespace. And, by my troupe, in pis sif[e] place
Cruelly anon 3e schulde deye, 6940. And you, Ulysses, I'd kill, if you weren't an Ambas-
But for \(\text{pe offis of embassatry} \)
\(\text{Ageyn[e]s deth is fully 3our diffence,} \)
\(\text{pat be so bolde, with-out reuereunce,} \)
In my presence so to \(\text{prete or speke—} \)
Trust me ri3t [wel], it schuld anon be wreke! 6941. Get out of my sight!
Wherfore, in hast, with-out wordis mo,
My conseil is, \(\text{pat 3e ben a-go} \)
Out of my si3t, and voidep pis cite; 6942. I can't bear to have you here.”
For \(\text{pus it stant :} \) whiles I 3ou se,
In myn herte may entre no gladnes, 6943. Diomede then says to Priam:
\(\text{be fret of Ire put me in swiche distres,} \)
\(\text{pat, in good feith, I may it nat sustene,} \)
So importune is \(\text{pe rage and tene} \)
\(\text{pat inwarde} \text{ly bynt me for } \text{pe while.} \)"
And Dyamedes \(\text{po be-gan to smyle,} \)
And seid anon \(\text{pus vn-to } \text{pe kyng :} \)
"3if it so be } \text{pat } \text{pou of oure comyng} 6944. "If you're so angry to see two of us,
In \(\text{pin hert hast so moche peyne} \)

Diomede tells Priam the Greeks will slay him and his. [BK. II]

Vs to beholde now pat be but tweyne,
   And art per with so inly set a-fyre,
jan schaltes newere ben with-oute Ire
In al pi lif, nor denoi de of wo,
Sipen you hast so many cruel fo
Of Grekis now entrid in pi lond—
An hundrid pousand almost at pin hond,
Ageyn whos my3t you maist pe nat assure
To resiste, pleynly, nor endure,
Consyred wel how pat pei be strong,
As you schalt wit, paraunter, or ouzt longe,
So manly men & so wel arrayed,
Expert in armys, and of old assaied,
pat no diffence may ageyn hem vaille.*
And wite eke wel, pat you maist nat faille
Be deth of swerde of her hond to deye,
And alle pi—pe is no more to seye—
you3 it so be, proudly pat you speke,
And with pi tonge, only to be wreke,
Affermyst more jan you maist acheue:
Betre it were swiche wordes leue,
And to wys counsel take bettre hede.”
But pan in haste ageyn pis Dyamede,
Surquedous and most ful of pride,
You and yours 3ll all die by our swords.
You d better alter your tone.*
Some Trojans attack Diomede,
With swerdis drawe, & on hym han falle
And al to-hew, ver amonge hem alle,
Of hasty Ire brennyng as pe* glede;
Til Priamus gan to taken hede,
And roos hym vp, seyng pis disseese,
And manfully pis rage gan appese,
Hem diffendyng vp-on deth & life,
pat non of hem be hardly in pis strife
benbassatours to harmen or to greue:—
“For you3 a fool his foly wil nat leue
To presume to speke vnkonyngly,

6974. many] many a D 1. 6982. outherly D 1.
6997. pe] any C.
A wys man moste suffre paciently;
And [þouȝ] þat he happe doon offence
þorouȝ foly speche, for lak of sapience,
To a wysman ne longeþ, soth to seyn,
To take hede or to speke a-geyn:
For as to a fole it is* pertynent
To schewe his foly, riȝt so convenient
Is to þe wyse, softly, with suffraunce,
In al his port to haue tolleraunce.
For to folis longeth kyndely,
With-oute a-vis to speke folily,
Vndiscretly his menyg to fulfille,
Where a wysman schal heryn & be stylle
Til he se tyme, and haue pacience,
And dyssymule in his aduertence
þe rage of folis þat last but a prowé:
For be his tonge* a fole is ofte knowe;
And leuer I hadde, I do þou wel assure,
In my persone damage to endure,
þanne to suffre any messanger
In my court, of þow þat ben here,
To han a wronge, ouþer grete or lite—
þe swerde of rancour may nat alwey bite,
To do vengauunce for a þing of nouȝt.
For ofte it falleth a wrong is wrouȝt:
For litel excess folweþ gret reprefe;
And hast is ay medlid with meschefe.
Wherfore, I bidde þat þe sitte douþ,
And in no wyse, of presumciouþ,
Attempteþ nat, in no maner wyse,
Be signe or worde more for to dispise
þembassatours from þe Grekis sent,
But late hem frely declare þat her entent,
And þe þer-whiles kepe þour lippes clos."
And sodeinly þanne Eneas aros,
Whiche neste þe kyng hadde þan his se,
So inwardly with rancour fret was he,
Eneas thinks Diomede should be punisht: he must be off. [BK. II

Eneas says that

Pat he ne myȝt hym siluen nat restreyn,
And seid[e]: "sir, so ye nat disdyeœ
Pat I schal seyn, me semeth pat it is
Wel a-cordyng, whan oon hap seid amys
And reklesly spoken vn-avised,
Of his folly pat he be chastysed,
Pat oper may exam[ple] by hym take,
To be wel war swiche noise & cry* to make,
And specially in open audience
So toffende your royal excellence!

And sothly sit, I wot wel pat I myȝt
So me gouerne, pleynly, in yowre sist,
Of hastynes with-oute avisement,
Pat I schulde by your commaundement
Be deth disserue for my gret offence.
And trewly sit, ne wer [for] yowre presence,
On pis twayne pat han so I-spoke,
With-oute abood I schuld anoon* be wrote:
For it wer worp & riȝt wel sittyng,
Whan pat a fool in presence of a kyng
Is bolde or hardy of presumpcioun
To take on hym of indiscrecioun
Ping to rehearse, concluddyng in sentence
Preiudice of yowre magnificence,
Pat he were taugȝt bettre to gouerne
His large tonge, to konne bet discerne
Whan he schal speke or whan ben in pes,
To suffren hym to renne out of les,
As doth he pis pat spoken hap so large.
Wherfor, in hast, I conseil hym & charge,
With-oute abood, or any wordis mo,
Out of yowre sist anon he* be ago,
For it is best to don as I hym rede."
To whom anon ful proudly, Dyomede,

7043. ne myȝt hym siluen nat restreyn] hym silfe ne myȝt not refresse D 1.
7050. noise & cry] cry & noise C.
7052. toffende] to fende D 1.
7056. commaundement] rijtful jugement D 1.
7072. in] I D 1. 7074. he] pat he C—ago] goo D 1.
7076. new * A—proudly] prudently A.
Diomede chaffs Eneas. He and Ulysses leave Troy. 347

Nat astonyd, but with a sterne loke,
To Eneas, that for Ire quoke,
Answerde ageyn with wordis but a fewe,
And seide: "Sir, that speche dope wel schewe,
What so pou be, that pou art rist wys.
Wel is that kyng, that dope be pin avys,
Or hath pe ny3e of conseil for to be;
For he ne may erre in no degre—
That art so ristful in that Iugement,
Of wilfulnes, wip-oute avisement,
To cause a lord his boundis for to pace.
So wolde God, in som oper place
That I myȝt, be fauour of Fortune,
Metyn wip pe at leiser oportune,
Like my desire, that canst so wel endite—
I nolde faile þi labour for to quyte,
And pe to þanke for þi gentil chere,
Whiche so knyȝtly þou hast vs schewed here—
Trust wel þer-to: I haue þer-of no drede!"
And po Vlixes of þis Dyomede
Gan interrupte his wordis prudently,
And to hym seide ful avisely
That it was best to stynten & be stille.
"And now we know fully al þi* wille,"
Quod Vlixes ful manly to þe kyng,
"We wil gon hens, with-oute [more] tariyng,
Out of þi siȝt to Agamenoun,
And make to hym pleyn relacioun
Of þin answere, in ordre by and by."
And to hors þei went sodeynly,
And in schort tyme so hast hem on her weye,
That þei be come, þer is no more to seie,
Wher þe kyng sat in his tentorie;
And worde by worde, as* cam to memorie,
þei reherse þe substande euer-y-del,
Wher-of* þe Grekis like no þing wel,
The history of Eneas, son of Anchises and Venus. [BK. II

The Greeks

Conceyving ful þer was no remedie,
As be report of þe embassatrye,
Saf only þis: outerly procede,

see that they must scheme how to beat the Trojans.

Howe þei hem schal* gouernen in þis nede
Ageyn[es] Troyen[s], of necessite;
For þei wel wot it may noon oþer be,
And assentid, boþe in wille and dede:
To purveye hem fast[e] þei hem spede,
In þis story as þe schal aftir fynde.

But I have to tell you about Eneas.

But or þat I make þer-of mynde,
I most a while of Eneas endyte,
As myn auctor list of hym to write:
þe whiche, sopely, as bokis seyn, he was,
þis manly Troyan, þis famus Eneas,
Anchises sone, of gret worþi[nes],
Whilom gete of Venus þe goddes,
Conquerour of many regioun.

He was the son of Anchises by the Goddess Venus.

After Troy's ruin

Whan Troye was brouȝt to destruccioun,
He went his weye by þe large se,
Callid Tirene, & sailyng forþe goþe he
Be many cost & many narow passage,
Many daunger, til in-to Cartage
He rivid is, and þus gan to saille
To þe conquest of þe gret Ytaille;
And so to Rome he hath þe wey[e] take.

he went to Carthage,

then to Italy and Rome;

and Cesar was his descendant.

Toþe conquest of þe gret Ytaille;
And so to Rome he hath þe wey[e] take.

Of whos of-spryng, as auctour[e]s make,
Cam Augustus Cesar, þe* Emperour,
þat was whilom so noble a conquerour,
þat his renoun to þis day doth schyne.
And of Enee, theemperour Iustyne,
In his boke, callid Autentikes,
Ful pleynly writ þer in þe rubrikes:
þat aftir Cesar, so as Sesares
Be named ȝit, riȝt so Eneades,

7114. misplaced at bottom of column and marked b D 2; 7113 is marked a.
7115. procede] to procede D 1.
7116. hem schal] schal hem C. 7119. 2nd and] and in D 1.
7139. þe] þe gret C. 7142. of] om. A.
After Enee þe name schulde bere,
Whiche fro Troye comen was so fere 7148
Vnto Ytaille. And of þis Eneas,
As I haue tolde, Cesar discendid was
Doune lyne riȝt, ful manly & royal,
þat first in Rome be septer imperial,
Maugre her myȝt,* had[de] gouernaunce,
And of wisdam sette in gouernaunce
Comoun þinges touchyng þe cite.
And to procede ferber of Enee,
Holly his lyf & knyþhod by & by
3if þat þe list to rede Ceriously,
3e may se al, ful awtentik of style,
In Eneydus compiled of Virgile:
Al-be it so, þat þis noble clerke
Was graue a-forn or complet was his werk,
As bokes olde make mencion.
But now ageyn to Agamemnon,
With-oute more, my stile I wil retourne.

Howe Achilles enterde the Ille of Messay, where
Teutram was kynge, whom Achilles gave his
dethes wounde. And howe Teutram resyngned
his kingdam to Thelaphus, for the affeccyon that
he had to Archules, which was his Fadere, and
of olde tyme made him kynge of þat Ille.¹

þe whiche kynge wil no more soiourne
In þis mater delayes for to make,
But in al hast he hath his counseil take 7168 He calls all
Of his lordis, beyng þo present,
And swyche as wer nat, he haþ after sent
For oon & alle: erlis, dukis, kynges,
And seid[e], “sirs, amongis oper þinges
To our lourne þat be necessarie,
My counseil is, no lenger þat we tarie,

7149. þis] the A. 7153. myȝt] myȝt C.
7154. misplaced at bottom of column A—in] þe D 1.
7173. our] soure D 1.
¹ Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 62a (misplaced after line 7394).
Agamemnon advises the Greeks to send to Messina for provisions.

But first of al to maken ordinaunce,
By oon assent, with prudent purvyaunce,*
at aldirfirste we schape for vitaille,
With-oute whiche noon host may availle
To parforme a Iourne priftely.
Wherfor I rede, here but fast[e] by,
3if it to 3ow be likyng and plesaunce,
In-to an Ile ful of habondaunce,
Callid Messa, pat we sende anoon.”
And, at a worde, assentid euerychon.

From Mysia.

So they chose Achilles and Telephus
to go there.

Achilles to Messa for to gon.
In whiche lond, riche and plenteuous,
Regned a kyng, worpi and famous,

Teutran king of it.

It’s a pleasant Ile, belonging, some say, to Sicily,
and has a big city Messana (Messina)
named from L. messes, lots of fruit, etc.,

which victual ships.

350 Agamemnon advises the Greeks to send to Messina for provisions.

7184. a] O o A, O D 2, oo D 1.
7197. sein] seis C. 7202. as] was A.
7208. Is seide] I seyd A.
The Greeks land in Messina, and are fought by Teuthras.

Only beschauyng of oper marchaundyse.
And eke also, as bokis can devise,
And as Guydo [ful] pleining telleth vs,
bat of a kyng, callid Messanus,
hiscontre first of Messa toke þe name,
bat in his tyme was of ful gret fame,
Passyng riche and wonder plenteuous.
But of al þis, Dares Frigius
In his boke makep no mencion,
But schortly telleth, in conclusion,
How Achilles, and Thelefus also,
To Messana ben to-gidre go
With þre þousand of Grekis chosen oute,
Most manly men amongis al her route.
þe whiche as fast as þei gan to londe,
And þe kyng gan to vndirstonde
Of her comyng, [he] is descendid down
With alle þe worpi of his region,
On hors and fote, in stel armyd bríst,
Ageyn[e]s Grekis manfully to fiþt,
Hem to deuode, pleining, 3if he can.
And sodeinly þus þe skarmus gan
Atwixe Grekis and her mortal foon,
On ouþer part þat þer was many oon
Slayn and hurt, & to þe deþ y-woundid,
Euere unlikly þer-of to be souwdid;
For ouþer trete was noon hem betwene,
But swendis scharp & speris square & kene: [leaf 61 d]
Now here, now þere, þat þei go to gronde;
For euery man his fo for to confounde
His labour dide & his besynes.
And þou þ Grekis, þorr3 her worpines,
Had on her foon moche londe I-wonne,
3it to resort after þei begonne;
And mervail noon, be-cause þat her foon

Guido tells us that Messina took its name from King Messanus.
Dares doesn't mention it.
Achilles and 3000 Greeks go to Mysia.
King Teuthras and his men come to fight them.
Many are slain and wounded:
the struggle is severe.

7227. he is] and is D 1. 7230. Ageyn[e]s] A geyn D 2, D 1.
7235. y-woundid] wounded D 1.
7240. his fo for to] is so sore D 1.
7243. foon moche londe] londe þat lay D 1.
Achilles comes to the rescue of the Greeks. [BK. II

Hadde alwye þe in nombre ageyn[e]s on—
For þe tyme it may noon oþer be—
Til Achilles gan be-holde and se
þe mortal slaȝter vp-on Grekis side,
Turnyng þe bak, with woundis large & wyde;
Of hasty rancour chaunge gan his blood,
And for Ire furious and wood,
When he be-hilde his men lese her lond,
He with þe swerde þat he hilde in his hond
Made weie, killeth, and bare down;
And in þe felde like a ferse lyounz
He ferde* in sooth, when his men wer slaw,
Makyng his foon bakward to withdrau,
And his Grekis so manly recontporte,
þat maugre hem he made hem to resorte.
And who þat euere in his weye stood,
With-oute mercy he kylleþ in his mood,
þat geyneþ nat in his cruelte;
For dout[þ]les, nadde his manhod be,
His passyng renounz and his worpines,
His knyþthod eke, and his hise prowes,
þe Grekis had þat day finally
Venquisched he, with-oute remedie;
But þorþ his helpe þei recuren al:
For Achilles, sturdy as a wal,
Gan cerche scheltrouns & her rengis brake,
To-fore whos face his fomen go to wrake.
And aldirlast, when he gan espie
Teutran þe kyng, þorþ his chualrie
Diffende hym silf lik a worpi knyþt,
And as a liouz bern hym in his fyt,
Now her, now þer, Grekis so oppresse—
þis Achilles, of cruel hardynesse,
Nolde cesse in his pursewayng
þorþ þe wardis, til he cam to þe kyng,
Of manly force, stout, & ful of prude,

Makyng a weye rounde on euery syde,
Ageyn whos myȝt no þing myȝt availe.
And of Teutran first þe aventail
He raced hæpe, & rent þe mail a-sonder,
And al to-hewe—þat it was a wonder
To considre þat day his cruelte.
And after þat, al to-broke hath he
His basenet, with many cruel wounde,
Of verray myȝt smet þe kyng to grounde;
And in al haste he made hath no let,
Of his hed to rende his basenet,
And mericles for to do vengeance,
His arme he gan on heıste* to avante,
Fully in purpos þat he schal be ded,
And raunsomles gan amyn at his hed
With blody swerde, & dispitous herte,
Castyng pleynly he schal hym nat asterte—
In his Ire he was so furious.
But of fortune it be-fil riȝt þus,
þat Thelephus, þe ȝong[e], lusty knyȝt,
Casely þer-of had a syȝt,
And of Achille þe maner ful* behilde:
þe stroke anoon he bare vp with þis schelde,
And gan Achilles mekely for to preye
To han pite so to done hym deye,
Sith he lay wonde almost to þe deth,
Brouȝt to þe point to zelden vp þe breth,
Beseching hym, for his benigne,
Of manly rouȝe & knyȝtyly eke pite,
With-drawe his hond & to don hym grace,
And graunt hym lyf for a litel space:
“Sith euery knyȝt schulde of gentilles
His enmy spare, whan he is in distres,
To outraunce brouȝt, & specialy whan he

7284. [þat] is that A.
7294. he gan on heıste] on heıst he gan C—heıste] high D 1.
7295. schal] shuld A. 7297. &] & a D 2, D 1.
7298. schal] sholde D 1.
7301. þe ȝong[e] lusty knyȝt] of hap as he bihelde D 1.
7302. 3 are omitted in D 1.
7303. Achille] þat D 2—ful] fully C.
Achilles at first refuses to spare King Teuthras.

Mercy requirip of humble volunte.’’

To whom Achille, feruent in his Ire,
As he pat was of rancour set a-fyre,
Answerde ageyn: ‘‘what list pe so to praye
For hym pat natde of pride our wyl obeye,*

But folily, of vngoodlyhede,
Gan a werre, where as was no nede,

Of disdeyn and indignacioun,

In his manhod, whiche my3t him nat avaylle
Ageyn[e]s Grekis to holden a bataille,
As it is preuid pleynly in pe ende,
Al oper-wyse schortly pan he wende.

For in pe dyche iustly* he is falle,
Which he made of malis for* vs alle,
Wher we of wil nor entencioun

3af vn-to hym noon occasion,

Vp-on no syde, platly, fer nor ner,
Nor mynystrede to hym no mater,
Nor to his londe mente no damage—

But hym silfe, grounde of al pis rage—
With-oute office don to hym of vs.”

And efte ageyn songe Thelephus
Humblely requerid of Achille,

Of kny3ly rou3pe his axyng to fulfille,
And to han mercy on hym in pis caas.

“For with my fader pis kyng whilom was,”
Quod Thelelus, “be bond confederat,
Whiche lithe now here al disconsolat,

Exspectauwt only, with a dedly face,
Vp-on pe hour whan his gost schal pace,
poruz-girt, allas! with many mortal wounde;

And for cause I haue in hym founde
A-fore pis tyme ful gret kyndenes—

For of manhod and of gentilles,

In pe boundis of his regiou

7320. of pride our wyl obeye]oure pride to daye C.
7329. iustly] schortly C.  7330. of malis for] for malis of C.
7336. pis] his D2.
7342. pis kyng whilom] whilom pis kyng D1.
7347. allas] oonly D1.
He vn-to me,  þoruȝ his hije renoun, 7352
Whilom as I casuely gan ride,
Schewed in sope, vp-on every side,
Ful ryal chere and gret humanyte,
þat I am bounde of verray du[e]te 7356
To remembre & to han in mynde;
And dout[elles], ellis I were vnkynde,
Which after wolde my name foule atwite,
And for þat I parcel wolde hym quyte,
I ȝou besche of respit of his lif.”
And Achilles, with-outen any stryf,
Delyuered hath, þe story telleth þus,
Teutran frely vn-to Thelefus, 7364
Wherþe hym list to sauen or to spille.
And whan þat he hadde hym at his wille,
He considrede by hys woundis grene,
þat were so mortal, sothly, & so kene,
Of verray nede þat he muste dye—
þer was no geyn nor no remedye,
Nor availle may no medycyne.
þe hour whan Phebus westward gan declyne, 7372
And þe bataille brouȝt was to an ende,
While þe Grekis to her schippes wende,
þe mene whyle,* Teutran for þe peyne 7376
Of his woundis gan more & more compleyne,
With-oute staunce so pitously þei blede:
His officeris fast[e] gan hem spede,
In a liter, nacked ful ryal,
Toward his paleis & dongoun principal 7380
To carien hym soothe and esely;
And at his prayer, ful benignely,
Thelefus and also Achilles
Conveyed hym amongis al þe pres,
Til he was brouȝt þer as him list to be; 7384
And þei reseyuid, like to his degre,
[Ful] Ryally þe kyng, ay languysschinge,

7387. Ryallyþ pitously D 1—say] om. A.
The dying King Teuthras

As he spat drowe toward his endynge,
And my3t[e] nat lenger drawe alengpe
His woeful lif, so weyk was [he] of strengpe,
bat his spirit muste algatis wende.

And he in haste made for to sende
For Achilles and for Thelephus;
And whan þei cam, he seide [vn-]to hem þus:
"Sirs," quod he, "ful worpi of degre,
Helpe and honour with longe prosperite
Be vn-to 3ow, and good auenture
Al þe while [þat] 3our lif may dure*;
And specially to þe, o Thelephus,
Whiche hast to me ben so gracious,
Of gentilles, in my peynes stronge,
Only of grace my lif for to prolonge—
But deth, allas! I may nat nowe eschewe,
Nor his swerde on no parte remewe,
With-oute recur knyt in bitter bondis,
Vp-on þe brinke falle of Fatis hondis,
Of my lif al fully in dispeir,
Whiche of my body neuer my3t haue eyr
After my day, by successioun,
To gouerne þis litel regioun,
Whiche like[ly] is to stonde dissolat
Of gouernaunce, and disconsolat,
Whiche þat I wan with ful gret travaaille;
And to þis day, with werre and bataille,
I haue it kept, as 3e wel knowe echon,
And defendid from alle maner foon,
With-oute loos, 3eris her-to-forne.
But recurs of 3ore I hadde it lorne,
Ne had I had helpe and eke socour
Of Hercules, þe* grete conquerour,
þat whilom was fader of Thelephus—
So strong, so my3ti, and so chiualrous—
Be whos manhod & whos hardynes,

7404. on] in D 1. 7406. Fatis] faty A.
7407. al] and D 1. 7420. þe] þat C.
Be his knŷthod and gret worpines,
Whiche day be day is newe of memorie,
Of al my foon I hadde þe victorie:
He daunted hem and made hem so a-ferde,
Only by rigour of his scharp[e] swerde,
Þat finally, þoruþ his manlihede
He made me þis regne to possede,
Maugre her myþt, in pes and in quiete,
With septre and crowne in my royal sete,
Þat noon of hem, til þat he was ded,
Hardy was to lyften vp þe hed
Ageyn[e]'s me, to speke in wordis fewe."
Wher-by I may fully declare and schewe
By euydence, þat þis litel Ile
Is pertyent and longeth to Secile,
Wher Hercules for a memorial
Sette pilers in his conquest royal,
Whan he had ride and go so fere,
And of Columpna ȝit þe name bere,
After hym callid Herculea—
Þouȝ somme seyn þei hote Hrracula,
þe name chaungyng by corrupcioun.
þe whiche londe was whilom mansioun
To þe peple of wilde Barbarie;
þe whiche kyngdam for to magnifie,
Frederik, sothly, þe secunde,
Of gold and good passyngly habounde,
Þat chose was to ben Emperour
Of Rome toun, and myþti gouernour,
And whilom eke was kyng of Secile—
Whiche made reise in þat large Ile
A myþti tour, hîȝe and þikke of wal,
As seyth Guydo, for a memorial.
To putte his name longe in remembraunce;
And for þe soil was to his plesaunce,
With floures fresche of many sondry hewe,
In somme bokis þe lond was namyd newe

7424. Hercules heipt Teuthras
7428. to win his Island,
7432. Only by rigour of his scharp[e] swerde,
7436. which belongs to Sicily,
7440. where Hercules set up his Pillars,
7444. cald Herculis Columnae.
7448. Sicily was once occupied by the people of Barbary,
7452. and Frederick II,
7456. who became Emperor of Rome,
7460. and was also King of this land,

7426. þe om. D 1. 7442. of] om. A.
7454. large] litel D 1. 7458. for] was D 1.
7459. of] with D 1.
King Teuthras, dying, appoints Telephus his Heir. [BK. II

And I-called, as I vndirstonde,
For his fairnes, “pe lusty newe lond.”
But Teutran ay lyggyng in his peyne,
As he pat fast[e] gan pe hour atteyne
Of cruel deth, a-forne his lordis alle
He made in haste Thelefus to calle
To his presence, and with a mortal chere
Seide openly, pat alle my3ten here:
“My sone,” quod he, “now pat I schal passe
Out of his worlde—for geyn[e] may no grace
My lif to saue, poru3 no manyns my3t—
But for be-cause of equite and ri3t
I am compelled, iustly in sentence,
To declare clerly my conscience
To-fore my deth, heryng al pis pres—
pis to seyn, pi fader Hercules,
pe wyse wor4, and pat kny3ty man,
Whilom pis lond poru3 his conquest wan;
pe whiche only of his goodlyhede,
As he pat was pe stok of manlyhede,
Toke vn-to me, by commyssiouz,
pe gouernaunce of pis regioun,
Of his fre wille, with hool pe regallye,
And no1de hym silf pe crowne occupie;
And sothly, 3it his ri3t was nat pe lasse.
For loue of whom, now pat I schal passe,
With al thentent of my laste wil,
To pe I graunte, as it is ri3t and skil,
As verray eyer iustly to succeede,
Longe in honour per pi lif to lede,
Makynge here a protestaciouz,
pat in ful tokene of confirmaciouz
pis is pe wil, finally, of myn herte,
Fro pe whiche no man may diuerte
Vp-on no side, nor outerly declyne.
For first my wil and discent of lyne

7475. pis] pe D 1.
7484] To me 3af wiche no man may denye D 1.
7490. per] ther in A, per in D 2.
7493. finally] fynal A, D 2.
Ben to-gidre combyned now in oon,
Fro whiche ping no mortal man may gon:
For pis desire, last of my languour,
Dat you playny be my successour;
And finally, pus* I conclude and deme,
Dat vn-to pe septre and dyademe
Delievered be, wip euery circumstaunce.'
But al his wil, for more assurauwce,
He made write in his testament,
Dat fyn concluding of his last entent.
And after dat, he ful pitously
Telephus besouȝ[e] hertely,
Of manly roupe & knyȝtly gentilles
To done his deuer and his besynes,
After his deth, liche his estat royal,
To halwe and holde pe feste funeral
Solempnely, and pe exequeies do.
And sodeynly, with-oute wordis mo,
Dat kyng Teutran zelde v p e gost,
And went his wey, I not* in-to what cost—
I can nat deme of swiche mystyhede.
And whan Parchas broken han p e pred
On pe rokke, and he was forpe his way,
Pan Telefus, out of marbil gray
Coriously a tombe made kerue,
Dat dede cors per-in to conserue
Ful richely; and a-boue pe graue
An Epithaphie anoon he dide graue,
In his honour pleinly to expresse
His knyȝthod bope, and [his] worpines,
And how his gost & he wer deuocid—
Wip lettris riche of gold aboue embocid
Rouade aboute wonder corious,
On his tombe, dat seide pleinly pus:

7497. last half illegible D 1.
7501. pus[ his C. 7516. not] nat C—in-to] to D 2, D 1.
7524. misplaced at bottom of column and marked b D 2; 7523 is marked a.
Telephus is crowned King. Achilles sails with supplies. [BK. II

Howe Kenge Teutram was buryede in A riche Epaphy graven with sotele vers.¹

The Epitaph on Teuthra’s tomb.

“Here lyth Teutran þe kyng, dout[e]les, Whilom slawe of cruel Achilles, þat his septre and þe regalie Holy þaf, whiche no man may denye, To Thelefus, sone of Hercules, Whiche in his tombe resteþ now in pes.”

Telephus is crowned King.

Whan þis parformyd was in euery þing, And Thelefus was crowned in-to kyng, And hire and low, al be on assent, Hadde openly in a parlement Made feith to hym and y-don homage Lik to her degrees, as þei wern of age, And with hool hert, in al þer best entent, Be othe assurid and be sacrament, As trew[e] liges receied hym for kyng, Pan Achilles, with-oute more tariyng, Whan al was sette in pes & gouernance, With-oute gruchyng or any variaunce, To her schippes anoon he made carie Evry þing þat was necessarie To þe Grekis, corn, frute, and vitaille, Flesche or fysche, or what þat myȝt availle To hosteyng, or helpe hem in her nede— Donn to þe see al he dide lede, Fully her vessel for to stuþ & lade.

Achilles stores his ships with provisions, and leaves Telephus as a help to the Greeks.

And Thelefus after þis he made Stille in þe boundis of his regioun For to abide, for þis conclusioun: þat þorȝ his helpe & his dilligence, Besynes and discreet prouidence, Ageyn al meschef and al skarscite, Whan þei nede, he myȝt her socour be— Al-be þat he, liche as seith Guydo,

¹ Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 62 c.
With Achilles ful fayn wolde haue go;
But he abod, sothly for pe beste,
Be bond assured fully and beheste
In euery ping Grekis to relieue.
And pan in haste Achilles toke his leue
Of Thelefus, and gan anon to saille,
Alle his schippes stuffid wip vitaille,
Toward Grekis, as made is mencion;
And in short tyme he at Tenedoun
Aryued is, and taken hath pe grounde
With alle his knŷtis, bope heil & sounde.
And aftir pis, to Agamenoun
He made first ful reacio
Of his expleyt, lik as it was falle,
In pe presence of his lordis alle,
Sitting enivroûn many wor̂p knŷt.
And first, in Messa, he tellêp of pe ñet,
Whan pei entre, & of her wolcommynyng;
And seriously, he tolde eke of pe kying
pe Teutran hî̂t, & pleînly also how
Achilles amyd pe felde hym slowe,
And or his deth, how he of hool entent
Fuly ordeyned in his testament
Thelefus also to ben his heyr.
Al pis he tolde, & eke of his repeire
Vn-to pe se, and eke of pe vitaille,
And Thelefus, how he wil nat faille
To senden hem al pe may hem plese—
Of whiche ping pe Grekis in gret ese
Were broût of hert, & lyke wonder wel,
Whan Achilles had tolde hem euerydel,
And gretily preise his hî̂e prouidence,
His manhod bope, & his sapience,
In his oute-beyng pat he bare hym so.
And aftir pis Achilles is go
To his loggyng, a litel per be-syde,
Where his knŷtis vp-on hym abyde,
Now we go back to the Trojans.

Myrundones, ful glad of his comynyng,
And hym reseyue as longe† to a kyng,
Where he a-bood & restid hym a while.

But for Guydo decline† here his stile

From þe Grekis to hem of Troye toun,
I muste also make digressiouñ,
Of myn auctoñ þe steppis for to sewe,
Like as it is convenient & dewe

To my mater, sith he is my guyde,
And for a while Grekis sette a-side,
And reherse how Dares Frigius

In Troye boke declareth vn-to vs,
And seriously maketh mensiouñ

Of þe lordis þat cam to Troye toun
To helpe hem manly in her diffence,
Ageyn Grekis to make resistance

With ordinaunce of many diuerce þinges—
þer cam to hem erlis, dukis, kynges,
As in Dares pleynly is made mynde,
Redeth his boke & þer þe may it fynde.

Here folowyngly be rehered the namys of þe kyngis that kame to help the Cite of Troye.1

And aldirfirst, I rede how þat he
Specially speketh of kynges þre,
Ful manly men, & also of gret fame—
Al-be þat he reherseth nat þe name

Of her kyndammys—3it he writeþ þus:
þe first of hem was callid Pandarus,
And as I rede, Thabor þe secounde,
þe pridd þe Adastrus, liche as it is founde;
And as Guydo liste to specifie,
þre þousand knyþtes in her companye,
[leaf 63 a]
And manly men þei were euerychon.*

1. Three kings,

And from an Ile, callid Coloson,
Liche as Dares liketh to expresse,
The Forces of the Kings who came to help the Trojans. 363

And the forces of the kings who came to help the Trojans.

As he writ, I named Caris,

And the second his Ymasyus,

Nestor his pride, he fourpe Amphimacus;

And fiue thousand worpi kny3tes alle

And their cam with hem manly for to falle

Vp-on the Grekis in helping of their toun.

And from an Ile of ful grete renoun,

Callid Lyceye, cam the kyng Glaucoun,

And wip hym brou^t his son Sparedoun,

A noble kny3t, in armys ful famous,

And was allyed to kyng Priamus;

And the pounand, 3if I schal nat fayne,

Cam of kny3tes with these lordis twyne.

And from Larisse, a riche lond also,

As I fynde, the cam kynges two;

And hem to quite manly, as thei ou3te,

A thousand kny3tes thei to Troye brou^t.

And from a kyngdam named Lycaoun,

Caphemus, a kyng of grete renoun,

Brou^t with hym, as Dares berep witnes,

A thousand kny3tes of grete worpines.

And fiue hundrid, Dares tellep vs,

Cam with Hupon and wip Epedus,

Manly kny3tes, in platis siluer bri3t.

And with hym eke a kyng pat Remus hi3t

Brou^t the pounand to Troye many mile

From Tabaria his large my3ti Ile;

And dukis foure, with al her chialry,

And eulis ey3te cam in his companye,

Hauyng in armys grete experience;

And alle thei bare, withoute difference,

Her men & thei, whan thei wer in the felde,

The chef of gold eueryche in his scheld,

Wherby the kyng, & holy his meyne,

Among hem alle knowe my3t[e] be,

3. King Glau-  
4. Two kings  
5. Euphemus  
6. Hupon  
7. Remus of  
8. King Car-  

Caris (?),

Imasius,

Nestor,

Amphimacus, with

5000 knights.

3000 knights.

with 3000

knights.

knights from

Larissa.

Lycaonia (?),

Hypothous (?),

(Cupesus ?),

with 500.

accompanied

by four

Dukes and

eight Earls.

om. A, D 2, D 1.

of ful grete renoun] a ful grete Regions A.

kyng] the kyng D 1.  7651. hem] om. A.
The Forces of the Kings who came to help the Trojans. [BK. II]

8. King Pilex of Thrace, with 1000 knights,

Al-be þat oper boren eke þe same.

And from Trace kyng Pilex, by his name—
Fro pilke Trace þat is most excellent,
Whiche in þe plage of þe oriente
Haueth his syyt—from whiche þis * myȝti king

with 1000 knights,

A þousand knyȝtes brouȝt at his comynɡ;
And as myn auctor recordeth eke also,
An hundrید knyȝtes ben to Troye go

with 100 knights,

Wiþ Alcamus, a duke eke ful famus,
[leaf 61 a]

Troyans to helpe in her grete nede.
And fro Panonye, soth[ly] as I rede,
Cam Pretemissus, þe noble werriour,
Lord of þat lond, kyng and gouernour,

and Duke Alcamus, with 100.

And duke Stupex with him eke he* hadde,
And of knyȝtes a þousand þat he ladde
Toward[es] Troye from his regioun.
And as þe stori makeþ mencionu,

and Stupex, with 1000 knights.

þat Ile stant moste be wyldernes,
And be wodis of plenteuous þiknes,
Growyng þer-in ful many diuere tre,
And moste is forest þat men þere may se;
For þei þer bilde howses but a fewe;
And in þat lond ful diuersly hem schewe

mostly forest,

Many liknes, queint and monstruous,
Bestis vnkouþe, to siȝt[e] meruelous,
Stoundemele, as bi apparence,
By illusion fals in existence,
Wonder gastful, pleynly, for to sene:
For diuere goddis of þe wodis grene

with monstreous beasts,

Appere þere, called Satiry,

For diuere goddis of þe wodis grene

wood-gods cald Satyrs,

Bycornys eke, fawny and incuby,
þat causen ofte men* to falle in rage;
And of þis lond þe peple is ful saugæ,
Hardy knyȝtes, furious þeple and wood,
And desyrous ay to scheden blood,

7675. syyt] sȝt D 1—þis] þe C. 7685. he] þei C.
7688. þe] þis D 2, om. A. 7692. þere may] may þere D 1.
7695. liknes] lyknesses D 2.
Gretly expert, specially to schete
With dart & spere, perellous to mete,
For & cast even as any lyne.
And from an Ile & pat named* was Botyne,
In gret array to Troye pe cite,
Like as I fynde, & cam dukis & pre:
pe first of hem callid Anphimvs,
Samvs pe seconde, pe priddie Forcynus,
And as seith Dares, whiche list nat lye,*
Twelue hundrid kny3tes in her companye.
And fro Bitvnye,* as made is remembraunce,
pe riche lond, pat hath swiche habundaunce
Of spicis, gommys, frutis, corn, & wyn,
Holsom rotis, ryndis, riche and fyn,
Wonder vnkoupe and precious also,
Out of whiche Ile & cam kynges two,
Ful kny3tly men, in armes desyrous—
Kyng Boetes and Episterus,*
And with hem brout to Troye from so ferre
A poussand kny3tes arrayed for pe werre.
And fro pe lond callid Pafogonye,
Which seuerid is from al companye,
As bokis seyn pat ben historial,
Vnder pe plage pat is oriental
Set so fer, as made is rehearsaille,
pat feue or noon to pat lond trauaille,
For per to come is almost impossible,
For whiche pat lond is callid Invisible,
Be-cause only of* his remocioun;
And it it is a riche regioun,
Of gold & siluer also, and of stonys,
And habondaunt of plente for pe nonys,
It is so ful of tresour and of good,
And hath his syyt on pe riche flood
I-namyd Tygre, nat fer from Eufrates,

7708. to] for to D 2.
7710. named] callid C.
7715. as] om. A—lye] to lye C.
7733. is] it is D 1. 7735. of] pat C. 7736. it] om. A.
As seith myn auctor, pat callid is Dares—
Fro whiche lond, in stel armyd clene,
A thousand knytes cam with Philymene,
þe worþi kyng, whos scheldis, out of drede,
Wern of querboyl, in Guydo as I rede,
With gold depeint & fret with stonys riche,
þat in þis world I trowe wer non liche,
Out of þe flodis chose be devis,
Whiche han her cours out of parady—
þe whiche kyng, a geaunte of stature,
And of makying passyng al mesure,
Strong and deliuere also, as I fynde.
And fro þe lond þat marchip vp-on Ynde,
Kyng Porses* cam with many kny^tly man;
And he also, þat with his hond hym wan
So moche honour, þe noble Meryon,
And his brother callid Sygamon,
Whiche from þe lond of her subiecciouñ,
Of dukis, erlis, & knytes of renoun,
þre thousand brou$ t, alle in platis schene,
With speris rounde, whet ful square & kene—
From Ethiopie cam þis noble route.
And fro þe kyngdam also, out of doute,
þat Teremo of Dares callid is,
Cam þe kyng, ful prudent & ful wis,
þe manly man namyd Theseus,
And eke his sone þat hiȝt Archilagus,
A thousand knytes in her companye;
And Theseus ful nyȝe was of alye
To Priamus, by descent of blood.
And kynges tweyne, passynge riche of good,
And renomyd of knȳ̈thod as be fame—
Al þe pat Guydo rehersip nat hir name—
3et in þis story he makip mencioun,
þat from Agresta, þe litel Regioun,
A thousand knytes þei brouȝ t vn-to Troye, [leaf 64 c]
Groks pride to daunten and acoye;

7744. The Forces of the Kings who came to help the Trojans. [BK. II

12. Philimen, with 1000 knights, with jeweld shields.

And from Ethiopia, the land that borders on India,
13. King Porses (Porses ?), Meryon (Memnon ?), and Sigamon, with 3000 knights.

14. Theseus of Teremo with his son Archilagus and 1000 knights.

15. Two kings from Agresta, not named by Guido, with 1000 knights.

7748. wer] was A. 7753. also] al D 1.
7772. of] & D 1. 7775. pis] his A.
BK. 11] The Forces of the Kings who came to help the Trojans. 367

For ðei wer chose & piked for ðe nonys.
And from ðe lond be-sonde Amazony, 7780
Lissynya, ðe kynge Epistrophus,
So wys, so worði, and inly vertuous,
Passynge of courseil and discreccioun,
And with al þis, ful worði of renown.
He preved was also, in special,
And in þe artis callid liberal
He lernyd was, and expert a-riȝt,
Nat-wîthstondyng he was a worði knyȝt,
In werre & þes manful & riȝt sage,
Al-be þat he was ronne fer in age—
And as þe stori makeþ reherseaille,
A þousand knyȝtes clad in plate & mail,
To Troye touȝ, I fynde, þat he ladde;
And with hym, Guydo seith, he hadde
A wonder archer, of siȝt merueilous,
Of forme & schap in maner monstrous:
For lik myn auctor as I* reherse can,
Fro þe nauele vpward he was man,
And lower dowȝ lik an hors y-schapid;
And þîlke parte þat after man was makid,
Of skyn was blak & Rowe as eny bere,
Couerid with here from colde hym for to were,
Passynge foule and horrible of siȝt,
Whos eyen were spark[e]ling as briȝt
As a fourneis with his rede leuene,
Or þe liȝtynyn þat comeþ* doun fro heuene,
Dredful of loke, and red as fire of chere.
And, as I rede, he was a good archere;
And with his bowe, boþe at eue & morwe,
Vp-on Grekis he wrouȝt moche sorwe,
And gasted hem with many hidous loke,
So sterne he was þat many of hem quoke
Whan þei hym saw, so ogly & horrible,
And more lothsom þan it is credible,
Þat many on hath woned to þe deth,

7781. Lissyna] Cam D 1.
7794. hym] hym eke D 1.
7797. I] he C.
And caused hem to 3elden vp þe breth
On Grekis side, as 3e schal after here.
And in þis wyse assemblid ben y-fere
Kynges, dukis, and erlis of renoun,
From sondri londis with-Inne Troye toun,
þat be gadred & come fro so ferre,
As seith Dares, to helpe hem in þis werre—
þat wer in noumbre, as he maketh mynde,
Two and pritty þousand, as I fynde,
Of worþi kny‡tes and lordis of estate,
þat sith þe worlde was formyd & creat,
Ne was nat seyn, I trowe, in o cite
To-gidre assemblid of so hige degre,
Nor of kny‡tes so gret a multitude.
And at þis Dares, sothly to conclude,
In his boke maketh of hem no mynde,
þat cam to Troye out of smaller Ýnde,
Nouþer of hem, most famus of renoun,
þat wer with Priam born of Troye toun—
þat finally, zif it be trewly souzt,
Sípen þe hour þat þis world was wrou3t,
I dar afferme,/vndir Phebus spere
So many worþi wer nat met I-fere
Of manly men, flouryng in lustines,
So fresche, so ʒonge, and as by liklynes,
In euery point, of schap and of array
For to do wel, sothly * þis no nay,
Who list considere vp-on ouþer side.
For þoruζ þe world, wher men go or ride,
þe flour of kny‡thod & of worþines,
Of chiualrie, and of híze prowes
Assemblid was with-outen & with-Inne,
Fully assentid a werre to be-gynne.
Wherfore, 3e listers, taketh now good hede,
þat 3ow delite in þis boke to rede:
First for how litel [þat] þis werre gan,
How list the cause, for whiche so many men
Hath lost his lif in meschef pitously;
And it no man can be war þer-by—
Almost for nouȝt was þis strif be-gonne:
And who* list loke, þei han no þing wonne
But only deth, alas, þe harde stounde!
So many knyȝt cauȝt his deþes* wounde
Wip-out recure or any remedie.
And for a woman, ȝif I schal nat lye,
Gan al þis strif, it was þe more pite,
þat so gret meschef or aduersite
Of mortal slauȝter eu er schulde tyde!
Bet had ben to haue set a-side
Swiche quarrells, dere I-now amyte,
To haue lete passid or þe vengaunce bite:
For wisdam wer to cast a-forn and se
ȝif swiche sclauandris myȝt eschewed be
Or þe venym gonne for to ripe;
For þow[3] þat men with hornys blowe & pipe
Whan an hous is ﬁred in his hete,
Of þe sparkle to late is to trete,
þat causid al: wherfore, at þe gynnyng
þe remedie is put of euery þing,
As euery wiȝt may deme in his resoun. [leaf 65 a]

Howe the worthy kynge Pallamydes, the secunde
parsone of þe Grekes; kame with thryte shippes
to Thenedone, in helpynge of the Grekes. And
howe þe famous manful knyght, Dyomede, pro-
vokede them to departe fro Thenadon, and to
Arryve in þe playne afore Troye.¹

And whil þe* Grekis lay at Tenedoun,
Hem to refresche & to reste in pes,

7852. whiche so many man] she D 2—many] many a A.
7858. many] many a A—knyȝt] knyȝtes D 1—his] her D 1—
deþes] dedis C.
7865. quarrellis] quarell D 2.
7866. To haue lete passid] To lete passen D 1, Ta letyn passyd.
D 2. 7871. an] the A.
¹ Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 64 a (misplaced after line 7848).
Of King Palamedes, who joins the Greeks with 30 Ships. [BK II]

At Tenedos, King Palamedes joins the Greeks with 30 ships well manned and vitalled.

He couldn't muster with them at Athens because he was ill.

His reputation was high, and the Greeks asked him to be on their Council.

...
The Greeks don't move towards Troy.

And he assenteth vn-to her axyng,
Benynedly of his gentilles.
And Grekis pan dide her besynes
To procede, with-oute more delay,
Hem to enhaste, in al pat euer pei may,
To gyne a sege and difffe-re it noujt.
And sondri weies pei cerched han & soujt
In her wittes, how fro Tenedoun
pei may remewe towards Troye toun,
From pe haunene wher her* schippes be.
And somme poujt most comodite,
For most expleit, be nijt priuely
Toward Troye, pat stod fast[e] by,
Proudly to saille with her schipes alle.
And somme seide, gret peril myjt[e] falle,
Toward nijt for to take pe se,
List with dirknes pei ennoysed be
In her passage, knowyng not pe way,
Wher-of gret harme after falle may—
And pus diuers of oppinioun,
Procedyng nat to no conclusion:
For in effect her purpos nat ne held,
But stille lyn, ay loggid in pe felde,
Like as pei had entriked be with drede,
Til on a day, worpi* Dyomede,
Of pe Grekis seyng pe cowardyse,
Euene pus his conseil gan deuyse:
"Sirs," quod he, "pat be now here present,
3if pat 3e list, alle be oon assent,
Goodly considre, aduertyng prudently
What I schal seyn to-for 3ow openly,
Whiche of kny3thod han so noble a name,
Sothly me semeth, we ou3ten han gret schame,
Whiche holdeoure silfe so my3ti & so strong,
And in pis lond soiuerned han so longe—
Nije al pis 3ere—and dursten in no wyse
Remewen hens, for verray cowardyse—

7920. weies] wise D1. 7923. her] pe C.
7930. ennoysed] envosed D2, Ennosed A, enn'osed D1.
7938. worpi] pis worpi C.
Diomede reproaches the Greeks for not attacking Troy. [BK. II

Diomede's speech:

"We've given the Trojans time to get help and strengthen their city.

They see we're afraid to attack them.

If we had but gone at once,

we should have had our will of them.

What haue we do?—nat ellis certeynly,
But to oure foon graunted folyly,
Euene at her lust, space & liberte
To make hem strong, and oportunyte
Vs to withstond, pleauly, at þe hond—
And so þei wîl, þe may wel vndirstond.

For day be day, to oure confusion,
þay haue souȝt wayes, ful wisly vp & doun,
To gete hem help in þe mene space,
And hem enforced aboute in euery place,
Her round cite with barres ð with palis,
Her wallis maskued, and ageyn oure skalis—
Trustþ þer-on—made gret ordinauce.

And with al þis, of oure gouernaunce
þei han espied, seyng þat for drede
We han noon hert manly to procede
In oure purpous to hold with hem wërre;
And ay þe more þei se þat we differre,
þe more þei wîl cachen hardynes
Vs to resiste with al her besines.
Also I se, and trust it verrailly,
þat ȝif we had afore-hand manfully,

As we began, knyȝly furþe contynyd,
Oure Iourne hadde better be fortynyd:
ȝif sodeynly with strong & myȝti honde,
þei vnavisde, we had in-to her londe
With-out abood afore þis tyme aruied,
Of whiche [a] while we must be deprived,
And delayed, where first with victorie,

To oure honour, with þe palme of glorie

We myȝt sothly, nad[de] ben oure sloute,
Our wel complisched, þis þe pleyne[þe] trouȝe:
Wher maugre vs, or we to lond aruye,
With strong diffence þei wil ageyn vs striue,

And put vs of or we þe stronde* wynne.

372 Diomede reproaches the Greeks for not attacking Troy. [BK. II

7957. For] Fro D 1—be] to D 1.
7962. wallis] wall D 2, walle D 1.
7966. hert] hertis D 1.
7985. of] om. D 1—stronde] lond C.
BK. II]  
Diomed urges the Greeks to attack Troy at once.  373

For ay pe more we tarie to be-gyone,  
pe more, in soth, for me list nat ly,  
We put oure silfe echon in iupartye—  
What schulde I feyn or fage fro pe troupe?  
For oure tariyn & oure coward sloupe  
Ar likly after to tourne vs to gret sorwe:  
Wherfor, erly to-morwe* by pe morwe,  
My conseil is, oure ankres vp to pulle,  
In pis mater no lenger pat we dulle,  
But to enarme oure schipes for pe werre;  
And at pe vprist of pe morwe sterre,  
Late vs ordeyn, with kny3tly apparaile  
Out of pis hauene with pe wynde to saile,  
Of manful hert & lusti fressche corage,  
Our cours holdyng & our ri3t passage  
Toward Troye, & londen horpidly,  
What-euere falle: for trustep sikerly,  
With-out skarmusche we may nat ariue;  
For pei fro Troye descend wil as blyue,  
Lik manly men, to mete vs in pe berde.  
But for al pat, lat vs nat ben a-ferde,  
But voide drede, & manhod set a-fore,  
pat cowardyse entre at no bore  
For to astone pe manhod of oure herte."  
And with pat word, pe Grekis gan aduerte  
pe manly conseil of pis Diamede,  
And in effect to procede in dede  
Vn-to pe point, & for no ping spare,  
And in what wyse, anoon I schal declare.

Howe the Grekes londede in the playne afor [Troye],  
and howe the Troyans gave theme batayle at the  
stronde: in whos meteynge were slayne mony A  
worthy knygh[t] and others.¹

7992. erly to-morwe] to morwe erly C.  
7994. dulle] dwelle D 1.  
8004. descend] descendid A.  
8014. anoon I schal] I shal anon D 2.  

¹ Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 64 d.
The Greeks set sail for Troy.

At dawn next day

The next[e] morwe, wonderly be-tyme,
Or Phebus vprist, longe or it was prime,

When it be-gan ful merily to dawe,
Bye Grekis host to schipward gonne* drawe
With manly hert, fully deuyde of drede,

Only poruʒ* comfort of pis Diomede.

But* aldirfirst, anoon as ἔπει a-wake,

Bye lordis wysely han her counsel take
And concludid among hem everychon,

Whiche of her schipes schuld[e] formest gon,
And on ἔπει se howe ἔπει schulde hem guye,
So to ariṵ̊e ἐπα no man hem espie:

Byis was deuised at a certeyn marke.

Bye nyʒt passid, at singyng of ἔπει larke,

Grekis be schippid with-out more tariyng,

Bope hiʒe and low, in [ȃ] daw[ẽ]nyng;
And first a-forme, an hundrid schipes of tour,

Stuffid with many worʒi werriour,
Gan proudly saille, as ἔπει had in charge;
And ἔπει baners, brode, briʒt, and large,

Were splaied out vp-on every side:
And ἔπει departe ἔπει fomy wawes wyde,

But to sįʒt whelmen vp so grene.

And next [to] hem, for werre enarmyd clene,

A-noʃer hundrid folwe fast[ẽ] by,

Whiche bare her sailles passingly proudly,

In whiche ἔπει was ful many worʒi knyʒt,

Armyd in mail & in platis briʒt.

And after folweʃ hoolly her nauye,

But as I trowe, swiche a companye

Of worʒi knyʒtes & lordis of degre

Was neuer a-forme seyn vp-on ἔπει se.

And Eolus was to hem fortunat;

And eke Neptune made no debat

---

8016. was] wer D1. 8018. gonne] gan C, A.
8024. her] om. A. 8031. a-forme] to forn A, D2, D1
8035. splaid] I splayed A.
8038. enarmyd] armed D1.
With wynde nor trouble among þe [sterne] wawis;
þatempre wedir ful mery to hem dawes,
þat in a tyde, as þei seille riȝt,
Of Troye touȝ þei cauzt anoon a siȝt, 8052
Wher-of in hert ful glad & liȝt þei ben.
But whan Troyans first her schippes sen
So proudly saille a litel fro þe stronde,
And sawe how þei cast hem for to lond,
þei bood no more, but arme hem hastily
In plate and mail & Iakkis richely,
With Irous hert—and þat was don anon—
And toke her hors, & forþe in hast þei goon
Out at þe zatis & made no taryng:
For þei nabide prince, duke, nor kyng,
Nor oper lord to guye hem or* gouerne,
But hast hem forþe, so many and so þerne,
þoruȝ-oute þe felde so gret a multitude.
Amongis whom were no folkis rude,
But manly men, & þriftilly beseyn,
So clenly armyd on þe large pleyn,
þat whan Grekis gan hem first beholde,
Of þe noumbre her hert[ñe] gan to colde:
For þer was noon so manly hem amonge, [leaf 66 a]
So þong, so fresche, so hardy, nor so strong,
Of hijd estat nor of lowe degre,
þat he ne was astonied for to se
þe hardy Troyans so proudly douȝ descende
To lette Grekis þat þei nat ascende,
þat þei wist and conceive outerly
þer was no mene to arive by,
But only deth, or manly for to ﬁȝt,
Or cowardly take hem to þe ﬂiȝt—
For oper conduit pleinly noon þer was
But scharp[e] swerdis & speris in þis cas.
Til sodeinly þe hardy ferse kyng,
The Greeks' try at landing is at first disastrous.

Protheselaus's 100 ships are driven ashore and wreckt.
Some of his men are drownd, and others slain by the Trojans.

The arrows cloud the sun.

But the Greeks press on.

Protheselaus, which in his gouernyng,
Formost of alle, an hundred schipes ladde,
Gan hasten hym for Ire pat he hadde,
Talondid first, 3if it wold haue be,

Ta met* with hem so gret desire had he.

But swyche a wynde gan in pe seil[e] drive
Of his schipis, whan he schope tariue,
pat he vnwarly smet vp-on pe londe,
On pe gettis and pe drye sonde,

pat his schippes schyuered al a-sondre,
And some dreint, to-broken here & 3ondre,
And deuourid of pe wawy* se,

pat it was roupe and pite for to se—
For but of harde per myȝte noon* eskape.
And whiles some wer besy for to take
pe drie lond, with mvd and filpe y-lade,

Troyens of hem ful cruel slauȝter made ;
Maugre her myȝt, Grekis so constreyned,
pat with her blood pe wawis wer [y.-]steyned,
So mortally, pat sothly to be-holde,
Amonge pe sonde, pale, ded, and colde

pe Grekis lyn, with woundis fresche & grene ;
And al pe eyr with schot of arowis kene
I-schadwed was, pat Phebus bemy[s brij[3t
Vp-on pe soille was dirked of his list.

And new alwey Troyens hem assaille,
pat to Grekis pleynly pis ryvaille
So mortal was & so infortunat,
So vnwelful and disconsolat,

So vnw disposid þoruȝ infelicithe,
pat, I trewe, neuere out of no se
Ne cam noon host of mor harde to londe.

But for al pat, Grekis nolde wonde,
For lyf nor deth, manly to arive.
And so befil, of auenture as blyue,
pe hundred schipes pat next aftir sew,

Avisely, and in tyme dew
Ben entred in, and hast[e] nat to faste,
And strike sail and her ankris caste,
For pe werre strongly enbatailled,
In her londyng list pei wern assailed.
And wisly first pei sette her arblasteris
And her gowners & her best archeris,
With pauiseris for to goon afoor,
Kny3tly to londe, pou3 Troyens had sworn
pe contrarie, proudly hem to lette;
Jet for al pat, fersly vp pei sette.
The Grekysshe* schot made hem to with-drawe,
And many of hem on pe lond ley slawe,
But maugre hem pei stronde pei recure;
And swiche as my3t most manfully endure
Wer set afoor, til pei pe lond han take.
And al attonys swiche assaut pei make
Vp-on Troyens; and po began pe fi3t,
Whan Prothesilaus, pe noble worpi kny3t,
Wonder lifly & ri3t passyng strong,
With pe Greki3s entred in among
pe hardy Troyens, & euer[y]-wher hem sou3t;
For he of armes merueilles on hem wrou3t
pi3le day poru3 his worpine,
pe hardy Troyan he brou3t in distresse—
Wher he went pei felt[e] ful vnsofte,
poru3 whos manhod Greki3s wern a-lofte.
For pi3le day, ne hadde* his kny3thood be,
pe Greki3s hadde in gret aduersite
Be venquisched by fatal puruyauce,
And fynally brou3t vn-to vttraunce,
I-putte a-bak, pleiny pis no lye.
But what availlop al his chiualrie,
His worpin, or his fers corage—
What my3t it helpe or do avauntage,
Sith seuene pousand Greki3s had a-do

8126. gonnners] guanes D 1. 8128. had] had it D 1.
8147. ne hadde] nat C, nadde D 2.
8151. pis] pis is D 1. 8154. do] to do D 1.
The Greeks suffer greatly, but are helpt by Archelaus, etc. [BK.II.

The Greeks suffer greatly, but are helpt by Archelaus etc.

The few Greeks see the sea behind them, so that they must die or fight.

They defend themselves valiantly, and would have perisht, but that Archelaus and Prothochnor came to their aid.

With an hundred thousand Troyens & zit mo! It merueil was how pei myȝt endure. In any wyse pe stronde to recure; Or so fewe [for] to holde a felde. But in hem silf o ping pei behelde, Ful prudently, whiche pat zauue hem hert; pat pei saw pei myȝt[e] nat asterte. To eskae alyue zif pei wolde fle: For at her bak was no ping but pe se, And to-forn hem an host so gret & huge pat opir way was per no refuge, But deye attonys or fiȝt manfully.

Wherfor pei caste & schope hem ful knyȝtly, Lik manly men, her lyues to iuparte [leaf 66c] pan cowardly from her foon departe, To lese her gronnde & drenchyn in pe se, And pus as long as it wolde be, Grekis diffende hem fer aboue her myȝt, Al-be pat many wer kylled in pis fiȝt, pat pe stremsys of pe rede blood Ran on pe sonde, large as any flood, So cruelly Troyens on hem sette With spere and swerde, [ful] scharp[e] gronnde & whet, pat roupe was and pite for to pinke, Til pei almost drof hem to* pe brinke, Wher pe Grekis, in meschef & distresse, In gret anguysh & passyng werines Hem silfe diffende, maat & ful wery, Wher pei schulde haue perschid outerly, Recurles, in soth, for euermore, Nadde Archelaus and worpi Prothenor From her schipes aryued vn-to londe, Of sodeyn hap with hem for to stonde. And zit pei had ful gret aduersite For to ariue, poruȝ pe cruelte Of pe Troyens; but zit pe lond pei wyzne.

The Greeks are reinforst by Nestor, Agalus, & Athalus. 379

And Grekis þan cruelly be-gynne 8192 The Greeks fight fiercely.
Agyyn her foon to stonden at diffence
With manly force and gret violence;
And þo encreseth þe blody werre newe,
þat al þe soil depeynt was with þe hewe, 8196
þat first was grene, turned in-to red,
On eche side so many on lay ded
Vp-on þe grounde, of his lif deprevied.
But duke Nestor is sodeynly aryued 8200 Nestor joins em, with his knights
With his kny3tes, felle and ful Irous,
And of hert riʒt malencolyous,
With his speris, archeris oute a-syde,*
He entrid in, sterne & ful of pride. 8204
With sword and axe, grounde scharpe & kene,
þei ran y-fere & mette vp-on þe grene;
And hokid arowis alwey flen among,
And schaftis schiuere, to-braste, & torne wrong; 8208
And with her tolys, stelyd & wel whet,
þe long[c] day þei han to-gidre met.
And þe slaušter new alwey * began,
On euery half, of many worpi man, 8212 Fresh slaughter follows.
With woundlys large, fel, & dispitous:
For Prothenor and kyng Archelaus
With swordis stif among þe reggis kerue,
Whiche many Troyan made for to sterue— 8216
þei were þat day so passyng[ly] Irous,
And hem to auenge ily desyrous, [leaf 66d]
Neuer cessayng in her pursewayng.
And to releue hem, Alagus þe kyng 8220 Then Agalus and Athalus reinforce the Greeks
I-londid is, and eke kyng Athalus,
Whiche on Troyens werne ful envious,
Breynyng of * Ire as þe fyry * glede,
And vp-on hem, of verray olde hattrede, 8224
With her kny3tes sodeinly be falle;
And in her Ire, bitterer þan pan galle,
Cruelly pei her foon oppresse,
And of assent dide her besines 8228
Maugre hem bakward to resort
Amyd pe feld, as I can report—
þer was no choys, so pei wer constreyned
Of verray force, & of manhood peynde 8232
To withdrawe, to her confusioum.

Here were faste devyces founde in Armes.1

But þanne in hast, doun fro Troye toun,
Of worpi knyþtes freschely armyd new, 8236
With diuises of many sondri hewe,
Without aabood, shortly to conclude,
þer cam doun so gret a multitude,
Eche his armys depeint vp-on his schelde,
þat in her comyng gletereth al þe felde 8240
Of her armwre and þe sonne briȝt;
And whan þat þei wer entrid in-to fīȝt,
Greki metyng, felly be envie,
þei set vp-on, fret wiþ malencolie,
With swiche a wille, of hert[e] and[1] corage, 8244
Wiþ swiche furie in her mortal rage,
þat vntacont was noon oper mene,
But slaȝtre and deth hem to go betwene,
þorȝ strok of axe, of dagger, & of sperre, 8248
þat of force coact þe Grekiis were
To retourne bakward to þe stronde.
To whos rescus anoon þer cam to londe 8252
þe kyng Vlixes wiþ his hool navie,
And ful knyȝtly, wiþ his chualrie,
Towardis Troyens enhasteþ him anoon;
And of on herte þe Grekiis wiþ him goon, 8256
And her corage hooly þei reswme,
And gan her foon felly to conswme
Vn-to þe deth, her damage to revenge,

8239. 2nd his] om. D I.
8247. vntacont] vnto acorde A, vnto acorde D 2, vn to accorde
D 1, 8248. and] of D I. 8249. 2nd of] om. A.
8250. coact] cont D 2, chek mate D 1.

1 Royal MS. 18. D. ii. leaf 66 c (misplaced after line 8240).
Ulysses fights, but is twice unhorsed by K. Philomene.

pat no wiht may iustly hem* chalenge
Of vnmanhod, so wel þei han hem born,
To quite ageyn her harmys do be-forn.
At whiche tyme, lik a ferse lyoun
Among[es] Troyens renging vp and doun,
Vlixes went with his swerde in honde:
He kylleth, sleth, & knyþly gan to* fonde,
þilk[e] day lyk a man be founde;
And her & þer, with many mortal wounde,
Vp-on Troyens he wrouȝt al pis wrak,
Hem beryng doun on fote and hors[e]-bak,
In his Ire his strokis wer so kene.
At whiche tyme worpi Philomene,
Lord & kyng of Pafogonye,
Whan he behild, wiþ his companye,
So many Troyan of Ylixes slawe,
Towards hym anon he gan him drawe
On hors[e]-bak, wiþ a spere rounde,
Out of his sadil bar hym to þe grounde;
But Vlixes ros vp anon rìȝt,
Takyng his hors, lik a manly* knyȝt;
þe whiche anon as Philomene ĉap seyn,
Toke eft a spere and rod to hym ageyn
So myȝtely, and wiþ swiche violence,
þat finally þer geyneth no diffence,
But þat he smet him evene þoruȝ þe scheld,
þe whiche sley a-sondre in þe feld;
And þoruȝ his platis, with-outen any fail,
þe spereded ran, & rested in þe mail,
þat forged was of steel ful schene & bриȝt,
Whiche to perce þe spereded had no myȝt,
So trewyly made was þe haberiouȝ;
But with þat strok Vlixes was bore doun
Jet eft ageyn; but he vp ros anon,
Whiche of his stroke harme ne felt[e] non,
And rauȝt a sper[e], scharp[e] whet & grounde,
And Philomene he ȝaf swiche a wounde,
With al þe myȝt of his armys tweyne,
Of Irous herte, with so gret a payne,
þat þorȝ his schelde, bope plate & mail,
He smet hym vp þorȝ his aventure,
In-to þe gorȝe þat þe strock gan glide,
þat from his hors he fil douȝ a-side,
Ful perlously þȝte vp-on his hed,
His knyȝtes wenyng sothly he were* ded.
Whiche toke hym vp & leyde him on a schelde,
And bar him hom in hast out of þe feld,
With gret dauager or þei myȝt hym wynne,
þorȝ þe Grekis with her lord towynne.
And for Troyens supposid sykerly
þat Philomene, with-oute remedye,
Had be ded, þei wer astonyed alle:
þat ȝif þis cas þat day nad[de] falle
Of Philomene, Grekis on þe stronde
Hadde be outtraied, ariving vp to londe,
þorȝ þe knyȝthod—þis is doubt[es]—
Of Philomene, whom þat Vlixes
Unhorsed hath with a mortal wouade,
In knyȝtly wyse Troyens to confounde—
Wher-of þei wer astonyed euerychon.

But Thoas þanne and Agamenoun,
Of Grekis host lord & Empereour,
Ariued is vn-to her socour
Wip al his knyȝtes, and Menelaus,
And eke þe worþi Thelamonyus,
Callid Aiax, is to londe[es] come;
And þei at leyser han her hors [ȝ-]nome,
While ðer Grekis Troyens occupie,
So[re] fiȝtyng, and þei gan fast[es] hye
Toward[es] hem, makyng no delay;
Al on a frussche, in al þe hast þei may,
The battle goes on. Protesilaus resolves to fight again. 383

pei ran y-fere and her speris brak, 8332
With herte envious, vp-on hors[e]-bak.

Per my3t[e] men pe worpi kny3tes se 8336
On her stedis eche at oper flee
With stif swerdis, schaftis gret & rounde,
With hedis square, pe pointis kene founde—

Per my3t[e] men, in her furious tene,
Se many kny3tes ded vp-on pe grene!
But most pe slau3ter and confusion
Fil pilk[e] tyme of* hem of pe toun:

Pe Grekis wern so my3ti & so strong.
And in pe feld pis contvneth* long,
Til Prothesilaus, pe strong my3ti kyng,
Whiche al pe day in skarmusche & fi3tyng

Ful lik a kny3t had occupied be
Ageyn[e]s Troyens, in his cruelte,
Of manhod only and of wo[r]jines,
Of auenture, in his werynes 8348
Hym to refresche & to taken eyr,
And to abreth hym, makyd his repeir
To pe stronde, where he dide arine:
Wher as him* pou3t, his hert[e] gan to ryue

Of cruel Ire and also of pite,
bat he kau3t, only for to se 8352
His men lyn slayn endelong pe stronde,
And some of hem comynge vp to londe,
Dreint in pe se among pe flodis depe.

For whiche ping he gan anoon to wepe
Ful pitously, al wer it nat espied,
Whos woful eyne my3t[e] nat be dreyed
For pe constreynt which sat so ny3e his hert.

Til at pe last, among his peynys smert,
So cruel Ire gan his hert enbrace,
bat sodeynly with a dispitous face,

With-out abood, pou3t[e] how pat he 8364
[leaf 67 c] resolves to avenge them,

8332. kny3tes] knyght D 2. 8340. of] on C.
8342. contvneth] contvned C.
8352. him] he C. 8356. to] the A.
8362 is omitted in D 1.
Protesilaus slays Trojans. Perseus & his Blacks kill Greeks.

Protesilaus rushes into the thick of the fight. He wounds and slays, and unhorses the Trojans, till Perseus (Perseus?), king of Ethiopia, comes to their help with his blacks.

Vp-on her deth wolde avengid be, Or finally attonis with hem deye.

And on his stede he toke þe riȝt[e] weye Toward his foon, ful Irous in his rage; And lyne riȝt he holdip his passage, Swift as grehond þat reyneȝ oute of lees;

And where he saw þat þer was grettest pres, He presip þorȝ, amiddis of þe feld; And with þe swerd whiche in his hond he held, þat ground[e] was to keruen and to bite, Ful mortally a-boute hym he gan smyte, þat Troyens myȝt hym not asterte.

Some he riveth everene to þe herte, And some he woundeth, sothly, to þe deth, And some he made to zelden vp þe breth, And he vnhorsip somme cruelly;

And whom he mette þat day, utterly, From his hors he made hym to alyȝte: For where he rood þei fled out of his siȝt, And his presence as þe deth eschewe *; But euere in on, he gan aftir sewe In his chaas, as * a wood lyoun.

þis pleȝe he pleȝeth * with hem of þe touȝ, Til Perseus, of Ethiope kyng, From þe cite com sodeinly ridyngh Wip manȝ knyȝt & manȝ líȝt * man ; At * whos comyngh of new[e] þer be-gan A fresche skarmusche, furious & wood, þat manȝ Greke þat day lost his blood, So fel assaut Troyens on hem make.

And among hem þe Ethiope blake So manly bar hem, fiȝtyng here & þere, þat wher Troyens wern a-forn in fere, Remounted ben and of new assurid ;

8385. eschewe] þei eschewe C.
8389. new 'A. 8390. sodeinly] ryally D 2.
8391. 1st many] many a A, D 1—2nd many] many a D 1—lífiy likly C.
8396. And] om. A.
Palamedes helps the Greeks, and spears Sigamon.

The Trojans drive the Greeks back to the seashore.

But Palamedes comes to their rescue, slays many Trojans, and meets Sigamon who has kild many Greeks.

...
The Trojans are driven back to Troy. [BK. II]

When he of knyghtod was most in his pride,
He rood at hym & smet him þoruz þe syde.
And with þat last dedly fatal wounde,
From his stede he bare hym to þe grounde;
And on þe pleyn, of his blood al red,
Pallamydes lefte hym pale and ded,
Amongis hem þat of Troye were;
And furþe he rood, & bare downe here & þere
Al þat euere in his weye stood—
He was on hem so furious & wood*—
Mangre Troyens to-form him on þe pleyn,
Made resorte to þe wal ageyn,
His manly knyßtes, alwey fast[e] by,
On his awaytyng ful eu[ten]tiffly
Redy to* hond at euery grete emprise.
But þo began þe noise to arise,
þe woful clamour and þe pitus crie
Of hem of Troye, þe whiche outerly
þe mortal sworde was so scharp & kene
Of þe noble worþi famous knyßt,
Pallamydes, þat with his grete myßt
þe long[e] day hath y-born hym so
Ageyn his foon, and so knyßtly do,
In his persone, þoruz his hie renoun,
[þat] Chased hath almost to þe toun
Troyens echon, manly made to fle.

Their cries are heard by Hector,
the worthièst and boldest of men.

Hector, Whan he of knyßthod was most in his pride,
He rood at hym & smet him þoruz þe syde.
And with þat last dedly fatal wounde,
From his stede he bare hym to þe grounde;
And on þe pleyn, of his blood al red,
Pallamydes lefte hym pale and ded,
Amongis hem þat of Troye were;
And furþe he rood, & bare downe here & þere
Al þat euere in his weye stood—
He was on hem so furious & wood*—
Mangre Troyens to-form him on þe pleyn,
Made resorte to þe wal ageyn,
His manly knyßtes, alwey fast[e] by,
On his awaytyng ful eu[ten]tiffly
Redy to* hond at euery grete emprise.
But þo began þe noise to arise,
þe woful clamour and þe pitus crie
Of hem of Troye, þe whiche outerly
þe mortal sworde was so scharp & kene
Of þe noble worþi famous knyßt,
Pallamydes, þat with his grete myßt
þe long[e] day hath y-born hym so
Ageyn his foon, and so knyßtly do,
In his persone, þoruz his hie renoun,
[þat] Chased hath almost to þe toun
Troyens echon, manly made to fle.

Their cries are heard by Hector,
the worthièst and boldest of men.

8439. fatal] om. D 1. 8446. wood] so wood C.
8451. to] at C.
8455. myyste nat sustene] swerde was so sharpe & kene D 1.
8456] þat shoon ful brijt a geyn þe sonne shene D 1.
8464. 2nd þe] in the A.
Amonge sterris, so dide he appere, Excellyng all in stel armyd briȝt, On whom it was a verray heuenly siȝt: For it was he, þat, boþe nyȝe & ferre, Of worpines was þe lode-stere.  

he whiche whan he entríd in-to feld, Liche as I rede, bare þat day a schelde, þe feld of whiche was of purid gold With þre lyouns, in story as is told, Of whos colour is made no menciou(n; But, as I fynde by discripcioun, þei wer passaunt, 3if I report ariȝt, Born on þe brest* of þis Troyan kniȝt, þat was þe ground & rote of hís prowes And flour acoûnted of al worpines.  

he whiche so manly, with-out more abood, Amongis his knyȝtes to þe Grekis rood, So like a man, þat þei in his comyng Astonyd wern, as he gan in þring  

Amonges hem, whichiche killeth doun & sleth, And whom he mette þer was nat but deth.  

A-forn his swerd Grekis go to wrak; And her wardis of knyȝtly force he brak, And maugre hem seuered hem assaultre, And bare al doun, ridyng here and 3ondre.  

And casuȝly he meteth* in his way Prothesilau[s, whiche al þe longe day Had sore fouȝte ageynes* hem of Troy  

And slaw alle [þo] þat come in his woye, þis* hardy knyȝt, þis worþi, ferse kyng, Whiche on Troyens was euere purswyng—He to hem had so hertly gret envye.  

he whiche þing whan Hector gan espie, And of his knyȝþhed gan to taken hed, Towardis hym he gan to reyne his stede; And lyne riȝt of hasty Ire he rood,
Hector splits Protesilaus and drives the Greeks to the Sea. [BK. II]

And with his sword, disteyned al with blod,
He rof his hed, porus his bas[e]net,
With swiche a myȝt pat his strok nas* let
By force of maille nor of þikke plate:
But finally, by ful mortal fate,
He sword of Hector, porus nerf, bon, & veyne,
His worpi kyng parted hap on tueyne;
For outerly, per geyneth noon armvre
Ageyn þe strok of Hector to endure—
But pat þis kyng, so ful of worpines,
Strong & myȝty, and of gret hardines,
Receyved hath his last[e] fatal wounde,
And lith now ded, parted on þe grounde.
And Hector furthe among þe Grekis ryt;
And who-so-euer pat his strok abit,
Refute was non nor diffence but deth;
And many Greke þilke day he slethe:
For whiche of hem in his wey[e] stood,
His scharp[e] sword he bapid in his blood,
Þat also fer as þei myȝt hym se,
As þe deth, from his sword þei fle—
So mortal vengauence up-on hem he wroȝt.

And many Greke at his felaw souȝt,
And gan enquire what he myȝt[e] be;
For al her lyne þei koude neuer se
Non so knyȝtly haue hym in bataile,
And pleyynly dempte, as be supposaile,
It was Hector, pe noble werriour,
Whiche of knyȝthod may bere aweiye þe flour
Among alle þat euer sit were born:
For þer nas Greke þat hym may stond a-forn;
Of alle þat day he gan hem so enchant
To þe strond, euene a-forn his face—
For þei ne durst his mortal st[r]ook abide.
And whan he had vppon eueri syde
Þe Grekis chacid to þe wawy se,
Wounded & maat, in gret aduersite,
Hector goes back to Troy. Achilles helps the Greeks.

Pan hym to rest, pis Troyan knyht anon, Lik Mars him sylf, hom to Troy is goon. At whos partyng, Grekis eft preswme Manly a-geyn her hertis to reswme, And of newe her fomen for to assaille, And to iupart, jif it wolde availle, Lif & deth to setten at outtrance

On Fortune, jif sche wolde avance Her part ageyn in recure of pe felde, And hem enforce, with my3t of spere & scheld, To wynne ageyn on Trovys, jif pei may, Anon forpe-with, and make no delay. For heizt[e] tyme sithen pei be-gonne pe feld pei han pat day lost & wonne, Lyke as Fortune list to don hir cure, Vp or down for to turne hir ewre:

For as hir whele went aboute rounde, [leaf 68 c] Rit3 so pat day pei wan & lost her grounde. But specialy pei wer most dismaied Whan Hector cam, whiche hap hem so outra[i]ed poru3 his kny3thod, whiche made her hertis riue, And to resorte where pei dide aryue. And pis contuneth, maugre al her my3t, While in pe feld was pis Troyan kny3t, Til Phebus chara gan to westre doun, pat he repeyred is in-to pe town, Whiche hadde Grekis wrougt afrom ful ille. But nowe pe hardly, cruel, ferse Achille Ariued is with his kny3tes alle, Mirunbones whom men are wont to calle, Whiche from pe se takyn han pe pleyn. At whos commynge Grekis han a-geyn pe feld recured, & put hem sylf in pres, Only poru3 helpe of hardly Achilles, Whiche is so felly Trovys falle vppon,
Achilles and his Myrmidons drive the Trojans back. [BK. II]

The Myrmidons slay many Trojans.

\[
\text{bat he of hem hath slayn many on:} \quad 8580
\]

For pre powsand in stel armyd brijt
With hym he broujt, redy for to fist,
Kny3tes echon, ful worpi of renoun,
Whiche with Achille, Grekis champioun,
Han merciles in her cruelte
Slayn many Troyan out of pe cite.
\[
\text{pei wer so fercuent in her mortal Ire,} \quad 8584
\]
So envious of hate to desyre
Newe & newe for to schede her blood;
For Achilles poujt it dide hym good
With his swerde Troyan blood to schede,
And on pe soil to sen hem lyn & blede,
Routh[e]les in his malencolye.
For he to hem hath so hoot envie,
With-oute her deth \text{bat it may nat quenche;}
And he his swerd ful depe made drench.
\[
\text{pe long[e] day in Troyanysche blood,} \quad 8592
\]
And bajid it as it were in a flood,
Whiche forgid was & I-whet so \* kene,
\text{bat many ryuer, sothly, on pe grene}
Ran her and \text{per of her hortis sore,}
And with his kny3tes, alwey more & more
Pursewed hem, a-forn him \* as pei fie
To pe wallis of Troye pe cite,
\[
\text{Wher pei made a ful pitous cry.} \quad 8604
\]
And in pis while, I finde in pe story,
\text{pe Grekis host holy is arived,}
Like in Guydo as it is descrived,
Of men of armys swyche a multitude,
And of kny3tes, schortly to conclude,
\text{bat from her schipes of newe londed be,}
\text{bat Troyens astonyd wer to se;}
And abaisched pei gan wexen alle.
For sodeynly pei gan on hem falle,
On euery halfe, passyngly gret pres;

8597. Troyanysche] Troyans A. \quad 8599. so] ful C.
8601. hortis] hurtes A, hurtis D 1, hurtys D 2.
8603. him] hem C, D 1. \quad 8615. passyngly] passyng A.
And euer in on pis hardy Achilles
With his swerd made her sydes rede:
For her & per lay pe bodyes dede,
And wounded some at entre of pe gate,
And kny soces with hem [he] gan debate,
And furiously pis fel cruel knysect
pe children slowe in her * fadris sijt,
bat to be-holde it was ful gret pite.
And 3it pe slau3ter gretter had[de] be,
With-out noutbre of hem of pe touw,
Perpetually to her confusion,
Likly for euer to haue be ouer-come,
3if Troylus nadde vn-to reskus come,
3ong, fresche, & lusty, & inly desyrous,
With whom cam eke Paris & Dephebus
And many worpi her party to secure;
So pat Grekis po ne my3t endure
Ageynes* hem to stonden at diffence,
For al her pride, no[r] make resistance,
Worpi Troylus so wel pat tyme hym quitte.
For pis* in soth, what Greke pat he hitte,
Ouper he maymeth or he made deye:
Wherfor, as deth, pei fledde out of his weye.
And Achilles with his company—
For it was ny3t—homward gan him hige
Toward Grekis, with glorie & gret* honour;
And pei resyve hym like a conquerour,
pat he with hem hath so wel I-met;
And pei of Troye han her gatis schet,
And made hem strong poru3-out al pe touw.

Of the pichenge of the Grekes felde; and howe Aga-
menon reysid his tentes, pavelons, & mansyons.¹

8622. her] pe C. 8624. hadde be] had y be D 1.
8625. With-out] With A.
8627. to] for to D 1—be] been A.
8633. Ageynes] Ageyng C.
8643. pat he with hem hath] The which he hadde A, pat wych
he hab D 2—he with hem] with hem he D 1.
Agamemnon camps his Army. The Siege is to last long. [BK. II]

And in pis tyme, king Agamenoun
I-nerched hath a place couenable,
Whiche hym pou3t was most agreeable,
8648
Be liklihed, and most conuenient
For evey lord for to sette his tent.
And in a feld of ful large space,
Most competent as for* logging place,
8652
In due siyt sette fro pe cite,
Eche lord was signed wher he schuld[e] be;
And gan anon ordeyne mansioums,
Pyche her tentis and papillioiws;
8656
And swyche as my3t no tentori[e]s haue
From storm & reyn hem silf[e] for to saue,
pei deuised ojer habitacles,
Tugurries & smale receptacles
8660
To schroude hem in; & al pe ny3t also,
From her schipes pei had moche ado,
Or pei my3t han her hors to londe,
And to ordeyn wher pei schuld[e] stonde.
8664
And pei also besy were to carye
Other pinges pat wer necessarie
And nedefully vn-to a sege longe;
And eke pei made teye her schipes strong
8668
Fer in pe depes, and her ankris caste.
And of assent, pei besied hem ful fast
For to conferme of on entencioun
To sette a sege vn-to Troye touz,
8672
And per-vppon, by bond assured faste,
For to abide while her lyf may laste,
Fynally with-oute repentauance.
And prudently pei made her ordinaunce,
8676
As pei best coude: al pe long[e] ny3t
pei bet her fyres, which brent wonder li3t;
And at a space deuided fro pe fyres,
8679. deuided] devoyled D 2.
Agamemnon's care for his Men and Camp. 393

And to acheue he fyn of her purpos, 

\( \text{bei felly wrougt, \& kept hem sily ay clos.} \) 8684

\( \text{Agamemnon watches all night,} \)

And his mynstreales he made ouer-more, 

\( \text{As seith Guydo, al pe longe nyzt} \) 8688

\( \text{To kepe her tides to-fore pe fyres bri^t,} \)

\( \text{Myrely to sowne her instrumentis.} \) 8692

\( \text{and his tired warriors rest,} \)

And hem he made restyn in her tentis, 

\( \text{bat had a-forn wery ben of fyzt,} \) 8696

\( \text{and others keep guard} \)

And in pe se wer feinted of her myzt; 

\( \text{Awaite wisly ageyn al aventure,} \) 8700

\( \text{till the dawn comes.} \)

\( \text{bat no deceit wer founde on no syde.} \)

And pus pis kyng knyztly gan prouide 

\( \text{In his avis bat no ping hym eskape;} \) 8704

\( \text{Now I'll go on with my Third Book,} \)

\( \text{And al pe nyzt I finde he dide wake,} \)

\( \text{Of Phebus chare gonne for to sprede.} \)

\( \text{And pus echo ping disposid as it ouzt,} \)

\( \text{I wil procede to telle how pei wrouzt,} \)

\( \text{Ceriously with-outyn and with-Inne,} \)

\( \text{With zoure support pe pridde [boke] be-gynne.} \) 8706

[Explicit liber Secundus, Incipit liber Tercius\(^1\)]

---

8688. ouer-more] encarmore D 1.

\(^1\) The above rubric occurs in A. D 1 has, "here endith the secund booke of pe Sege," in red.